
This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<http://books.google.com>



~~X K.24~~

~~285~~

~~9~~

E 17

W

3089



Printed for Thomas Simes, Esq^r Captain in the Queen's Royal Regiment of Foot

T H E
MILITARY MEDLEY:

Containing the most necessary

RULES AND DIRECTIONS

FOR ATTAINING A

COMPETENT KNOWLEDGE OF THE ART:

To which is added an

Explanation of Military Terms,

ALPHABETICALLY DIGESTED.

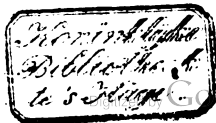
The Second Edition, with considerable Alterations.

By **T H O M A S S I M E S, Esq.**
Captain in the **QUEEN'S** Royal Regiment of Foot, and a
Governor of the **HIBERNIAN** Society for the Orphans
and Children of Soldiers.



L O N D O N:

Printed in the Year **M D C C L X V I I I**





T O

EDWARD HARVEY, ESQ.

MEMBER OF PARLIAMENT,

ADJUTANT-GENERAL OF HIS MAJESTY'S FORCES,

C O L O N E L

Of the Third Regiment of Horse, or Carabineers,

AND MAJOR-GENERAL IN

HIS MAJESTY'S SERVICE.

S I R,

WHEN I presumed to recommend the First Edition of this miscellaneous Volume by a Dedication to You, I did not wish, or expect, it should do more Honour to myself than Benefit to the Service. But the favourable Reception it hath met with, convincing me, SIR, of my Mistake, I cannot avoid congratulating myself on the Happiness of being ranked among those Few whose Errors are secreted in the Dazzle of that Splendor which shines upon the Name of a Patron so eminent as You.

A 2

FOR

iv D E D I C A T I O N.

FOR the Favour of this Protection, and the Affurance I derive, SIR, from YOUR constant Attention to cherish even the meanest Abilities, when exerted in the Service of our August SOVEREIGN, that it will still continue to be extended in Behalf of this little Volume of Instruction for young Gentlemen in HIS Army, I have the Honour to remain, with due Gratitude and Respect,

S I R,

YOUR much obliged,

and obedient Servant,

Parliament-Street,
Sept. 30, 1768.

THOMAS SIMES.

TO THE
OFFICERS
OF THE
ARMY.

GENTLEMEN,

AT the particular Request of many of my Brother Officers, I have been induced to republish this little Volume.

ON perusing the former Edition, for that Purpose, I found, as I really expected, from my Aukwardness at a Business of this Nature, it was sometimes inaccurate, and often deficient : Nor dare I venture, even now, to promise that neither of these Errors will appear ; though I have been at no little Trouble in correcting the one to the best of my Judgment, and supplying the other by a studious Inclination ; but, when it is considered, that this was solely compiled for the Instruction of young Gentlemen in the Army, I doubt not

vi P R E F A C E.

but the Candour of experienced Officers will continue to be exerted in my Favour; and shall think myself sufficiently recompenced if any little Form, or other Matter herein contained, by refreshing their Memories, on an Emergency, may demonstrate that, even to them, there is something not quite invaluable in my Plan.

CONFIDING in this Hope, and thanking you for the Indulgence with which my former Volume was received. I am,

GENTLEMEN,

Your much obliged

humble Servant,

THOMAS SIMES.

SUBSCRIBERS.

HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS
THE
DUKE OF GLOUCESTER,
K. G.

MAJOR-GENERAL of HIS MAJESTY'S
Forces, and COLONEL of the Third
Regiment of Foot Guards, &c.

A.

LIEUTENANT-COL. Joshua Viscount Allen, M. P.
1st Regiment of Guards

* Lieutenant-Col. William, Earl Ancram, 4th Regiment of Horse

Messrs. Adair and Bullock, Esqrs. Agents

Captain William Alcock, 52d Regiment of Foot

Major William Alderton, on Half-pay

Lieut. Thomas Ardefoif, 13th Regt. of Foot

Major George Ainslie, 1st (or King's) Regiment
of Light Dragoons

* Major John Anstruther, 63d Regiment of Foot
John Arabin, Esq.

A 4

Lieutenant

B.

Right Honourable William Wildman, Viscount
Barrington, Secretary at War, &c.

Lieutenant-General, John, Duke of Bedford, K. G.
and Colonel of the Devonshire Militia, &c.

Colonel, Thomas, Lord Bruce, Wiltshire Militia,
and Lord of the Bed-chamber to the King

Major, Sir Charles Bunbury, Bart. M. P. Suffolk
Militia

Mr. William Baldwin

Captain Francis Banks, Royal Navy

* Lieut.-Colonel, John Barlow, 61st Regt. of Foot

Major-General, John Henry Bastide, Engineers

Lieutenant and Adjutant, John Bastide, 13th Re-
giment of Foot

Lieut. Charles Basset, 47th Regiment of Foot

Lieutenant-Col. Launcelot Baugh, 1st Regiment
of Guards

Honourable Lieutenant-Col. Charles Beaucherk,
3d Regiment of Guards, and Lieutenant-
Governor of Fort George

Honourable Major Robert Bellendon, 61st Regi-
ment of Foot

Ensign Albemarle Bertie, 1st Regiment of Guards

Lieut. Joseph Blackam, on Half-pay

Capt. William Blakeney, 23d (or Royal Welch
Fuzileers) Regiment of Foot

Lieut. ——— Bodham ——— Militia

* Capt. Mason Bokton, 9th Regiment of Foot

Capt. Richard Bowles, 2d Troop of Horse Guards

Capt. Edward Broderick, 1st Regiment of Guards

Major Boardham Bromhead, 62d Regt. of Foot

Lieut. Ulysses Brown, 2d Troop of Horse Guards

Capt. James Bruce, 63d Regiment of Foot

* Lieut. and Adjutant Henry Bruen, 63d Regi-
ment of Foot

* Lieut.-Col. John Burgoyne, 58th Regt. of Foot
Major

SUBSCRIBERS.

12

Major-General Ralph Burton, M. P. 3d (or Old Buffs) Regiment of Foot

Thomas Burrows, Esq.

George Byng, Esq. M. P.

Capt. and Adjutant Thomas Byron, 3d Regiment of Guards

C.

Cornet, Sir George Cooke, Bart. Royal Regiment of Horse Guards

Lieutenant-Col. John Calcraft, M. P. 50th Regiment of Foot

Lieut.-Col. John Campbell, of Marines, 2 Books

Major, Peter Campbell, 12th Regiment of Foot

Major, John Campbell, 22d Regiment of Foot

Capt. Alexander Campbell, 3d Regt. of Guards

Lieut. and Adjutant, Colin Campbell, of Marines

Lieut. Thomas M'Campbell, of Marines

Lieut. Abernethy Cargill, 17th Regiment of Foot

Capt. Randolph Carliel, 13th Regiment of Foot

Cornet, Benjamin Samuel Charlewood, 2d Troop of Horse Guards

Lieut. and Quarter-mast. Bartholomew Chaundy, of Marines

Mr. Thomas Clarkson

Ensign, ——— Clayton, 17th Regt. of Foot

Col. Henry Clinton, 12th Regiment of Foot, and Groom of the Bed-chamber to the Duke of Gloucester

Col. George Thomas Cooke, Western Middlesex Militia

Ensign ——— Conyears, 3d Regt. of Guards

Capt. and Adjutant, Michael Cox, 1st Regiment of Guards

Hugh Craig, Esq. Deputy-Commissary of the Musters, and Deputy Judge-Advocate of Gibraltar

Capt. Charles Craufurd, 13th Regiment of Foot
Ensign.

Ensign Richard Crewe, 1st Regt. of Guards
Mr. Thomas Crofts

D.

Col. Henry Vane, Earl of Darlington, Durham Militia, and Governor of Carlisle

Colonel, Basil Fielding, Earl of Denbigh, Warwickshire Militia, and Lord of the Bed-chamber to the KING

Colonel, Sir William Draper, Governor of North Yarmouth, K. B.

* Capt. Otway Cuffe, Earl of Dysart, 1st (or the Royal) Regiment of Foot

Capt. Stair Dalrymple, 11th Regt. of Dragoons

Lieut.-Col. John Darby, 17th Regt. of Foot

* Capt. Richard Dawson, Engineers

Lieutenant-Col. John Deaken, 62d Regt. of Foot, and Groom of the Bed-chamber to the Duke of Cumberland

Capt. Henry De-le-Douespe, Coldstream Regiment of Guards

Colonel, Thomas Desaguliers, Royal Artillery

Capt. Thomas Desbrisay, Royal Irish Artillery

Ensign George De-war, 1st Regiment of Guards

Capt. Lewis George Dive, Coldstream Regiment of Guards

Capt. Robert Donkin, on Half-pay

Capt. John Duke, Wiltshire Militia

Major, Nicholas Dunbar

Capt. Joseph Dunbar, on Half-pay

E.

Lieut. Alexander Earl, 1st (or the King's) Regiment of Dragoon Guards

Capt. Andrew Edhouse, 13th Regiment of Foot

Capt. Dodington Egerton, Wiltshire Militia

Lieut. Edward Egerton, on Half-pay

Lieut.-Gen. George Augustus Elliot, 1st (or the King's) Regt. of Light Dragoons, 2 Books

SUBSCRIBERS.

xi

F.

Hamon, Lord Fleming, late of the 13th Regiment of Foot

Capt. Thomas Farnaby, 67th Regt. of Foot

Lieutenant-Col. William Faucett, 3d Regiment of Guards, and Secretary to the Commander in Chief

Lieutenant-Col. Lewis Feyrac, late of the 18th (or Royal Irish) Regiment of Foot

* Honourable Lieutenant-General, John Fitz-William, 2d Regiment of Horse

James Fitter, Esq. Agent

Mr. Thomas Fitter,

Mr. ——— Folliott

Capt. Bernard Foord, Yorkshire Buff-Militia

Capt. Thomas Fowke, 3d Regiment of Guards, and Equerry to the Duke of Cumberland

Lieut. Alexander Fowler, 18th (or Royal Irish) Regiment of Foot

* Reverend Mr. Arthur France

Mr. John France, Royal Navy

George Firenze, Esq.

G.

Lieutenant-General, John, Marquis of Granby, Commander in Chief of His Majesty's Forces, and Master-Gen. of the Ordnance, &c. 10 Books

Capt. Andrew Girardots, 3d Regt. of Guards

Lieut. Robert Gibbins, 23d (or Royal Welch Fusiliers) Regiment of Foot

* Lieut. William Glascott, on Half-pay

Capt. Edward Goat, 1st Regiment of Guards

Honourable Capt. Cosmo Gordon, 3d Regiment of Guards

Capt. and Adjutant, Thomas Gordon, 1st Regiment of Guards

Capt. ——— Gower, Western Middlesex Militia

Lieut.

Lieut.-Col. Arthur Graham, 1st Regt. of Guards
Major, Donald Grant, Deputy Adjutant-General
of Ireland

Mr. William Green

Major, John Griffin, 4th Regt. of Dragoons

Capt. Thomas Groves, of Marines

Capt. and Adjut. Gustavus Guydickens, 3d Regt.
of Guards, Gentleman Usher to the Queen

H.

Sir Thomas Heron, Bart. late of the 16th Regiment of Foot

Colonel Bernard Hales, 3d Regiment of Guards,
and Colonel en Second in the Royal Regiment of Irish Artillery

* Capt. Gervas Hall, late of the 48th Regiment of Foot

Ensign, James Hamilton, Coldstream Regiment of Guards

Capt. Isaac Hammon, on Half-pay

* Major-General Edward Harvey, 3d Regiment of Horse (or Carabineers), and Adjutant-General of his Majesty's Forces, 4 Books

Lieut. Thomas Harris, 20th Regt. of Foot

Col. Thomas Hassell, Yorkshire Buff Militia

Major Charles Heathcoate, 4th (or King's own) Royal Regiment of Foot, 3 Books

Lieutenant-Colonel Charles Hemington, 23d (or Royal Welch Fusiliers) Regiment of Foot

Cornet, Stephen Coleman Hickman, 2d Troop of Horse Guards

Capt. Robert Hinde, on Half-pay

Major, John Hill, 13th Regiment of Foot

Lieutenant-General Studholme Hodgson, 5th Regiment of Foot, and Governor of Fort George

Mr. Theodore Hole

Lieutenant-

SUBSCRIBERS.

xiii

Lieutenant-Colonel Frederick Hollingsworth, 3d
Regiment of Guards

Lieut. John Hopson, on Half-pay

Capt. ——— Hooke

Colonel Michael Hudson, 3d Regiment of Foot
Guards

Capt. John Hudson, Yorkshire Buff Militia

Thomas Hull, Esq.

I.

George Jackson, Esq. Deputy Secretary of the
Admiralty

* Captain-Lieut. John Jackson, on Half-pay

* Captain Alexander Innes, 63d Regiment of
Foot

Lieutenant-Col. Alexander Johnstone, 70th Regi-
ment of Foot

Major-General John Irwin, M. P. 67th Regi-
ment of Foot

Adjutant ——— Irwin, Shropshire Militia

* Mr. Henry Ivie

K.

Lieutenant-General, Evelyn Pierpoint, Duke of
Kingston, K. G. &c.

Capt. John Knox, on Half-pay

L.

Field-Marshal, John, Earl Ligonier, 1st Regiment
of Guards, K. B. &c. 2 Books

Sir Peter Liecester, Bart. M. P.

Major, Sir James Long, Bart. Wiltshire Militia

Major, Peter Labellier, on Half-pay

John Lamont, Esq.

Lieut. Archibald Lamont, on Half-pay

Cornet, Warwick Lake, 1st (or King's) Regi-
ment of Dragoon Guards

Major,

Major, Henry Lamb, Western Middlesex Militia
Colonel, Richard Lambart, 1st Regiment of
Guards

Cornet, John Leche, 2d (or Queen's) Regiment
of Light Dragoons

Lieutenant-Col. John Litchfield, late of the 7th
(or Queen's) Regiment of Dragoons

Lieut. William Long, Wiltshire Militia

Ensign, Lionel Lumley, 5th Regiment of Foot

Capt. Ralph Lutton, Yorkshire Buff, Militia

Capt. Nathaniel Lynce, on Half-pay

Captain-Lieut. Charles Lyons, 17th Regiment of
Foot

Capt. Alexander Lysaght, 63d Regt. of Foot

M.

Lieutenant-General, Robert, Lord Manners, M. P.
3d (or Prince of Wales's) Regiment of Dra-
goon Guards, and Lieut. Governor of Hull,
2 Books

Sir William Mansell, Bart. late of the 2d (or Queen's)
Regiment of Light Dragoons

Capt. Sir William Middleton, Bart. Royal Regi-
ment of Horse Guards

Colonel, Sir Ralph Milbank, Bart. Richmondshire
Militia

Lieutenant-Col. John Mackenzie, Marines

Lieutenant Frederick Mackenzie, 23d (or Royal
Welch Fusileers) Regiment of Foot

Major, Herbert Mackworth, M. P. Glamorgan-
shire Militia

Major, Henry Maister, Yorkshire Buff Militia

Major, James Mansergh, late of the 8th Regiment
of Dragoons

• Major, John Mayne, 14th Regiment of Dra-
goons

Honourable

S U B S C R I B E R S.

xv

- Honourable Captain Charles Mar sham, M. P.
Western Kentish Militia
Mr. Robert Martin, Bookseller, Birmingham,
2 Books
Major, Thomas Marriott, of Marines
Samuel Meredith, Esq.
Capt. Thomas Middleton, Independant Company
Col. ——— Miles
Lieut. Eyre Robert Minay, 68th Regt. of Foot
Lieutenant-Col. Flower Mocher, 3d (or Prince of
Wales's) Regiment of Dragoon Guards
* Lieutenant-General Charles Montagu, 2d (or
Queen's Royal) Regiment of Foot
* Lieutenant-Col. George Morrison, Engineers,
and Quarter-master-general of his Majesty's
Forces
John Muller, Esq. Preceptor to the Duke of
Gloucester, &c.
Honourable Major-General, James Murray, 13th
Regiment of Foot, Captain-General and Go-
vernor of the Province of Quebec, 6 Books
* Lieut. John Murray, 2d (or Queen's Royal)
Regiment of Foot
Ensign, Alexander Murray, 3d Regt. of Guards
Mr. Murray.

N.

- Hugh Percy, Duke of Northumberland, Lord-
lieutenant of the Counties of Middlesex and
Northumberland, K. G. &c.
Honourable Lieutenant-Col. William Nappier,
2d (or North British) Regiment of Dragoons,
and Deputy Adjutant-general of N. B.
Lieutenant Thomas Neilson, Marines
* Captain Michael Nickson, 2d (or Queen's)
Royal Regiment of Foot
Thomas Norcot, Esq.

1

Lieut.

Lieut.-Col. William Northey, Wiltshire Militia
John Norton, Esq.

O.

Lieut.-Col. Will. Oakes, 33d Regiment of Foot
Lieut.-Col. George Ogilvy, 3d Regiment of Guards
Lieutenant-Col. David Ogilvy, 13th Regiment
of Foot, 2 Books
Captain James Ohara, 74th Regiment of Foot,
and Capt. of Sandown Fort
Augustus Oldham, Esq. Agent

P

Major-General, Henry, Earl of Pembroke, 1st (or
Royal) Regiment of Dragoons
Colonel Hugh, Earl of Percy, M. P. and Aid-de-
camp to the King, 2 books
Honourable Colonel George Lane Parker, 1st
Regiment of Guards
Capt. Peter Parker, Royal Navy
Lieut. Fleetwood Parkhurst, 2d (or Queen's)
Light Dragoons
Lieut. Francis Partridge, on Half-pay
Lieutenant-Col. Archibald Patoun, Engineers
Lieutenant-Col. James Patterfon, 63d Regiment
of Foot
Ensign, ——— Patterfon
* Capt. William Peacock, Brigade-Major of Ireland
Lieut. and Adjutant, William Peck, Wiltshire
Militia
Honourable Capt. Edward Percival, 1st (or King's)
Regiment of Dragoon Guards
Lieutenant-Col. William Picton, 12th Regiment
of Foot
Major-General, Richard Pierfon, 36th Regiment of
Foot
Colonel, George Pitt, M. P. Dorsetshire Militia
Lieut.

SUBSCRIBERS.

xvii

Lieut. and Adjutant, John Plaidell, 12th Regiment of Foot

Capt. James Pennyman, Yorkshire Buff Militia

John Pournies, Esq. Agent

Lieut. and Adjutant, William Prosper Popple, Militia

Ensign Isaac Pratveil, 1st Regiment of Guards

Lieut. William Price, Marines

Lieut. John Prince, 1st (or the King's) Regiment of Dragoon Guards

John Proffer, Esq.

James Punney, Esq.

R

Col. Robert, Ld. Romney, Western Kentish Militia

Lieutenant-col. Charles Rainsford, Coldstream Regiment of Guards, and Equerry to the Duke of Gloucester

Lieut. William Rains, Yorkshire Buff Militia

Mr. ——— Rawle

Capt. Patrick Rainey, late of the 23d (or Royal Welch Fusileers) Regiment of Foot

Stephen Remnant, Esq. 2 books

John Richardson, Esq. Agent

Reverend Philip Rosenhagan, 8th Regiment of Foot

Capt. Hugh Rose, 57th Regiment of Foot

Capt. Alexander Rose, India Service

* Lieutenant-Col. Robert Ross, 48th Regiment of Foot

Lieutenant-Col. William Roy, Engineers, Deputy Quarter-Master Gen. of His Majesty's Forces

S.

Lieut. Sir Robert Stuart, Bart. 30th Regiment of Foot

Capt. and Adjutant, William Sabine, Marines

b

Capt.

Capt. Joseph Sabine, Marines

John Gilpin Sawrey, Esq.

Capt. Rd. Scudamore, on Half-pay

Cornet, ——— Shad, 3d (or Light) Regiment of
Dragoons

* Lieut. John Simes, late of the Marines

Lieut. and Quarter-Master, Thomas Sims,
Marines

Lieutenant-Col. Robert Sloper, 1st (or King's) Re-
giment of Dragoon Guards, and Governor
of Hurst Castle

Lieut. ——— Smith, Western Regiment of
Middlesex Militia

Capt. Charles Smythe, 2d Troop of Grenadier
Guards

Capt. William Souter, Marines

Capt. Roger Spendlove, 43d Regiment of Foot

Major, John Spinnage, Militia

* Honourable Lieutenant-Col. Henry St. John,
M. P. 37th Regiment of Foot

Lieutenant-Col. Anthony St. Leger, M. P. on
Half-pay

Major Barry St. Leger, on Half-pay

Capt. Miles Stavely, Royal Regiment of Horse-
Guards

Capt. George Steel, on Half-pay

Lieutenant-Col. Humphry Stevens, 3d Regiment
of Guards

Ensign, William Stuart, 63d Regiment of Foot

Mr. John Sutter

Reverend Sidney Swinney, D. D. Fellow of the
Royal Antiquarian Society

Capt. George Swinney, West Riding, York
Militia

Lieut. and Adjutant, Richard Symes, 14th Regi-
ment of Foot

Field-

T

Field-Marshal, James, Lord Tyrawley, Coldstream
Regiment of Guards, and Governor of Portf-
mouth, &c.

Lieutenant-Col. Thomas Tash, 3d Regiment of
Guards

Colonel, John Thomas, Coldstream Regiment of
Guards

* Lieut. and Adjutant, Edward Thorley, 2d (or
Queen's Royal) Regiment of Foot

Lieutenant-Col. William Thornton, 1st Regiment
of Guards

William Thornton, Esq.

—— Thorpe, Esq. 3 Books

Capt. Thomas Tims, 2d Troop of Horse-Guards

Francis Tomkins. Army Hospital

Major-General Cyrus Trapaud, 70th Regiment
of Foot

Lieutenant-Col. Thomas Twisleton, 3d Regiment
of Guards

Captain Thomas Twisleton, 3d Regiment of
Guards

V.

Major General, Edward Urmston, 1st Regiment of
Guards

Lieutenant, George Vaughan, 2d Troop of Horse-
Guards

Isaac Vernon, Esq.

W.

Lieutenant-General, John, Earl of Waldegrave, 2d
(or the Queen's) Regiment of Dragoon
Guards, and Governor of Plymouth

Sir Charles Whitworth, M. P. and Lieut.-Governor
of Gravesend and Tilbury

Lieutenant Francis Wadman, 18th (or Royal Irish) Regiment of Foot, and Gentleman-Usher to the Princess Amelia.

* Col. Hunt Walsh, M. P. 56th Regt. of Foot
Lieutenant-Col. Ralph Walsh, 31st Regiment of Foot, 2 Books

Samuel Walsh, Esq.

Capt. Thomas Walmsley, 2d (or Queen's) Regiment of Light Dragoons

Lieutenant-Col. George Warde, 4th Regiment of Dragoons

George Westbrook, Esq.

Capt. John Wheatland, Western Suffolk Militia

Lieutenant-Col. Henry Wickham, 1st Regiment of Guards

Lieutenant-General, William Whitmore, M. P. 9th Regiment of Foot

Thomas Whitaker, Esq.

Lieutenant-Col. Samuel Wilkinson, Surry Militia

Capt. Griffith Williams, Royal Artillery

Capt. John Williams, 28th Regiment of Foot

2d Lieutenant, Richard Williams, 23d (or Royal Welch Fusiliers) Regiment of Foot

* John Winter, Esq. Agent

Major John Wrightson, on Half-pay

Ensign, John Wright, Militia

Y.

Lieutenant-General, Right Honourable Sir Joseph Yorke, 5th (or Royal Irish) Regiment of Dragoons, K. B.

Thomas Young, Esq.

N. B. Names thus marked * were Subscribers also to the First Edition.

* * The remaining Books unsubscribed for, to be had at Mr. MILLAN's, opposite the Admiralty, CHANCERY CROSS.

T H E C O N T E N T S.

	Page.
R EGULATIONS and orders, very proper to be given by the Colonel of a regiment of foot, and to be strictly observed by the Officers, Non-commissioned Officers, and private men as standing orders -	1
A weekly pay-note	4
Inspection report	6
Squad-roll	8
Report of the barracks, messes, infirmary, &c. of the regiment of foot	9
— of a guard where the shipping are hailed by the centinels, before they sail by, &c.	11
Form of a regimental Court-martial, &c.	12
Remarks	13
Discharge	15
Form of advertising deserters	16
Field Return	17
Morning report of company	18
Regulations for doing duty	19
Return of the sick in the regiment of commanded by at with an account of the pay of each sick soldier in the regimental infirmary, from the of to the of following, inclusive	22
Furlough	24
Form of a pass	25
Return of the casualties of a company	27
— of ammunition, flints, &c. in each company of the regiment of commanded by	28
17	28
2	Return

	Page.
Return of the sick, &c. of _____ company	
morning _____ 17 _____	29
Recruiting instructions for <i>A. B.</i> of the _____ regi-	
ment of foot, commanded by _____ the	
day of _____ 17 _____	33
Form of an attestation _____	35
Return of recruits raised by _____ for _____	
regiment _____ 17 _____	37
Directions for fitting and making the cloathing _____	38
Regulations and orders for a regimental infirmary _____	39
_____ of diet for the infirmary _____	43
Directions for making up the contingent bill _____	47
Warrant for regulating the non-effective fund of the	
several regiments of infantry _____	48
_____ for regulating the attendance of Officers be-	
longing to the several regiments of infantry _____	53
Description of recruits entertained for the _____ regi-	
ment of _____ and drawn to the following companies	
at _____ this _____ day of _____ 17 _____	57
Roll of _____ company, with their age, size, service,	
country, &c. _____	58
_____ of Serjeants, Corporals, pioneers, drummers, and	
sifers, as they are posted to companies _____	59
Form of a roll to be kept in each company of the Non-	
commissioned Officers, and private men of the	
regiment of foot, commanded by _____ 17 _____	60
A roll of the Officers of the _____ regiment of foot,	
as they are posted to companies, with the dates of	
their commissions _____	61
General return of the names, country, age, and service	
of the Officers of _____ regiment of	
foot, commanded by _____ with	
the dates of the several commissions each	
Officer has had to the _____ day of	
_____ 17 _____	62
_____ of the country, size, age, and time of	
service of the men of the _____ regi-	
ment of foot, commanded by _____, includ-	
ing Serjeants, Corporals, drummers, and sifers _____	63
Abstract of the respites of each company of the	
regiment of _____ from _____ to _____ 17 _____	64
Return _____	

C O N T E N T S.

xxiii

	Page.
Return of arms, accoutrements, cloathing, and an abstract of the non-effective and recruiting account —	64
Particular return of the _____ regiment of foot, commanded by _____	65
Return of Officers made on the fourteenth of each month _____	ib.
Monthly return of _____ regiment of foot, commanded by _____ 1st of _____ 17 _____	66
Consisting of general rules for the marching of a regiment of foot, or a detachment of men where there is a possibility of their being attacked by the enemy —	68
Instructions drawn up by the late Major-general James Wolfe, for the twentieth regiment of foot, then lying at Canterbury, in case of the French landing in 1755 _____	70
Orders very proper to be given to the troops on board of transports in time of war _____	78
General orders and regulations by the late Major-general James Wolfe, July, 1759 _____	79
Orders of regulations and signals to prevent the landing or being surprized by the enemy, given at Palais, 1762, Belleisle _____	83
Precautions a Governor or Commandant of a garrison should use in time of war _____	87
Stores _____	89
Investing places _____	91
The preparations which are generally made for an assault on a considerable out-work, or the body of the place _____	93
Of capitulations _____	98
Of the qualifications requisite for the Commander in Chief of an army _____	106
Of the rendezvous of an army _____	113
Of the marching of an army _____	114
Of its decamping from before an enemy _____	116
The common order of battle, or general disposition ordered by the King of Prussia, to be inviolably observed by all Generals, Commandants of regiments, and Subalterns in his service : issued after the battle of Molwitz _____	117
Of changing an order of battle on a plain _____	120
Of the measures to be taken for the junction of two armies _____	121
	Means

	Page.
Means proposed for the retreat of an army invested by another	122
Precautions to be taken when obliged to establish your quarters in a woody or mountainous country	124
Precautions for securing the cavalry's quarters in a plain covered country	128
Of the vigilance of each Commandant in his own quarters	130
The manœuvres to be opposed to the enemy's false alarms	132
1. Of the grand manœuvre, 2. of the column	134
Of parties	142
General instructions to the van-guard	146
General instructions to a rear-guard	148
Of ambuscades	149
Attack of the covert-way sword in hand	161
The taking a place by escalade	163
Remarks	165
Attack of a barrack	166
Defence of a barrack	167
Of spies and guides	169
Of signs	170
A few observations to be made before the ground of encampment is marked out	172
Camp for a battalion of foot; nine companies, with two field-pieces	ibid.
Of battalion field-pieces and horses	175
Relating to the command of the Governor in his own town, with the respect and obedience due to him from the troops which compose the garrison	176
Of the staff of an army	185
Of aids-de-camp	188
Advice to a young Officer, Commandant of a corps, with a scheme worthy of attention	189
Scheme for a mess in camp, for dinner and supper	192
Part of a Captain's duty	193
Part of a Lieutenant's duty	194
A list of things necessary for a young gentleman to be furnished with, upon obtaining his first commission in the infantry; with a scheme of his constant expences and some farther necessary advice	195
Dimensions of a tent	196
	Scheme

C O N T E N T S.

xxv

	Page.
Scheme of an Ensign's constant expence — — —	197
Advice — — — — —	198
Position of a soldier under arms — — — — —	200
Remarks — — — — —	ib.
Exercise — — — — —	201
Of the sounds of the drum — — — — —	202
Signals — — — — —	203
Manœuvres, &c. and explanations — — — — —	204
Cautions and directions to young Officers — — —	217
Directions for picquet and village guards — — —	220
Young Officers apt to exceed their orders from a mis- taken zeal — — — — —	221
Of subordination — — — — —	222
Orders to empower the Commanding Officers of corps to post Subaltern Officers in such manner as they shall think may best conduce to the good of his Ma- jesty's service — — — — —	223
Warrant for regulating the attendance of Officers be- longing to the several regiments of cavalry — — —	224
— — — — — for regulating the attendance of Officers be- longing to the regiments on foreign stations — — —	228
— — — — — for regulating the recruiting, and reviewing of the several regiments of foot, upon foreign stations — — — — —	231
Military honours due to crowned heads — — — — —	234
— — — Due to the Captain-gen. of G. Britain, Field- marshal, General of the empire, or of the Dutch — — —	234
Regulations of honours to be paid by his Majesty's forces to the General Officers of the army — — —	ib.
Honours to be paid to the Generals by the horse and grenadier-guards when mixed with other troops — — —	236
Honours to be paid to the Generals by the foot guards — — —	ib.
Regulations for the duty of our horse and foot-guards, when joined with other of our troops — — — — —	237
Colours — — — — —	238
Honours to the Master-general of the ordnance — — —	ib.
Honours paid Governors, General Officers, Colonels, Lieutenant-colonels, &c. in garrison — — — — —	ib.
Engineers rank — — — — —	240
Rank and precedence between land and Sea-officers — — —	241
Compliment due to General-officers, &c. — — — — —	242
Facings of the cavalry — — — — —	243

	Page.
Facings of the infantry	246
Regulations for the colours, cloathing, &c. of march- ing regiments of foot	249
Method of sending for the colours	255
To fire three volleys in the air	257
To fire a feu-de-joye	258
To fire the street-firing	259
Parapet-firing	260
Oblique-firing	ib.
Funeral ceremony of Subalterns	261
Brevets	263
Points of command	264
Method of going and receiving the rounds in a garrison	ib.
—— of going and receiving the rounds in camp	268
Turning out of the line	269
Forming and returning the picquets of the infantry	ib.
Of forage and foragers, &c.	271
American weekly allowance of provisions for one person	272
Proportions of rations	273
Allowances of straw and firing in Ireland, 1759, judged necessary for a tent	ib.
Form of a warrant	274
Attorney-general's opinion concerning foldiers making away with their cloaths and necessaries	276
Articles of agreement	278
Form of leave of absence for Officers granted in Ame- rica in time of war	279
—— to renew a furlow, when detained by contrary winds	ib.
An estimate of the funeral expence of a soldier, as near as may be	280
Form of an affidavit to receive British half-pay	ib.
State of British half-pay	281
Widows pensions	ib.
State of Irish half-pay	282
Remarks on, with the state of the deductions of, the half-pay	ib.
Form of a certificate to receive Irish half-pay	283
—— of a beating order	ib.
The speech	284
Standing orders for a guard which mounts over priso- ners of war	285

A table

C O N T E N T S. xxvii

	Page.
A table for the several duties in a garrison to be kept by the Town-major, Town-adjutant, and the Adjutants of the corps	286
Roster for detaching battalions	287
Explanation	288
Calculation of expences which a recruit must necessarily be at for the first year	289
A table of particulars	ib.
Remarks proper to be made by the Reviewing-officer	290
Return of slops, &c. from on board his Majesty's ship stationed in 17 under the command of A. B. of the division	292
Return of quarters through which the regiment of has marched from to with the number of men and horses they are capable of containing as a marching quarter	293
Return of the troops under the command of at the surrender of with a list of the ships in the harbour, taken, burnt, sunk, and destroyed; and the number of Officers, Non-commissioned Officers, &c. killed, wounded, missing, and taken prisoners	294
Translation of general M. de Montcalm's epitaph, &c.	295
Miscellaneous advice	299
Military Dictionary.	
Twelve plans conclude the volume.	



T H E

E R R A T A.

Page 48, line 31, for *dently* read *evidently*.

— 66, after *Vacant Officers*, and by *what Means*, another line should have been drawn, thereby to form a column wherein the names, &c. of vacant Officers are to be inserted.

IN THE DICTIONARY

For *Fancions* read *Fanion*. Under the word *Mutiny*, for *army* read *any*; and, for *Onflecagon* read *Ondecagon*.

A

SECOND EDITION

OF A

MILITARY TREATISE,

INTITLED,

THE MEDLEY.

REGULATIONS AND ORDERS,

Very proper to be given by the Colonel of a Regiment of Foot, to be strictly observed by the Officers, Non-commissioned Officers, and private Men, as Standing Orders.

NO Officers to appear, when with the regiment, in any other dress but their uniforms; which is the most becoming, and does them most honour.

When the Colonel is from his regiment, the Commanding-officer is to send him, on the first day of every month, a monthly return, with a state of the regiment.

The Lieutenant-colonel, or Officer commanding the regiment, is to make choice of a Subaltern, who has gained the character of a good Officer, by attendance, obedience, and a diligent discharge of his duty, that when the Adjutancy, or Quarter-

B

mastercy

maftercy may fall vacant, he may recommend him to his Colonel, as an Officer intitled to preferment, and who ought to be rewarded.

A Captain of a company, to have a watchful eye over the behaviour and conduct of his private men; that when a knot falls he may be able to recommend the deserving for it.

The Pay master of the regiment, to settle the non-effective account with the Agent, by letter, every two months; and the Agent to transmit an account of what reimbursements have been made out of the stock-purse during that time, and what ballance remains, that the accounts may be compared together, and settled, agreeable to the King's warrant, for regulating the non-effective account.

The Chaplain of the regiment is constantly to attend, or act by Deputy, and to visit the sick constantly in *barracks*, *quarters*, and *infirmary*; and the Commanding-officer of the regiment is to be answerable, that the duty of Chaplain be executed with becoming decency and regularity.

An Infirmary-board to sit the first *Monday* in every month, composed of three Captains, to examine into the state of the infirmary.

A Serjeant or Corporal, whose sobriety, honesty and good conduct can be depended upon, and who is capable of teaching *writing*, *reading*, and *arithmetic*, to be employed to act in the capacity of a School-master, by whom soldiers and soldiers children are to be carefully instructed: a room to be appointed for that use: and it would be highly commendable, if the Chaplain, or his Deputy, would pay some attention to the conduct of the school.

The Commanding-officers of companies are desired to prevent, as much as possible, the inconveniencies and ill consequences which are produced, by having too many soldiers married; for their wives
are

are too frequently women of abandoned characters and behaviour, who often occasion quarrels, drunkenness, diseases, desertions; and never fail to involve their husbands greatly in debt, which is the ruin and destruction of a soldier; therefore, it is recommended to the Non-commissioned Officers and private men, to avoid entering into such engagements, without consulting their Commanding-officer; the Non-commissioned Officers are to use their utmost endeavours to prevent all such marriages, as they must be sensible, how detrimental they are to his Majesty's service.

The Commanding-officer must be strict, in putting in execution the Articles of War against swearing; the penalty for which is one shilling, beside further punishment for the second offence: the soldiers are therefore cautioned to break themselves immediately of a custom, which is wicked, unsoldier-like, and directly contrary to the Articles of War.

An Officer of a company to march the men to church every *Sunday*, who are to remain there during the time of divine service; and if any Non-commissioned Officer or soldier shall absent himself from church, or leave it before service is over, he shall pay and suffer the penalties expressed in the Articles of War.

Whatever Non-commissioned Officer shall not behave himself conformable to orders, he will be considered, as unworthy of his preferment, and reduced accordingly.

If any private soldier shall think himself aggrieved, or ill used, by any Serjeant or Corporal, he must, upon no account, use any abusive language to him: on the contrary, he is first to obey, and then lay the complaint before the Commanding-officer of his company, who will procure justice for him; but the soldiers are to take care, that they are not encour-

raged to make frivolous or ill-grounded complaints, for in such cases, themselves will be the sufferers.

The Articles of War to be read every two months; after which, the Non-commissioned Officers and private men are to be accounted with for their arrears and stoppages, and the ballance due to them to be paid by the Commanding-officers of companies, after deducting what has been advanced them to buy necessaries. Each man is to sign his account. If the Commanding-officer of the company goes from quarters, in the interim, the accounts to be left with the next Officer: if none be there, they are to be sealed up, and left with a Serjeant, to be given the next Officer that comes.

The Non-commissioned Officers and private men to receive their pay, at least, once a week.

A WEEKLY PAY-NOTE.										
One Week's Pay and Arrears for					Com-					
pany, from the					of		17		to the	
both Days inclusive.										
To	Serjeants	—	—	—	l.	s.	d.			
To	Corporals	—	—	—						
To	Drummers	—	—	—						
To	Fifers	—	—	—						
To	Private Men	—	—	—						
					l.	s.	d.			
To	flints	—	—	—						
To	cartridge paper	—	—	—						
To	repair of arms	—	—	—						
Total										
Received the above sum, in full of all demands, to the day of 17										
A. B. Pay-master Serjeant.										

Encourage-

Encouragement ought to be given to all country people to bring provisions to the market. A Non-commissioned Officer of each company to go to market with the men, to prevent them quarrelling with the country people, or others; upon any occasion whatever. If the price of provisions is exorbitant, application must be made to the chief Magistrate, who will regulate it. If a soldier is guilty of any insolence, or uses any harsh words, to any person whatever, he shall, upon proof thereof, be punished, according to the nature of the offence, by a Court-martial.

A place to be provided, free from damp, to be as dark and dismal as possible, where clean dry straw is to be put every week; which place is to be called, *A Black-Hole*, where soldiers for offences are to be sent; and where, for absenting themselves from the drill, they are to be confined for twenty-four hours, and kept upon low-diet, for the first offence; for the second, forty-eight hours, &c. and for the third, to be sent prisoners to the guard, in order to be tried by a Court-martial.

Great care must be taken, that no man under sentence of a Court-martial drinks any kind of spirituous liquors, either before or after punishment; as I once knew an instance of a prisoner, who, to damp the pain of his punishment, was brought intoxicated to the halberts; he was therefore returned back to the guard-room; but in a short time dropt down dead, from the violent effects of the spirits he had drank. Had he received his punishment, which he justly deserved, it is probable, evil and designing persons might have imputed his death to that.

The Compliment of Necessaries to be furnished each Soldier.

Three shirts, two white stocks or rollers, one black hair stock, one pair of brass clasps, for ditto, three pair of white yarn stockings, two pair of shoes, one

pair of white linnen gaiters, one pair of black gaiters, and one pair of black tops for ditto, one pair of linen drawers, one pair of red skirt breeches, one red cap, one cockade, one knapsack, one haversack, one pair of shoe-buckles, one pair of garter-buckles, and black leather garters, one oil bottle, one brush and picker, one worm, one turn-key, one hammer-cap, one stopper.

The companies ammunition, arms, accoutrements, cloaths and necessaries, to be inspected every week, by an Officer of a company, and a report to be made to the Commanding-officer of the state of them.

INSPECTION REPORT.

I have inspected _____ Company's ammunition, arms, accoutrements, cloaths and necessaries.

Ammunition in	—	—	—	—	—
Arms in	—	—	—	—	—
Accoutrements in	—	—	—	—	—
Cloaths in	—	—	—	—	—
Necessaries	—	—	—	—	—

To _____ the Officer commanding
the _____ regiment of foot.

Such men who lose their arms, are to be charged for each firelock, one pound, ten shillings; each bayonet, five shillings; each ramrod, two shillings. The price of a sword, for either grenadier or battalion man, cannot be ascertained, as the charge must be according to the goodness they have in their corps. The above articles to be charged to each man's account; also all repairs of arms, and every thing relative to their arms and accoutrements, which can be made appear, before a Regimental Court-

THE MEDLEY.

Court-Martial, to have been damaged or spoiled by their neglect. Whenever any of the above compliment of necessaries are lost or worn out, the soldier is immediately to be supplied with others. No man, who is properly provided with necessaries, to be stopped any more than his arrears; except such men whose necessaries are much worn, and are in debt to their Officer; then, they are to be stopped six-pence *per* week besides their arrears. If it is necessary to stop more, it must be by order of a Court-martial; and then, it is not to exceed the half of his pay, tho' the soldier should have made away with all his necessaries; which is too often the case; and, to avoid punishment, they sometimes are so abandoned as to desert their colours.

Each company to be provided with, and carry as follows: an ammunition box, to contain twenty-four rounds of powder and ball, and two flints for each man, which are not to be used, but in case of necessity; a machine to cut and cock hats with, a powder bag, a ream of whited-brown paper, three locks, one dozen screw pins, three spare pans, six iron ramrods, a mould to cast bullets, and a former to make cartridges. But the caliber of the soldiers barrel must be attended to; though, according to what now is used, two pounds of lead will cast twenty-nine musket bullets; and a pint of ammunition powder, which weighs about fifteen ounces, will make twenty-nine cartridges.

The companies to be formed into squads; first squad to consist of the eldest Serjeant, and the front rank; second, of the two Corporals and the center; third, of the youngest Serjeant and rear rank. In case any Serjeant or Corporal is sick, on party or furlough, then the care of a squad must be given to the youngest Corporal. The Serjeants and Corporals of squads, to take pains with their recruits,

THE MEDLEY.

9

When the regiment is in barracks, a Subaltern Officer is to visit them, the messes, and regimental infirmary, every day, between the hours of ten and twelve o'clock, and report to the Commanding-officer, what condition the barracks are in; if the rooms, galleries, and stairs are clean swept, and beds rolled up; what number of messes are in each company, and how supplied with provisions; the number of patients in the infirmary, and how attended.

Report of the barracks, messes, infirmary, &c. of
the Regiment of Foot.

I visited the barracks, found them beds
 galleries and stairs infirmary
attended, N° of patients.

Messes supplied with	Beef	Mutton	Pork	Broth	Potatoes or bread	N° of Messes
Colonels - - -						
Lieutenant-colonels - - -						
Majors - - -						
Capts. {	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -
	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -
	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -
	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -
Total						

To
The Officer commanding
Regiment of Foot.

If billeted in *Britain*, an Officer of a company to visit the men's quarters, every pay-day, and to ask the landlords, if the men behave well.

Officers, when for guard, to have their hair queued, with fash, gorget, and espantoon, buff-coloured gloves, hussar boots, or black gaiters,
with

with stiff tops; except when ordered in white gaiters. The guards to be exercised every morning, by an Officer of the guard, before they march off the parade, Sundays and field days excepted. During the time the retreat is beating, all guards are to be under arms, and the Officers are to examine their mens arms and ammunition; and to see that the number of prisoners committed to their charge are properly secured, as a prisoner escaping implies a remissness of duty: and after taptoo beating, patrols are frequently to be sent, who are to make prisoners all the soldiers they find out of their barracks or quarters; when the Officers mount guard, the soldiers that attend them are to mount with them, and to be dressed exactly in the same manner as the rest of the guard.

No Officer to quit his post, during the time the guards are relieving, to walk or talk to each other, except at the time the Officer of the old guard is giving up the charge of the guard to the new: the men to stand steady and silent; and if any man lift his hand, to make a motion, but what he is ordered to do, his name to be given to the Adjutant. While the guards are relieving, if any person comes near, who is intitled to a compliment, the eldest Officer of both guards is to give the words of command. The Dismounting-officer is to give a report to the Commanding-officer, and at the same time whisper the parole in his ear. The Officer next for guard, to be on the parade in readiness to supply the place of an Officer who, by sickness or otherwise, cannot do his duty.

No Officer to change his guard, or other duty, but by leave of the Commanding-officer; and the Officer must acquaint the Adjutant of the change.

A Report

When an Officer desires leave of absence, if he has not the command of a company, he must first apply to the Officer commanding it, and then to the Commanding-officer; and when he has obtained leave, he must acquaint the Adjutant, for what time; and leave directions with him in writing, how he may be wrote to. If any Officer has leave of absence from the regiment, he is not to take away any soldier with him, without leave from the Commanding-Officer of the regiment; and any Officer at country quarters, who has a man of the company to attend him, such man not to be excused field-days.

All Officers are desired to be very strict in confining and reporting all men, of any company whatever, that they shall meet drunk or disorderly.

The young Officers to be kept at head quarters till they are acquainted with their duty; and are to attend all Court-martials, for the space of three months, that they may have a thorough knowledge of the nature of that duty.

Form of a Regimental Court Martial, &c.

Proceedings of a Regimental Court-martial of the
regiment of foot, commanded by
held at this

Day of 17 By order of

Captain A. B. President.

Lieutenant C.	} Members	{ Lieutenant D.
Ensign E.		

Prisoner's Crime. } G. H. of the above regiment and
Captain J's company, confined by K. L. . . .
. . . for
.

Evi-

Evidence.] *M. N.* informs the court

Prisoner's Defence.] *G. H.*

Sentence.] The court having duly considered the evidence for and against the prisoner, are of opinion, that he is guilty of a breach of the article of the section; and also a breach of the article of the section of the Articles of War; and do sentence him to receive lashes with a cat-and-nine-tails on his bare back.

A. B. Capt. and President.

If the delinquent is to be drummed out of the regiment, it is proper to annex, That it is the further opinion of the court, that the prisoner *G. H.* is, and he is hereby adjudged, unfit to have the honour of being a soldier; and, therefore, do order, that he shall be drummed out of the regiment with a halter hung about his neck, and a label pinned on his breast and back, upon which is to be wrote in large characters, the crime for which he is brought to public infamy: and, to prevent his being entertained in another corps, the sentence of the Court-martial is to be inserted in his discharge.

A. B. Capt. and President.

I approve of the above proceedings, this
day of 17

[*The Commanding-officer to
sign his name and rank.*

R E M A R K S.

I am sorry to say, when a soldier commits a crime, his common excuse is drunkenness; that surely is
not

not sufficient; for this crime is the forerunner of all evils; *viz.* mutinous behaviour to superiors; quarrels, and that even among themselves, neglect of duty, desertion, and often theft; therefore, the crime of drunkenness should be punished with severity.

A Court-martial cannot be too exact and circumstantial in their enquiries; they should assume a formality, decorum, and a respectful behaviour; I would recommend to young Officers never to be biassed by any person, but adhere strictly to justice, and rather of the two, incline to mercy.

Let their own discretion, and the custom of the service in the like cases, direct them in their opinions. Equity judgeth with lenity; laws with extremity. Therefore, pass not your sentence hastily.

A very learned man says, "A judge that is prepossessed in any cause, and does not hear both sides indifferently, though the judgment he gives be right, yet himself errs; for there can be no integrity where there is any partiality."

Alexander, when he heard any one accused, would stop one ear with his hand; thereby reserving audience for the defendant.

When it happens that one company shall receive a private man, from another company, to be promoted, the company that receives him, shall give the choice of their company; the Gunners, and two private men excepted: when they have no Gunners, four private men excepted.

The grenadier company to practise the grenadier exercise frequently; and to be kept compleat, with such men, whose health, strength, and activity, can be most depended upon.

No man to be discharged who is fit for service, but upon procuring two good men in his place, or paying ten guineas to the stock-purse.

D I S-

THE MEDLEY.

15

DISCHARGE.

By _____ of his Majesty's _____ regiment of
foot, comanded by _____

These are to certify, that the bearer hereof
private foldier, has served in the abovesaid regi-
ment, and _____ company, for the space of
_____ years; is, for the reason below mentioned,
discharged from the said regiment, he having receiv-
ed his pay, arrears of pay, cloathing of all sorts,
and all other just demands, from the time of his
inlissing in the said regiment to this day of his dis-
charge, as appears by his receipt on the back of his
discharge; he is discharged, having

And to prevent any
ill use that may be made of this discharge, by its
falling into the hands of any other person whatsoever,
here follows the description of the abovesaid

aged _____ years, _____ feet _____ inches
high, _____ complexion, _____ hair,
eyes, born in the parish of _____ in the county
of _____ by trade _____

Given under my hand and regimental seal, at
this _____ day of _____ 17 _____

[Seal]

To all whom it may concern, civil and military.

I _____ do acknowledge to have received all
my pay, arrears of pay, cloathing of all sorts, and
all other just demands, from the day of my inlissing
into the said regiment to this day of my discharge.

[Signed by the discharged man.]

Witness present,

N. B. If the person discharged is entitled to his
Majesty's royal bounty, it is to be mentioned in the
discharge.

Form

Form of advertising.

Deserted from the _____ regiment of
 _____ commanded by A. B. and
 company, quartered at _____ C. D. _____ years
 of age, _____ feet, _____ inches high,
 complexion, _____ hair, _____ eyes, had on
 when deserted _____ coat, _____ waistcoat,
 breeches; born at _____ in the county of
 _____ by trade a _____ enlisted by
 at _____ the _____ day of

17

Whoever secures the said deserter, so as he may be brought to justice, having been guilty of perjury and defrauded his Colonel, shall receive from the Commanding-officer of the said regiment, at headquarters, or of the Agent to the said regiment, at his house the sum of _____ over and above what is allowed by act of parliament.

It is requested of all well-wishers to his Majesty's arms, to cause a copy of this advertisement to be posted up at the most public place.

All returns demanded from the companies, to be signed by the Commanding-officer of each company, and his rank.

Proceedings of all Regimental Courts-martial, to be entered in a regimental book, kept at headquarters for that purpose.

Orderly hour at _____ o'Clock at the orderly room, where the Serjeant-major, Quarter-master Serjeant, with a Serjeant and Corporal from each company, Drum-major, and Fife-major, are to attend for orders.

An orderly Serjeant daily to attend on the Commanding-Officer of the regiment.

The

The regiment intire to have two field days a week, and to have the manœuvre often varied; which will improve and direct Officers, instead of tiring their patience with repetitions of the manual exercise. The Officers to be in regimental frock suits and boots, their hair queued, buff coloured gloves, with sash, gorget, espantoon, or fusée, which ever is the appointment of the regiment: the Non-commissioned Officers and private men, to have their hair well platted, and tucked under their caps and hats; to be fully accoutred, and in black spatter-dashes with black tops.

FIELD RETURN.

	Commission-officers present.						Staff-Officers.					Non-commissioned Officers and private men				Detail of Officers and Men on Duty.						
	Colonel	Lieut. Colonel	Major	Captains	Lieutenants	Ensigns	Chaplain	Adjutant	Quarter-Mast.	Surgeon	Mate	Serjeants	Corporals	Drumrs & Fifs	Private men	Places where.	Captains	Subalterns	Serjeants	Corporals	Drumrs. & Fifs	Private men
Under arms —																						
On duty —																						
Sick in quarters																						
Sick in { barracks																						
in { infirmary																						
hospital																						
Prisoners —																						
Absent by leave																						
Total effectives -																						
Wanting to complet the Allowance - }																						
Total —																						

An Officer of a company, to attend morning roll-calling: when the troop beats, the companies will turn out; then the Serjeants or Corporals of the different squads will make a careful and exact inspection; after which an Officer is to inspect them, and, if he finds the Serjeant or Corporal has not made him an exact report, he is then to confine him. After the Officers have made their inspection, the eldest Officer on the spot, will then review them; and, if he finds any soldier not according to the order of the regiment, the Officer who makes the report must be answerable for it, as it is expected, he will examine every man particularly: a morning report to be signed by the Officer of each company who has inspected the men; in which all extraordinaries that have happened in the preceding twenty-four hours are to be inserted.

Morning Report of Company of 17			NAMES.
Serjeants	Present fit for duty —		
	On duty —		
	Total —		
Drumrs.	Present fit for duty —		NAMES.
	On duty —		
	Total —		
Fifers.	Present fit for duty —		
	On duty —		
	Total —		
Rank and file.	Present fit for duty —		NAMES.
	Ditto not fit —		
	On duty —		
	Sick in { quarters —		
	barracks —		
	infirmary —		
	hospital —		
	Recruiting —		
	On furlough —		
	On command —		
	Prisoners —		
	Absent by leave —		
	Ditto without —		
Total —			

One Captain and two Subalterns to attend at retreat beating, who are to report any men that are absent without leave, drunk, disorderly, or not properly dressed.

The Major is to be *active, vigilant*, and well acquainted with the strength of the battalion and details of the corps, as it particularly falls on him; and well instructed in the exercise, and every kind of manœuvre: when the Major is absent, the eldest Captain is to fill that Post.

The Adjutant to do no duty but that of Adjutant: when a young Officer joins the regiment, he must give him a copy of the standing-orders of the regiment, and acquaint him that he must immediately prepare an orderly book, wherein all orders relative to exercise, and other duties, are to be inserted. The Adjutant to be very exact in reading the orders of the day to the men at roll calling, and to keep his roster and rolls for duties clear; that no Officer may be sent on party, or put on duty, out of his turn. The Serjeant-major to keep a roster and roll of duties, of the Non-commission Officers and private men; the Serjeants and Corporals to keep size and duty rolls of their respective companies; the Drum and Fife-Majors to observe the same for their drummers and fifes.

REGULATION *for doing* DUTY.

In all duties, whether with, or without arms, picquets or court-martials, the tour of duty shall begin with the eldest downwards.

1st, Duties of honour.

The King's guard, the Queen's guard, the Prince of Wales's, and the Captain-general's or Field-Marshal's commanding the army.

2d, Detachments of the army and out-posts.

3d, General Officer's guards.

C 2

1st. The

4th, The ordinary guards, either in camp or garrison.

5th, The picquets.

6th, General courts-martial.

7th, Without arms, or of fatigues.

An Officer who is upon duty, cannot be ordered for any other, before that duty is finished, except he be on the picquet.

If an Officer's tour for duty happens when he is on the picquet, he shall be immediately relieved, and go upon that duty. The tour of the picquet shall pass him, though he should not have been on it a quarter of an hour.

If any Officer's tour for the picquet, general court-martial, or duty of fatigue, happens when he is on duty, he shall not make good that picquet, court-martial, or fatigue, when he comes off, but his tour shall pass; and the same if he be on a general court-martial, or duty of fatigue; for if his tour for guard or detachment should then happen, his guard or detachment shall pass, and he shall not be obliged to make them up.

Guards or detachments, which have not marched off from the place of parade or rendezvous, are not to be reckoned as a duty done; but if they should have marched from the place of parade, it shall be reckoned as a duty, though they should be dismissed immediately.

General courts-martial that have assembled, and the members sworn in, shall be reckoned a duty, tho' they should be dismissed without trying any person.

The King's standard, in the guards, is never to be carried on any guard, but on that of his Majesty's.

The first colour of regiments, is not to be carried on any guard, but the King's, Queen's, Prince of Wales's, or Captain General's, he being of the Royal Family: and, except in those cases, it shall always remain

remain with the regiment. The union is the first colour.

The Quarter-master, though he should have another commission, is to do no duty but that of Quarter-master. While the regiment is on actual service, he is to take care of the ammunition and stores of the regiment, and to attend on all days, that coals, forage, &c. is delivered to the regiment; and prevent frauds being committed, by carriers, or any idle persons usually attending at such times.

The Surgeon to keep a book, in which shall be entered, every man's name, with his distemper, specifying whether he be sent to the regimental, or other infirmary, and the day when.

The Surgeon and his Mate to visit the infirmary every morning, and as often as occasion may require; and every Saturday to make a return of the sick, wherein he is to insert every man's name, company he belongs to, and his disorder.

Return of the Sick in the Regiment of commanded by at with an Account of the Pay of each sick Soldier in the Regimental Infirmary, from the of following, inclusive.								
Companies.	Men's Names.	Diseases.	When admitted.	Subfistce. l. s. d.	Expences. l. s. d.	Ballance. l. s. d.	Discharged from the Infirmary.	Where sick.

The

The Surgeon to lay a state of the expences of the infirmary, and all other matters relating to it, before the Infirmary Board, the first Monday in every month, for their inspection.

When the regiment is to be under arms for exercise, the Surgeon, or his Mate, is to sign a return of the sick and lame of each company, which is to be given in with the field return.

The Surgeon or his Mate to attend at all times, when the regiment is under arms, morning and evening roll callings; and to be present at all punishments, to judge when the delinquent has received a sufficient number of lashes for that time, that no punishment may extend to life or limb.

Drill-serjeants and Corporals, are to take particular care of their squads, to teach the recruits how to fix their flints so as to procure the most fire, to cause the recruits to be steady and silent under arms, and that they hold up their heads, and carry their arms well. Great attention must be had in the instructing of recruits how to take aim, and that they properly adjust their ball. No recruit to be dismissed from the drill, till he is so expert with his firelock, as to load and fire fifteen times in three minutes and three quarters.

If any Serjeant or Corporal drinks, or keeps company with the soldiers, drummers, or fifers, or conceals from his Officer any indecent or un-soldier-like behaviour among them, he will be reduced for it.

No Serjeant who shall be employed to buy necessaries for the men, shall make any profit or advantage thereby, except that of making up the linen, if made by his wife, and this to be absolutely at the choice of the men, for whom it is bought, who shall be present at the buying, and see the money paid; nor shall he extort from the men, under pretence

of money advanced, since the Officer who commands the company will supply what is wanting ; and, as an effectual stop to all proceedings of this kind, if any soldier, drummer or fife, shall make full and clear proof of the above-mentioned fraud, he shall receive one guinea reward, and be put in any other company he desires, provided the complaint be lodged within two months after the fact is committed.

No Serjeant upon any account, to presume to go on party or furlough, without leaving whatever accounts of the company he may have by him, either with an Officer or a Serjeant.

Any Serjeant Corporal, drummer, fifer or soldier who goes on furlough, and does not return at the expiration of it, must expect to be punished for disobedience of orders, without it is occasioned by sickness; then he is to get his furlough properly certified by an Officer of the army; if none be there, by the chief Magistrate; and a letter must be wrote to the Commanding-officer of the regiment, acquainting him of his sickness and place he is at.

F U R L O U G H.

By _____ commanding his Majesty's
_____ regiment of _____ whereof
is Colonel.

Permit the bearer hereof _____ private
 soldier in the above regiment, and
 company, aged _____ years, size _____ feet
 _____ inches high without shoes, born in the
 parish of _____ in the town of _____
 in the county of _____ by occupation a
 _____ to pass and re-pass from his present
 quarters at _____ in _____ to _____
 in _____ he having leave of absence for the
 _____ space

space of days, to which time he is subsisted, and at the expiration of which he is to repair to the quarters of the company he belongs to, wherever it may happen to be (sickness and contrary winds excepted) on pain of being treated as a deserter, should he not punctually comply with the terms of this furlough.

Given under my hand and seal of the regiment,
this day of 17

(Seal.) _____ above regiment of _____ to the

N. B. It is requested that no Officer, either civil or military, will renew this furlough, except for the reasons before mentioned.

FORM OF A P A S S.

By **regiment of foot.**

Permit the bearer private foldier in
the above regiment, and company,
to pass from hence to for the space
of days, to join his colours or company,
he behaving as becometh a foldier.

To all concerned. A. B.
in the regiment.

Serjeants and Corporals, sent on command, are strictly ordered, on their arrival in town, after the men have received their billets, and refreshed themselves, to see that they pull off their gaiters, and appear dressed in every respect as at their quarters.

No Serjeants, Corporals, drummers, fifers, or private soldiers to appear in the barrack yard or street, without

without their hair being well platted and tucked under their hats, shoes well blacked, stockings clean, black garters, black stocks, buckles bright, and cloaths in thorough good repair.

If any man be slothful, or not dressed according to order, the Serjeant or Corporal of the squad, must assist in making him obedient to it, and report the behaviour of such man to his Officer, or he will be found fault with.

A Serjeant or Corporal of each company, to be in the way to receive any orders, that may be given, and to attend the parade at the dismounting of guards, to take the ammunition from the men, and to see them draw their arms if loaded.

A Serjeant or Corporal of each company to attend the recruits and awkward men, when they parade for exercise, to see they are properly dressed, arms and accoutrements well put on, and in perfect good order.

A Serjeant or Corporal of each company to go round the barracks or quarters of their companies, as soon as the taptoo has beat, and report any men that are absent; and every morning before troop beating, to see that their arms and accoutrements are properly hung up, beds well turned up, and the rooms, stairs and galleries clean swept.

All Serjeants and Corporals are to confine any drummer, fifer or soldier, who may be gaming, which they are ordered never to be guilty of, and if found out will be punished for disobedience of orders.

All Serjeants and Corporals are to confine any drummer, fifer, or soldier they meet drunk or disorderly.

No Serjeant or Corporal shall sell any kind of liquors on any pretence whatever: the Commanding-officer of a company is not to pay any debt the men may contract on that account.

When

When any casualties happen in a company, the Pay-master-serjeant must take care to preserve the regimentals, that the succeeding recruit may be clothed equally with his brother soldier, provided the soldier had not worn them one year; if he had, his wife or child is entitled to them.

17		Remarks.	
Return of the Casualties of a Company,	Cloaths.	Coat	
		Waistcoat	
		Breeches	
		Hat	
		Shirts	
		Stockings	
	Necessaries.	Rollers or stocks	
		Spatterdash	
		Shoes	
	Company, Men's Names, Dead.		
	Deferred, Draught-Discharged, Drummed out.		

A Corporal when he posts a centinel, must be careful to instruct him in his duty; and the centinel must endeavour to know those who are intitled to rested arms; a young recruit should be posted centry nearest the protection of the main guards.

A Corporal posting or relieving a centinel irregular, shall be broke.

A Corporal at relieving is not to suffer a centinel to wear a watch coat, or take shelter in his centry-box, except in very bad weather, to prevent his arms being wet; and this indulgence is only to be given in a peaceable country.

A Corporal of a company to give a return of the sick and lame every morning to the Surgeon or his Mate.

Return of the sick, &c. of morning		company 17	
Lame in quarters, A. B. Serjeant	— — —	I	
Ditto in barracks, C. D. Corporal	— — —	I	
Sick in infirmary, E. F. drummer	— — —	I	
Sick in hospital, G. H. fifer	— — —	I	
Total		4	
To The Surgeon.			
J. K. Corporal.			

The Corporals always to have a brush on the parade, that the soldiers cloaths may be clean brushed.

The Drum and Fife-majors, with all the drummers and fifers off duty, to beat the troop, retreat, and taptuo beatings every day.

The Drum and Fife-majors to take particular care that the drummers and fifers are properly dressed, their drums and fives in good order, and that

that they practise together twice a week. No drummer or fifer to beat or play after taptoo, or before reveilie beating, on pain of severe punishment, except by order of the Commanding-officer. The Drum-major to be answerable that no cat has more than nine tails.

The Musicians to attend roll callings; and at all times when the regiment is under arms, the one most capable is to be appointed to act as master of the band, under whose care and inspection the others are to be, and he must be answerable for their clean and uniform appearance; they are not to play except by order of the Commanding-officer.

The Non-commissioned Officers and soldiers when they meet an Officer, either of the army or navy, in his Majesty's service, shall stand still at the distance of five yards, till he passes them; at the same time pulling off their hats with the left hand, without bowing their bodies, and letting their left hands fall to the extent of the arm, to be careful of their carriage that they may not contract an un-soldier-like air.

No soldier to carry coals, as it makes them dirty and slovenly, or any thing on their heads, when they have their regimental cloaths or hat on, nor to carry children about the barrack yard or street: nor shall any man be allowed to work who does not produce to his Officer a coat and hat for that purpose; or be excused from being under arms, with the regiment or company, under pretence of working, or any other reason, but that of being included in the Surgeon's list.

No man, returned in the sick-list, to go out of his barracks or quarters, without leave from the Surgeon or his Mate; if well enough, he is expected to appear, in every respect, dressed according to the order of the regiment.

Any.

Any man who presumes to cut off his hair, except certified by the Surgeon or his Mate, shall be confined for disobedience of orders.

When the accoutrements want cleaning, the men are to rub the dirty spots, with a wet woollen cloth, very well, and put some colouring-ball upon the place, and, when dry, rub it off with a hard brush; but never to scrape them with knives, scissars or any thing that may cut them.

No soldier is to make use of his bayonet to turn the cock-screw of his firelock, or otherwise abuse that weapon.

As each man's arms are properly numbered, so that every man may know his own, therefore no man is, upon any account whatever, to put any private mark upon his firelock, by driving of nails in them, or any other method.

No man to take his arms or accoutrements out of his barracks or quarters, unless for duty, or to learn his exercise, without leave from a Commission or Non-commissioned Officer.

Any man that is ordered to the drill, and does not go, shall be sent to the black-hole for forty-eight hours, and be kept upon low diet; for the second neglect, one week, &c. for the third, to be sent prisoner to the guard-house, in order to be tried by a Court-martial,

Whatever man's firelock shall miss fire twice, or be defective in any part of it, the man to whom it belongs, that neglects to report it to his Officer, will be sent to the drill for a month, and make good the duty he misses during that time.

Any men who fire their pieces without orders, or occasion false alarms by drawing of swords, beating of drums, or by any other means whatever, if in Great Britain or Ireland, shall be most severely punished;

nished; and if in foreign parts, to be tried by a General Court-martial.

Any man convicted of selling his ammunition, to be punished with the utmost severity.

No man to dispose of any part of his cloathing, or other necessaries provided for him, on any pretence whatever, without leave from his Officer.

No men, upon any pretence, to be above one mile from quarters, without leave from the Commanding-officer; nor are they to drain ponds, fish, shoot, or destroy rabbits, or go in search of any kind of game whatever; nor are they to cut trees, climb over hedges, ditches, or break down fences, so as to give the least umbrage to any person: whatever man disobeys any part of the above order, will be confined and tried for disobedience of it.

All men are to retire to their barracks or quarters, whenever there is any mob, bull-beating, or football matches, on pain of being confined for disobedience of orders.

No man drunk on guard, party, duty, or under arms, is to expect to be shewn the least lenity.

When any thing is lost, stolen, or spoiled on guard, the whole men of the guard shall pay for it, and the loser be sent to the Black-hole for fourteen days, and kept upon low diet.

Any man, that shall use any reproachful or provoking speeches, or gestures, or upbraid any other man, shall be sent to the black-hole for fourteen days, and kept upon low diet, and ask pardon in the presence of his Commanding-officer.

All recruiting-parties to consist of one Commission-officer, one Serjeant, one Corporal, one drummer, and two private men.

RECRUIT-

RECRUITING-INSTRUCTIONS for A. B. of the
Regiment of Foot, commanded by

the

Day of

17

1. You are to inlist no man who is not a Protestant and a native of Great-Britain; if any Irishman, or foreigner, through mistake, should happen to be approved of, and, within three months after joining the regiment, shall be discovered to be so, he will be discharged at your loss; provided it can be made appear, the Officer had reason to suspect him.

2. You are to inlist no man under the age of seventeen, nor above twenty-five, unless he has served in the army; in which case he will be accepted of, provided he does not exceed twenty-eight years of age. No man who has been whipped or drummed out of any regiment, will be approved of; if any such is found out, within three months after joining the regiment, he will be discharged at your loss.

3. You must inlist no man under the size of five feet without shoes, or who has not straight limbs, broad shoulders, a good face, and is every way well made. You must inlist no man who cannot wear his hair, who is thin, or has the least defect in his knees.

4. You will take particular care to have all your recruits carefully examined by a Surgeon; for a man who is subject to fits, or has any appearance of a rupture, broken bones, sore legs, scald head, ulcers or running sores, on any part of his body, old wounds ill cured, or any infirmity in body or limb, will not be approved of, but will be discharged at your loss, if discovered within three months after joining the regiment. Should you discover that your Serjeant, Corporal, or any man of your party, knew that any of your recruits was afflicted as above,

D

and

and conceal it from you, he or they shall be brought to a Court-martial, and severely punished.

5. All recruits to be duly attested before a magistrate. A receipt to be taken on the back of their attestations, and witnessed, for the bounty-money agreed on. If any of your party enlist a man for you, you must allow him five shillings as an encouragement.

The attestation of the enlisted men are to be sent to the regiment by the Serjeant or Corporal who brings the recruits to quarters, who is to deliver them to the Commanding-officer, who will give them to the Adjutant, in order that recourse may be had to them, if necessary.

6. You must enlist no strollers, vagabonds, tinkers, chimney-sweepers, colliers or sailors; but endeavour to get men born and bred in the neighbourhood of the county you are recruiting in.

7. For every recruit, approved of at the regiment, you will be allowed £3 13s 6d. out of which sum no more than £1 11s 6d. shall be given to each recruit as bounty-money.

8. The non-effective fund shall be charged with the real expence of all the recruits who may die before they join the regiment, provided the day of their death and the exact bounty-money given them be certified on the back of the attestation.

9. Not less than four recruits to be sent at a time; they are to go under the care of a Serjeant or Corporal to the regiment, with money to subsist them.

10. You will take particular care that the recruits furnish themselves out of their bounty-money with linen, shoes, stockings, &c.

A return of their necessaries must be sent with them to the regiment, signed by you, and also a return

return of the fir-name, age, size, country, and description of each recruit, &c.

11. All subsistence given to the recruits before they join their regiments shall be charged separately from the levy-money.

When you arrive at the place where you are to recruit, you will write to the Commanding-officer at head-quarters, to acquaint him of it; and also if you change your place of recruiting.

No Serjeant, Corporal, drummer, fifer, or private man, once enlisted in this regiment, must be discharged, but as the Articles of War direct.

When you send any recruits to the regiment, you will give notice of it to the agent by letter, inclosing a state of your account.

N. B. When directions are given to enlist lads for drummers or fifers, they are to be inserted in their certificate: when the Commanding-officer shall think proper, they shall be put into the ranks, and serve as private soldiers, without being intitled to any further bounty-money.

Form of an Attestation.

I *A. B.* do make oath, that I am a protestant, and born of protestant parents; that I am no apprentice, nor belong to any regiment of militia, or to any other regiment in his Majesty's service; that I am by trade a _____ and, to the best of my information and belief, was born in the parish of _____ in the county of _____ and kingdom of _____

_____ and that I have no rupture, nor ever troubled with fits; that I am no way disabled by lameness or otherwise, but have the perfect use of my limbs, and that I voluntarily enlisted myself to serve his Majesty King George, as a private soldier, in the _____ regiment of _____ commanded by _____ and _____

and that I have received all the inlifting money
which I agreed for. As witness my hand this
day of 17

Witness present,
C. D. of the above
Regiment.

A. B. Recruit.

These are to certify, that the aforesaid
aged years feet inches
high, complexion, hair, eyes,
made, came before me, one of his
Majesty's for the and
maketh oath (as above) that he had voluntarily in-
lifted himself to serve his Majesty King George, in
the abovementioned regiment: he also acknowledg-
ed, he had heard the 2d and 6th sections of the
Articles of War read unto him, against mutiny and
desertion, and took the oath of fidelity, according
to the directions of the third section of the Articles
of War, as follows :

E. F. Mayor.

I A. B. swear to be true to our Sovereign Lord
King George, and to serve him honestly and faith-
fully in the defence of his person, crown and dignity,
against all his enemies and opposers whatsoever; and
to observe and obey his Majesty's orders, and the
orders of the Generals and Officers set over me by
his Majesty.

So help me God.

A. B. Recruit.

Sworn before me the
in the year of our Lord, 17
at

day of

E. F.

Re-

37

Digitized by Google

When the regiment is to be new clothed, the Lieutenant-colonel, or Officer commanding the regiment, is not to make any alteration therein without further orders.

In fitting the cloathing, all Officers are to be very careful that the following directions are complied with :

The new coats to be dipt in clean fresh water, and to be laid in the sun to dry: each man to be fitted with a coat and a pair of breeches: the bottom of every man's coat to be four inches from the ground, when kneeling upon both knees, and to hang of an equal length quite round: the waistcoats for the front and rear ranks of grenadiers to have thirteen holes and buttons on each side, from the top of the waistcoat to the point of the pocket; center rank, and front rear ranks of the battalion, to have twelve; center rank of the battalion eleven. All waistcoats must cover the soldier well, and to be made full in every part: they are to be cut square at the bottom, and to open back from the lowermost button-hole to the point; which lower button and hole are to cover the lower part of the waistband of the breeches: the back-seam of the waistcoat to be sewed down as low as the lower part of the waistband of the breeches, and to be strengthened at the bottom of the side-seam: the new breeches to be double sewed in all the seams, and made to fit easy, full and well: the escutcheon of the bottom of the side-seam of the coat to be well secured from ripping by a neat loop, and the opening of the back-skirt to be sewed down as low as the bottom of the second loop, and secured there from ripping by a neat loop; the bottom of the lappels to be well stitched; the shoulder-straps to be made high on the shoulder, and sewed down flat one inch, so that the remaining part, when unbuttoned, may fall along the arm; and, when

when buttoned, to be of a sufficient length to contain the shoulder-belt with ease, and no longer: the skirts of the coats to be sewed together, and a piece of red cloth, near three inches long, and almost two in breadth, with a narrow square lace, put on at the corners, and a button in the center of the cloth; one of these to be sewed to the point of each skirt.

Four yards and three inches of lace are sufficient to lace the waistcoats of the regiment, one with the other, grenadiers included. A foraging cap and stopper to be made up, conformable to a pattern-one, out of part of the old coat, and the skirts to be taken into store, and to be made into breeches, when the ammunition-breeches are near worn out.

Directions for making the Skirt-Breeches.

Each man must be taken measure of, and care taken that the lining of the breeches is of strong new linen; the breeches to be made full in the seat, to come well over the hips and low under the knee, with a strap for the buckle, and four buttons and button-holes.

No taylor to presume to purloin or steal any part of the cloth, nor are the waistcoats to be worked upon, till the coats and breeches are well finished and fitted to the soldier.

**REGULATIONS and ORDERS for a
REGIMENTAL INFIRMARY.**

EVERY soldier, when taken sick, must be sent to the infirmary; a portable chair to be in readiness, and to be kept at the main-guard, to carry the sick men, if they are very ill; if they are not very ill, a Corporal and two men must assist the sick men to the infirmary. The orderly Corporal of the company must bring the pay with the sick men; and he is to take care that the patient has a cap and shirt,

and to search him, that he may not bring into the infirmary, money, cards, dice, spirits, or tobacco; nor is any clean linen to be brought, or foul fetched away, except by a Serjeant or Corporal. If the sick man's mess is put in, his mess-mates must allow him his proportion in money, for the remainder of the week; and what is deficient must be advanced to make good his pay to the pay-day following.—

s. d. per week, is to be the infirmary-allowance, till further orders: Serjeants, Corporals, drummers, musicians, and fifers, are to pay the same. A Serjeant or Corporal of the companies, who have any men in the regimental infirmary, are ordered to carry their linen every and , on which last day they must bring their subsistence, and pay it to the Serjeant attending the infirmary. Any soldier, when a patient in the infirmary, who does not submit to the rules of the house, and directions of the doctor, is to be sent to the black-hole for twenty-four hours, as soon as his cure is perfected; and, if notoriously refractory, to be tried by a regimental Court-martial. If a patient in the infirmary should break out from thence, he shall be sent to the black-hole for ten days, on low diet, when recovered. A Serjeant or Corporal of a company must visit the sick in the infirmary twice every week, to know what linen they may want; and he must bring nothing to any patient but wearing apparel, without the Surgeon's permission. If any soldier should be detected in conveying spirituous liquors to the sick in the infirmary, or shall be aiding or assisting thereto, he shall be punished by the sentence of a Court-martial. If any Serjeant or Corporal is a patient in the infirmary, he must be aiding and assisting to the Doctor, as much as he is able, in keeping order and decency among the patients, and detecting any mean practices committed in the infirmary,
con trary

contrary to the standing orders : and if any Serjeant or Corporal shall connive at any thing improper to be brought in, and not discover the same to the Surgeon, he will be reduced to the pay and duty of a private soldier. The Serjeant attending the infirmary must keep an exact account of the pay of each ward, oversee it being laid out by the nurse, according to the Doctor's directions, and close the account every half week, that any man, who is to be discharged on _____, may have his overplus divided when he is dismissed. A Corporal of a company to attend every _____ and _____ afternoon, to receive the recovered men. Every man discharged the infirmary must be duty-free for three days or more, at the discretion of the Surgeon. The account of money disbursed, and the dividend for each man, must be given every morning to the Surgeon, that the Commanding-officer may inspect it when he pleases; and the Serjeant must give a distinct copy of that account to the Serjeant or Corporal who relieves him; the relief to be weekly; the attending Serjeant to give receipts for coals, candles and sheeting for the use of the infirmary. No sick soldier can have his wife employed as one of the nurses; and if any of the nurses husbands are taken ill, such nurses must be dismissed, or her pay discontinued till the recovery of her husband. Married men of good character, who live near the infirmary, and who have careful wives, if they are taken ill, and keep their bed, may be allowed to remain in their lodgings, at the discretion of the Surgeon, providing their continuance in quarters is no inconveniency to their disease, or their tenderness for the good of the men, and to prevent infection spreading amongst them. And it is ordered that any man, taken with the small-pox, should immediately, upon the discovery of the disease,

ease, be sent to as private and remote lodgings as can be got, and all soldiers prevented from visiting such sick man, as well as the sick in the infirmary, as they are liable to catch fevers and distempers, and bring those maladies among their brother-soldiers. The centry posted at the infirmary is not to suffer any one to go in there, except those brought by a Corporal or people attending the infirmary; and he is likewise to prevent the sick from coming out, or leaving their wards to trouble the kitchens. The centry may be taken off every night at ten o'clock (except any thing extraordinary requires his being continued) and planted again at day-break. Any of the men, who have slight complaints, may attend the Surgeon at a place appointed, at ten o'clock in the morning, when the Corporals are to give in their reports of the sick. The Surgeon is to make a report to the Commanding-Officer whenever any of these orders are not complied with, that the offenders may receive proper punishment for their neglect,

REGULA-

THE MEDLEY.

REGULATIONS OF DIET FOR THE INFIRMARY.			
Day of the week.	Meals.	FULL DIET.	HALF DIET.
Sunday and Thursday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper,	A pint of water-gruel. Eight ounces of boiled beef. One pint of broth.	A pint of water-gruel. Four ounces of beef, and a pint of broth. A pint of broth.
Tuesday and Saturday	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper,	A Pint of water-gruel. Eight ounces of boiled mutton. A Pint of broth.	A pint of water-gruel. Four ounces of mutton, and a pint of broth. A pint of broth.
Monday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper,	A Pint of water-gruel. A Pint of rice milk. Two ounces of cheese, or one of butter.	A pint of water-gruel. A pint of rice milk. A pint of water-gruel.
Wednesday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper,	A Pint of water-gruel. Twelve ounces of pudding. Two ounces of cheese, or one of butter.	A pint of water-gruel. Six ounces of pudding. A pint of water-gruel.
Friday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper,	A Pint of water-gruel. A Pint of barley-gruel. Two ounces of cheese, or one of butter.	A pint of water-gruel. A pint of barley-gruel. A pint of water-gruel.
N. B. The men on full diet have a pound of bread and a pint of small beer every day. The men on half diet have half a pound of bread and a pint of small beer every day.			

When the regiment is together, a picquet-guard, besides the usual guards, to mount daily; consisting of one Captain, two Subalterns, two Serjeants, two Corporals, two drummers, and fifty private men. The Subalterns are to be sent visiting rounds. Where no less than four companies are quartered, a guard of one Serjeant, one Corporal, and twelve private men; and a picquet of one Subaltern, one Serjeant, one Corporal, one drummer, and twenty-four private men. Where three companies are quartered, a guard of one Serjeant, one Corporal, and twelve private men, and an orderly Officer for the day. And where less than three companies, a guard of one Serjeant, one Corporal, and twelve private men, and an Officer to stay in garrison or quarters. Where any of the above guards are mounted, they are to be kept in readiness for such occasions as may be required, and are to prevent disturbances, and keep good order and regularity among the men, and are to grant such parties to those who have a sufficient authority to demand the aid of the military, as they shall require, they remaining constantly with the party. The demand must be in writing, and signed.

When the regiment is ordered into cantonments, the Commanding-officer will dispose of the companies in such manner as he shall judge is for the good of his Majesty's service, paying a particular attention to the appointing an Officer to command at each cantonment, whose experience and good conduct can be depended upon. The colours, Chaplain, Pay-master, Surgeon, Adjutant, Quarter-master, Serjeant-major, Quarter master Serjeant, Drill-serjeant, Corporal, and all the recruits, Drum-major, Fife major, the Serjeant or Corporal appointed to act as School-master, with the music and fifers, are all to be kept at head-quarters. When seven companies

panies are ordered to march, the Lieutenant-colonel, with the colours, Staff-officers, music, &c. should march with them; the Major, when four companies march; a Captain from three companies to one; a Lieutenant, with one Serjeant, one Corporal, one drummer, and twenty-seven private men; an Ensign with one Serjeant, one Corporal, one drummer, and twenty-one private men; a Serjeant from twelve to fifteen private men; a Corporal from four to nine private men: the Surgeon to march when a Field-officer does; and his Mate with one or more companies. Notwithstanding the foregoing regulations, Officers and Non-commissioned Officers, are obliged to march with a smaller number, and sometimes with a greater, just as the service and situation of circumstances may require.

The day before the regiment begins their march, the Quarter-master, or an Officer as such, is to be sent forward to prepare quarters against their arrival. Each man to march with twenty-four rounds of powder and ball, and two flints, and to carry all his necessaries. Reviellie not to beat the morning the regiment marches. When the whole troops march, first beat is the general, second the assembly, third the march: if only part marches, first beat is the assembly, second the troop, third the march. In Great Britain and Ireland I would have the regiment march by files, to prevent their being interrupted by narrow roads, carriages, or droves of cattle. The Officer commanding the grenadiers, leads the center of the front file; and the Officer commanding the battalion, leads the center of the front file of the battalion; the Lieutenant-colonel, when the Colonel is present, brings up the center of the last file of the battalion; as the Officer commanding the rear division of grenadiers does the center of the last file of grenadiers. The rest of the
Officers

Officers march upon the outward flank of the front rank.

The drummers and fifers in the same line; the Serjeants march upon the outward flank of the rear rank; the music to march in a line by the colours; the Major, Adjutant, and Serjeant-major to be upon the flanks. An advance, rear, and baggage guard, to be appointed according to the strength of the regiment; the rear-guard to bring up all stragglers; and if any man is taken so sick, as not able to march, two careful men are to be left with him, one of which will soon after come and acquaint the Commanding-officer where such man is left, and what is his disorder. The Surgeon and his Mate to march with the regiment. No Officer to leave his post, nor Non-commissioned Officer or soldier to quit his file without leave: the Officer that suffers it, will be answerable for it. The regiment must behave with great regularity upon the march; and before they march into any village, town, or garrison, an Officer to be sent forward; and if troops are there, he must wait upon the Commanding-officer for leave for the regiment to march in. When they arrive at their quarters, the credit of the regiment to be cried down, place of parade appointed, the guards to be mounted, and the colours to be lodged in form at the Commanding-officer's quarters, and a centry posted over them. The alarm-posts to be fixed, and the necessary precautions to be given the men against whoring, drinking, gaming, and rioting. Upon beating to arms, all Officers and soldiers who are not upon duty, to repair with their arms to their alarm-posts. The picquet-guard will assemble where the colours are lodged. If the alarm is occasioned by fire, the pioneers are to assemble with them, with their axe and saw only. The Commanding-officer will give all such necessary orders as the present exigency may require,

require, and for securing the effects of the unhappy sufferers.

The regiment is not to march from its alarm-posts, or be dismissed, except by order of the Commanding officer.

Directions for making up of the Contingent Bill.

War Office, Nov. 26, 1765.

I AM to signify to you his Majesty's pleasure, that for the future all demands for marches, and other contingent charges of the regiment under your command shall be sent twice in the year, at Midsummer and Christmas, to the War-office directly. You will at the same time transmit to your Agent a duplicate of the said account.

It is likewise his Majesty's pleasure that in the said accounts, all expences shall be entered under their true heads; and no more charged on any head whatever than what was really and truly paid.

That in the contingent bills there shall be a column for the dates of the orders upon which the marches were made.

That the marches shall be set down in the order of time in which they happened.

That none but the usual and customary charges shall be made, and no extraordinary charges be set down, unless vouched by a particular order from the Secretary at War, the date of which order must be specified.

And, for the more perfect exactness in stating and vouching the aforesaid accounts, you will be pleased to take care, that each Captain shall give into the Regimental Paymaster an account of what he has expended, signed by himself; which accounts, certified by the Paymaster of the regiment likewise under his
hand,

hand, shall be delivered to the Commanding-officer for the time being; to be sent, after examination by him as aforesaid, to the War-office and Agent with the following declaration signed by him.

“I certify upon honour, as directed by a letter from the Secretary at War, that the exact sums which are charged in this bill for the several contingent expences therein mentioned, are the actual sums which have been advanced, and no more, according to the best of my knowledge and belief, after the most careful examination.”

I am also to acquaint you, that all the declarations aforesaid made respectively by the Captains, Paymaster, and by yourself, will be regarded in the same light as returns upon honour.

Warrant for regulating the Non-effective Fund of the several Regiments of Infantry.

GEORGE R.

WHEREAS We have judged it necessary for Our service to ascertain the articles which may be charged against the non-effective fund of Our marching regiments of foot, excluding at the same time all other articles whatever; in order that the said fund may be kept apart for the purpose of recruiting, and that the ballance which shall remain (after satisfying the charges hereby admitted) may be applied to other public military uses: We have therefore thought fit to order and direct, that for the future no charge shall be made against the said non-effective fund, but what comes fairly and decently under the following heads: viz.

The levy-money and expence of each recruit, and also his subsistence till he joins the regiment.
Bounty-money to discharged men, to carry them home.

Hospital

The subsistence of invalids discharged, and recommended to Our royal bounty of Chelsea Hospital, from the day to which they are subsisted by the regiment, to that on which they are admitted on the pension, or rejected by the board.

Expences of beating-orders, and attested copies thereof.

Expences of debenture warrants.

Expences relating to deserters.

Expences of the passage of recruiting parties, and recruits by sea from and to the regiment.

And whereas Our late Royal Grandfather, of glorious memory, was pleased to direct, by a regulation in 1743, that the non-effective accounts of the several regiments of infantry, should be annually stated on the 24th of *June*, and that whatever balance remained (after deducting £5. for every man wanting, to compleat, to be carried to the credit of the succeeding account) should be divided among the Captains; partly in aid of their extraordinary expences, and partly as a reward of their care and diligence in compleating their companies; which regulation Our said late Royal Grandfather was pleased to suspend during the late war; And whereas We have judged that it will be more for the benefit of Our service, that the allowance made to the Captains should be limited; We are pleased to direct, that, for the future, the non-effective accounts shall continue to be settled annually to the 24th of *June*, when £5. shall be set apart for each man wanting to compleat, at the preceding spring-review, and carried to the succeeding accounts; after which the balance which shall remain shall be divided among the Captains, provided it should not exceed £20. to each Captain. And We are pleased to direct, that the sums so paid to the Captains, shall be

E

entered

entered as the last charge in the non-effective account of each regiment. And Our further will and pleasure is, that in case any surplus shall remain on ballance of the non-effective fund, annually stated on the 24th of *June*, after deducting £5. for every man wanting to compleat (which must be carried to the credit of the succeeding accounts, as aforesaid) and after paying to each Captain their entire allowance of £20. that ballance shall be carried to the credit of the succeeding year's account. And the several Agents are hereby directed to acquaint Our Secretary at War, upon the settling each year's accounts, with the amount of this surplus or ballance for Our information.

And We do further direct, that all other charges and expences whatever, incurred by our marching regiments of foot, and which have been usually allowed, shall, for the future, be inserted in the general half-yearly contingent bill, ordered to be transmitted to Our Secretary at War, by his letters bearing date the 26th day of *November*, 1765: Our farther will and pleasure is, that in the keeping and making up the non-effective accounts of each of our said regiments, the following directions be for the future strictly observed.

That no more than £3 13s 6d shall be allowed to any recruiting officer for each man recruited by him; out of which sum no more than £1 11s 6d shall be given to each recruit, according to Our directions signified by Our Secretary at War, bearing date the 17th of *December*, 1765; but no charge whatever is to be admitted on account of recruits, who may desert before they join the regiment.

No Recruiting-officer shall be allowed credit for the levy-money, of any such recruits as shall not be approved of by the Commanding-officer of each regiment respectively; but their subsistence he shall be allowed.

The

The non-effective fund shall be charged with the real expence of all the recruits, who may die before they join the regiment, provided the day of their death, and the exact bounty-money given them, be certified by the Recruiting-officer on the back of the attestation.

All subsistence given to recruits, before they join the regiment, shall be charged separately from the levy-money. The accounts of all Recruiting-officers are to be stated and settled on or before the 24th of *June*. In regiments stationed in Great-Britain, the recruiting accounts are to be signed by the Recruiting-officer himself, and by the Field-officer commanding at quarters; in regiments stationed abroad, the said accounts are to be signed by the Recruiting-officer, and by the Colonel, or one of the Field-officers, if either of them shall be in Great-Britain.

And Our pleasure is, that the above accounts, so signed, shall be good and sufficient vouchers to the Agent, for the credit given by him to each Recruiting-officer on the head of recruiting.

That in all future states of the regimental accounts given in to the Reviewing-general, the number of recruits for which levy-money and subsistence are charged, shall be particularly and separately specified.

And whereas it has been the practice in some of Our marching regiments of foot, to allow the Captains, without accounts, the subsistence of the vacant men, in their respective companies, arising from vacancies which happen between the days whereon each Captain usually receives the subsistence of his company; it is Our express order, that, for the future, the Captains shall account for the vacant subsistence of each man, who shall die, desert, or be discharged, between the abovementioned periods, from the date of such death, desertion, or discharge; and that the non-effective fund shall have credit for the vacant

subsistence, of every man from the day on which he is no longer entitled to subsistence.

We are farther pleased to direct, that every Colonel shall himself carefully examine the non-effective account, previous to its being laid before the Reviewing-general. He is likewise to certify under his hand, that he believes it to be fair and exact, and the Reviewing-general shall report to us any articles which shall appear to him to be charged, contrary to these Our orders; as likewise whether proper credit be given to the non-effective fund, for the whole vacant subsistence.

All the aforesaid orders, regulations, and directions, We strictly charge and command all Reviewing-generals, Colonels, Commanding-officers, and Agents, of Our regiments of Infantry, and all others whom they may concern, to follow and obey, under pain of our highest displeasure. Given at Our court at St. James's this 19th day of February, 1766, in the 6th year of Our reign.

By His Majesty's Command,

BARRINGTON.



Warrant

Warrant for regulating the Attendance of Officers belonging to the several Regiments of Infantry.

GEORGE R.

WHEREAS We were pleased by Our warrant, bearing date the 27th day of July, 1764, to establish certain rules and regulations for the attendance of the several Officers of our regiments of foot within Our kingdom of Great-Britain, with their respective corps; And whereas We have since found it necessary, for the good of our service, to establish some farther regulations for the attendance of the said Officers; We have therefore judged it proper to revoke and annul our warrant above-mentioned, and we do hereby revoke and annul the same. And Our farther will and pleasure is, that, in lieu thereof, and for the more effectual maintenance of good order and discipline in Our said regiments of foot, the following rules be strictly observed; for the exact execution of which the Colonel and Field-officer commanding each regiment are to be responsible.

1st. That with each battalion of infantry there be always present one Field-officer and three Captains; and one Subaltern with each company.

2d. That the Colonel or Field-officer commanding each regiment may grant leave of absence to such other Officers whose private affairs may require it, taking care always to detain, or from time to time to call in, a sufficient number of Officers to do the duty of the regiment, in case it should be so situated as to require the attendance of more Officers than We have hereby directed to be constantly present.

3d. That the Officers appointed to carry on the recruiting service shall not be included in the number hereby fixed for the constant duty of the regiment, or in the number of those who shall be further called in by the Commanding-officer for that duty.

4th. That the monthly return of each regiment be made up and transmitted as usual to Our Secretary at War, and to the Adjutant-general of Our Forces; and that the return of the absent Officers, which We have directed to be made on the fourteenth of each month, shall, in like manner, be made up, and transmitted from the head quarters of every regiment in England to Our Secretary at War, and to the Adjutant-general of Our Forces; and from the regiments in North-Britain, to the Officer commanding on that station for the time being; and the Commanding-officer by whom the said returns shall be signed, is carefully to examine the same, as he is to be responsible that they are in every respect conformable to Our regulations.

5th. That the number of Officers hereby ordered to be present, shall remain with their commands until they shall be relieved; and, notwithstanding the returns are ordered to be transmitted on the 1st and 14th of each month, yet the Officers are to continue at quarters during all the intermediate time, and the Commanding-officer is hereby enjoined not to permit them to absent themselves from the duty they are employed on, except in cases of great emergency, and then but for two days only: and all leaves so granted are to be specified in the next return, with the reasons for granting them.

6th. That no application shall be made either to Us, or to the Commander in chief of Our Forces for a leave of absence for any Officer of Our said regiments, except through the Colonel or Field-officer commanding the regiment; and that all such applications shall be so regulated, that no particular Officer shall be absent from his duty too long at one time. The same caution is to be observed in limiting the leaves granted by the Colonel or Officer commanding each regiment.

7th.

7th. That every Officer, whether taken from the half-pay or otherwise, on being appointed to the regiment, shall join it within four months at farthest from the date of his commission, unless he shall have obtained a particular leave of absence, which is not to be granted except on very cogent reasons.

8th. That if any Officer so appointed shall exceed the time hereby limited, without a leave obtained for that purpose, he shall be returned *absent without leave*; and the date of his commission is to be specified in the return, it being Our firm intention immediately to supersede any Officer who shall neglect to pay due obedience to this Our order.

9th. That every Officer newly appointed, and who has never before been in Our service, shall upon joining his regiment remain in quarters until he shall be perfected in all regimental duty.

10th. That no Officer belonging to any of our said regiments stationed in Great-Britain, shall go out of the kingdom without leave obtained by Us, the warrant for which is to express the time for which the leave is granted, and is to be entered in the office of Our Secretary at War.

11th. All Officers, while present with their corps, are constantly to wear their uniforms.

12th. Every Officer is to be present with his regiment annually in *England* by the 10th day of *March*, and in *Scotland* by the 10th of *April*, and remain with it till after the spring review: And this Our order is upon no account to be dispensed with, except a particular leave shall be obtained for that purpose from Us, or the Commander in chief of Our Forces; and no such leave shall be applied for, except in cases of absolute and unavoidable necessity.

13th. All Recruiting-officers and recruits are to join their respective corps in *England* by the 10th of *March*, and in *Scotland* by the 10th of *April*; as

We do expect that our regiments on each station shall be compleat annually by those respective days.

And We do hereby direct that all and several the rules and regulations hereby established be punctually observed, upon pain of Our highest displeasure. Given at our court at *St James's* the eleventh day of *February*, 1767, in the seventh year of Our reign.

By His Majesty's Command,

War-Office,
a true Copy.

BARRINGTON.



Roll of Sergeants, Corporals, Pioneers, Drummers, and Fifers, as they are posted to Companies.

Companies.	Sergeants.	Corporals.	Pioneers.	Drummers.	Fifers.
Colonel Lieut. Col. Major Captains					

Form

A Roll of the Officers of the Regiment of Foot, as they are posted to Companies, with the Dates of their Commissions.						
Field Officers and Captains. Dates.	Lieutenants. Dates.	2d. Lieutenants. Dates.	Ensigns. Dates.	Staff. Dates.		
Colonel						
Lieut. Colonel.						
Major						
Captains						

General Return of the Names, Country, Age, and Service of the Officers of Regiment of Foot, commanded by with the Dates of the several Commissions each Officer has had to the Day of 17									
Officers ranks and names, according to their seniority in the regiment.		Country.		Yrs. of Service.		Dates of their several commissions in the army.			
Rank.]	Names.]	English	Scotch	Irish	Foreigners	Age	Service	Ensign, or Cornet.	Second Lieut.
		Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Captain Lieut.	Lieutenant
		Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Captain.	Major.
		Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Mon. Yr.	Lieut. Col.	Colonel.
Colonel									
Lieut. Col.									
Major									
Capt.									
Lieut.									
Ensigns &c. Lieutenants.									
Chaplain									
Adjutant									
Quartermaster									
Surgeon									
Mate									

General Return of the Country, Size, Age, and Time of Service of the
Men of Regiment of Foot, commanded by
including Serjeants, Corporals, Drummers and Fifers.

Number of Men of each Country in the several Companies.								Ages of the Men, from 18 and upwards, to 55 Years and upwards,							
COMPANIES.								COMPANIES.							
Countries.	Colonel	Lieut. Colonel	Major	Captain	Captain	Captain	Captain	Years of Age.	Colonel	Lieut. Colonel	Major	Captain	Captain	Captain	Totals of each Age.
English								55							
Scotch								50							
Irish								45							
Foreign								40							
								35							
								30							
								25							
								20							
								18							
Totals								Tot.							

Size of the Men in each Company, from 5 Feet 6 Inches and under, to 6 Feet 2 Inches and upwards.				Service from 1 Year and under to 35 Years and upwards,					
Size. Ft. Inch.	Companies as above.			Total of each Size.	Years	Companies as above.			Total Years.
6 2					35				
6 1½					30				
6 1					25				
6 0½					20				
6 0					15				
5 11½					10				
5 11					8				
5 10½					9				
5 10					7				
5 9½					6				
5 9					5				
5 8½					4				
5 8					3				
5 7½					2				
5 7					1				
5 6½									
5 6									
Under									
5 6									
Totals					Tot.				

Abstract

Company with their

Arms, Accoutrements,
& Clothing, are not
Inserted in the Several
Returns.

Delivered to the Regt.

In Store for the Regim't.

Total.

					Coats.	Ceylans.
					Breeches.	
					Rowl ^d or Stocks.	
					Shoes.	
					Stockings.	
					Shirts.	Drum. 31/2 1/2 1/2.
					Hatts or Caps.	
					Coats.	
					Breeches.	
					Rowl ^d or Stocks.	
					Shoes.	Tunk. 31/2 1/2 1/2.
					Stockings.	
					Shirts.	
					Caps.	
					Carriages.	
					Fife Cases.	Tunk. 31/2 1/2 1/2.
					Coats.	
					Breeches.	
					Rowl ^d or Stocks.	
					Shoes.	
					Stockings.	Tunk. 31/2 1/2 1/2.
					Shirts.	
					Hatts or Caps.	

Abstract of the Non Effective & Remitt^d Acc^t from to 17

Dr. A B Cr.
Account to 17 61

17. $\frac{50}{50}$ $\frac{17}{17}$ $\frac{43}{43}$

hcc

R N of the R

Colours.

ACCOUNTS

1ft.	2d.		Swords.	Car.ouldes touch Belts. Boxes
Good	Good	Good	Good	Good
Bad	Bad	Wanting	Bad	Bad
			Wanting	Wanting
				Good
				Bad
				Wanting
				Good
				Bad

Monthly Return of										Regiment of Foot, commanded by										17		1st. of		Alterations since last Return.																														
COMPANIES.										Effective rank and File.										Wanting to complete to the Allowance.		Drummers and Fifers.		Sergeants.		Rank and File.		Discharged and recommended.		Discharged and not recommended.		1 Initialed		1 Dead		1 Discharged and recommended.		1 Deserted																
Colonel, Lieut. Col. Major, Captains.	Colonel	Commission.					Staff.					1 Present and fit for Duty.		1 Sick in Quarters		1 Sick in Hospitals		1 On-Command		1 Recruiting		1 On Furlough		1 Total		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Sergeants present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.																		
		1 Colonel					1 Chaplain					1 Major		1 Lieutenant		1 Quarter-Master		1 Surgeon		1 Mate		1 Sergeant		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Sergeant present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.																				
		1 Major					1 Ensigns					1 Lieutenant		1 Quarter-Master		1 Surgeon		1 Mate		1 Sergeant		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Sergeant present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.																				
		1 Lieutenant					1 Ensigns					1 Lieutenant		1 Quarter-Master		1 Surgeon		1 Mate		1 Sergeant		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Sergeant present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.																				
		1 Major					1 Ensigns					1 Lieutenant		1 Quarter-Master		1 Surgeon		1 Mate		1 Sergeant		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Sergeant present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.		1 Drummers and Fifers present.																				
Total		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1																					
A B S E N T O F F I C E R S.										Names and Rank of Officers on Duty, and on what Duty.										Vacant Officers, and by what Means.										N ^o of contingent Men				N ^o of Sergeants recruiting				N ^o of Drummers recruiting				N ^o of Recruits not join'd												
Names and Rank										Since what Time					By whole Leave					For what Time																																		

THE MEDLEY. 67

The preceding Monthly Return is to be thus backed.

MONTHLY RETURN

Of

1st, 17

N^o of

at each quarter.

{

Head quarters.

Detachments, and Number of Officers, &c. at each place.

{

The regiment must keep constantly to all regulations, orders, forms of discipline and exercise, now used (and the before-mentioned regulations, &c. be read to the regiment on the first Monday in every second month) and on no account whatever change or let fall any part of them without orders: when the regiment is divided, the same must be duly observed, and exactly followed, as far as situation and circumstances will admit of.

the 17

*[The Colonel of the regiment
is to sign his name.]*

On the delivery of these orders, forms and regulations, the Field-officers, whose business it is to see them punctually observed, should also give a general admonition to young Officers; by pointing out to them such farther instructions as they may think needful, and inciting all to the harmonious discharge of their duty.

2

Consisting

Consisting of GENERAL RULES for the marching of a Regiment of Foot, or a Detachment of Men, where there is a Possibility of their being attacked by the Enemy.

[*This is copied from BLAND's Discipline.*]

THERE is not any thing in which an Officer shews a want of conduct so much as in suffering himself to be surprized, either upon his post, or in marching with a body of men under his command, without being prepared to make a proper defence, and by not having taken the necessary precautions to prevent it.

When an Officer has had the misfortune of being beat, his honour will not suffer by it, provided he has done his duty, and acted like a soldier; but if he is surprized by neglecting the common methods used to prevent it, his character is hardly retrievable, unless it proceeds from his want of experience; and, even in that case, he will find it very difficult.

An Officer who is detached with a body of men, ought to consider that the lives of those under his command depend, in a great measure, on his prudence; and if he has any important post committed to his charge, the lives of many more may follow. This consideration alone, without mentioning the loss of reputation, is sufficient, in my opinion, to make us apply ourselves to our duty, with a more than common zeal, that we may not be ignorant in what relates to our profession, when our King and Country has occasion for our service. The military profession has, in all ages, been esteemed the most honourable, from the danger that attends it. The motives that lead mankind to it must proceed from a noble and generous inclination, since they sacrifice their

their ease and their lives in the defence of their country. To answer this glorious end, we should endeavour at the knowledge of our calling, by a thorough application to the service.

The same spirit that brings us into the army should make us apply ourselves to the study of the military art, the common forms of which may be easily attained by a moderate application, as well as capacity; neither is it below any military man, let his birth be ever so noble, to be knowing in the minute parts of the service. It will not cramp his genius, as some have been pleased to say, in order, as I suppose, to excuse their own ignorance; but rather aid and assist it in great and daring enterprizes.

Our great and warlike neighbours the *Germans* are so entirely prepossessed in favour of this opinion, that they oblige even their youth of quality to perform the function of a private soldier, Corporal and Sergeant, that they may learn the duty of each before they have a commission; and sure no nation has produced greater Generals.

Our late Monarch, the glorious King *William*, whose military capacity was second to none, was perfectly knowing in the small as well as the grand detail of an army. In visiting the out-posts, he would frequently condescend to place the centinels himself, and instruct the Officers how to do it. He was a strict observer of all the parts of discipline, and knew the duty of every one in the army, from the highest to the lowest; and if so great a Prince thought it a necessary qualification, I believe there will be hardly any one found of another opinion. I do not pretend to infer from the above observations, that it is absolutely necessary for our young Nobility and Gentry to pass through those little and servile offices before they arrive at a commission; but I think it absolutely necessary that they should apply themselves to the

service as soon as they have one; for without they know the duty of those under their command, how can they pretend to direct? A commission, it is true, qualifies a man for the pay; but it must be time and experience, and a thorough application to the service, that entitles him to the appellation of a soldier. He that makes himself master of the duty of those below him, will the easier comprehend what is due to those above him, and be a means to qualify him for a higher post, and to do the duty of it with honour and credit, when given him; with this addition, that he was fit for the post, and not that the post was fit for him. It is more commendable and praise-worthy to owe our preferment to merit than favour: the dependance on the latter, is the reason why so many young gentlemen neglect the former. Money and powerful relations will always procure them what they want; they have, therefore, no occasion to apply themselves to the knowledge of their duty: it is from this way of thinking that so many of them do so little credit to their posts, not from the want of genius, but application. I hope these few observations will not be taken as a reflection on the young Gentlemen who have lately come into the army, but rather as an admonition to avoid the neglect complained of; my design being purely to serve them, that they may be the better qualified to serve their country, when she calls upon them.

INSTRUCTIONS *drawn up by the late Major general JAMES WOLFE, for the Twentieth Regiment of Foot then lying at Canterbury, in case of the French landing in 1755.*

WHOEVER shall throw away his arms in time of action, whether Officer, Non-commissioned-Officer or soldier, unless it appears that they are so damaged

damaged as to be useless, either under pretence of taking up others of a better sort, or for any cause whatever, must expect to be tried by a general Court-martial for the crime.

If a Serjeant leaves the platoon he is appointed to, or does not take upon him the immediate command of it, in case the Officer falls, such Serjeant shall be tried for his life, as soon as a Court-martial can be assembled. Neither Officer, Non-commissioned Officer, nor soldier, is to leave his platoon or abandon his colours for a slight wound: while a man is able to do his duty, and can stand and hold his arms, it is infamous to retire.

The battalion is not to halloo or cry out upon any account whatever, although the rest of the troops should do it, till they are ordered to charge their bayonets: In that case, and when they are upon the point of rushing upon the enemy, the battalion may give a warlike shout, and rush in. Before the battle begins, and while the battalion is marching towards the enemy, the Officer commanding a platoon is to be at the head of his men, looking frequently back upon them, to see that they are in order: the Serjeant in the mean while taking his post in the interval; and the Officers are not to go to the flanks of their platoons till they have a signal or order so to do from the Commanding-officer of the battalion.

If the battalion should be crowded at any time, or confined in their ground, the Captain, or Officer commanding a grand division, may order his center platoon to fall back till the battalion can extend itself again.

All the Officers upon the left of the colours are to be upon the left of their platoons; the Captain of the picquet is to be upon the left of his picquet, and the Ensign in the center. Every grand division, consisting of two companies, as they now are, is to

be told off into three platoons, to be commanded by a Captain, Lieutenant and Ensign, with a Serjeant to each; the rest of the Officers and Non-commissioned Officers are to be distributed in the rear, to complete the files, to keep the men to their duty, and to supply the places of the Officers or Serjeants who may be killed or dangerously wounded.

Every musqueteer is to have a couple of spare balls, an excellent flint in his piece, another or two in his pouch, and as much ammunition as he can carry.

A soldier that takes his musket off his shoulder, and pretends to begin the battle without orders, will be put to death that instant: the cowardice or irregular proceeding of one or two men is enough to put a whole battalion in danger.

A soldier that quits his rank, or offers to fly, is to be instantly put to death by the Officer who commands the platoon, or by the Officer or Serjeant in the rear of the platoon.

A soldier does not deserve to live who will not fight for his King and country.

If a Non-commissioned Officer or private man is missing after an action, and joins his company afterwards unhurt, he will be reputed a coward and a fugitive, and will be tried for his life. The drummers are to stay with their respective companies, and to assist the wounded men.

Every Officer, and every Non-commissioned Officer, is to keep strictly to his post and platoon from the beginning to the end of an action, and to observe all possible order and obedience. The confusion occasioned by the loss of men, and the noise of the artillery and musketry, will require every Officer's strictest attention to his duty. When the files of a platoon are disordered by the loss of men, they are to be immediately completed afresh with the utmost expedition, in which the Officers and Non-commission'd

commission'd Officers in the rear are to be aiding and assisting. Officers are not to go from one part of the battalion to another, without orders, on any pretence whatever.

The eight companies of the battalion are never to pursue the enemy, without particular orders so to do. The picquet and grenadiers will be detached for that purpose, and the battalion is to march in good order to support them.

If the firing is ordered to begin by the platoons, either from the wings or from the center, it is to proceed in a regular manner, till the enemy is defeated, or till a signal is given to attack them with the bayonets.

If we attack a body less in extent than the battalion, the platoons upon the wings must be careful to direct their fire obliquely, so as to strike upon the enemy. The Officer is to inform his soldiers before the action begins, where they are to direct their fire, and they are to take good care to destroy their adversaries.

There is no necessity for firing very fast; a cool, well-levelled fire, with the pieces carefully loaded, is much more destructive and formidable than the quickest fire in confusion.

If a battalion in front line should give way and retire in disorder, towards the second line, every other platoon, or every other company, is to march forward a little, leaving intervals open for the disordered troops to pass through; and after they are gone by, the battalion marches in one front, and moves forward to take post in the first line, from whence the broken battalion retired.

If a battalion on either flank gives way, and is defeated, the picquet or grenadier company, which ever it happens to be, is to fall back immediately, without confusion, and protect that part of the regiment,

The

The misbehaviour of any other corps will not affect this battalion, because the Officers are determined to give the strongest proofs of their fidelity, zeal and courage, in which the soldiers will second them with their usual spirit,

If the order of battle be such (and the country admit of it) that it is necessary to make breaches in the enemy's line, for the cavalry to fall in upon them, the grand divisions of the regiment are each to form a firing-column of three platoons in depth, which are to march forward and pierce the enemy's battalion in four places, that the cavalry may get in among them and destroy them. In such an attack, the first only of the three platoons should fire, and immediately present their bayonets and charge.— These four bodies are to be careful not to run into one another in their attack, but to preserve the intervals at a proper distance.

All attacks in the night are to be made with bayonets, unless when troops are posted with no other design than to alarm, harass or fatigue the enemy, by firing at their out-posts, or into their camp.

If entrenchments or redoubts are to be defended obstinately, the firing is to begin in a regular manner, when the enemy is within shot, at about two hundred yards, and to continue till they approach very near; and when the troops perceive that they endeavour to get over the parapet, they are to fix their bayonets and make a *bloody resistance*.

All little parties that are intended to fire on the enemy's column of march, their advanced guard, or their rear, are to post themselves so as to be able to annoy them without danger, and to cover themselves with slight breast-works of sod behind the hedges, or with trees, walls, ditches, or any other protection, that, if the enemy return the fire, it may
do

do no mischief. These little parties are to keep their posts, till the enemy prepares to attack with a superiority; upon which they are to retire to some other place of the same kind, and fire in the same manner; constantly retiring when they are pushed. But when a considerable detachment of foot is posted to annoy the enemy upon their march, with orders to retire when attacked by a superior force, the country behind is to be carefully examined, and some parties sent off early to post themselves in the most advantageous manner, to cover the retreat of the rest. This is always to be done in all situations when a considerable body is ordered to retire.

If a retrenchment is to be attacked, the troops should move as quick as possible towards the place, not in line, but in little firing columns of three or four platoons in depth, with small parties between each column, who are to fire at the top of the parapet, when the columns approach to divert the enemy's fire, and facilitate their passing the ditch and scrambling over the parapet, which they must endeavour to do without loss of time. It is to very little purpose firing at men who are covered with an intrenchment; but, by attacking in the manner abovementioned, one may hope to succeed.

If the seat of war should be in this strong inclosed country, it will be managed chiefly by fire; and every inch of ground that's proper for defence, must be disputed with the enemy; in which case the soldiers will soon perceive the advantage of levelling their pieces properly; and they will likewise discover the use of several evolutions, that they may now be at a loss to comprehend. The greater facility they have of moving from place to place, and from one enclosure to another (either together or in separate bodies) without confusion or disorder, the easier they will fall upon the enemy with advantage, or retire

tire when it is proper so to do; sometimes to draw the enemy into a dangerous position, and at other times to take possession of new places of defence that will be constantly prepared behind them.

If the battalion attacks another of nearly equal extent, whose flanks are not covered, the grenadiers and picquet may be ordered to detach themselves, and surround the enemy by attacking their flank and rear, while the eight companies charge them in front. The grenadiers and picquets should therefore be accustomed to those sorts of movements, that they may execute their orders with a great deal of expedition.

If the battalion is to attack another battalion of equal force and like number of ranks, and the country be quite open, it is highly probable that, after firing a few rounds, they will be commanded to charge them with their bayonets, for which the Officers and men should be prepared.

If the center of the battalion is attacked by a column, the wings must be extremely careful to fire obliquely; that part of the battalion against which the column marches, reserving their fire; and if they have time to put two or three bullets in their pieces, it must be done. When the column is within about twenty yards, they must fire with a good aim, which will necessarily stop them a little. This body may then open from the center, and retire by files towards the wings of the regiment, while the neighbouring platoons wheel to the right and left; and either fire, if they are loaded; or close up and charge with their bayonets.

If a body of foot is posted behind a hedge, ditch or wall, and, being attacked by a superior force, is obliged to retire, the body should move off by files in one or more lines, as perpendicular as possible to the posts they leave; that when the enemy extends
I himself

himself to fire through the hedges, the object to fire at may be as small as possible, and the march of the retiring body as quick as possible.

The death of an Officer commanding a company or platoon should be no excuse for the confusion or misbehaviour of that platoon; for while there is an Officer or Non-commissioned Officer left alive, no man is to abandon his colours and betray his country.

The loss of the Field-officers will be supplied (if it should so happen) by the Captains, who will execute the plan of the regiment with *honour*.

If the battalion should have the misfortune to be invested in their quarters (or in a post which they are not ordered to defend) by a greater superiority, they have but one remedy; which is, to pierce the enemy's line or lines in the night, and get off. In this case, the battalion attacks with the ranks and files closed, with their bayonets fixed, and without firing a shot: They will be formed in an order of attack, suitable to the place they are in, the troops they are to charge, and to the nature of the country through which they are to pass.

If the battalion attacks the enemy's camp or quarters in the night, all possible means will be used, no doubt, to surprise them; but if they are found in arms, they are to be vigorously attacked with the bayonets. It is needless to think of firing in the night, because of the confusion it creates, and the uncertainty of killing any object in the dark.

A column that receives the enemy's fire, and falls immediately in among them, must necessarily defeat them, and create a very great disorder in their army.



ORDERS very proper to be given to the Troops on Board of Transports in Time of War.

PAROLE, KING GEORGE; Counterfign, **QUEEN CHARLOTTE.** (Parole and Counterfign may be changed.)

In case of dark nights or fogs, when you hear or see a vessel come near you, she must be hailed, to prevent your being deceived by an enemy. The ship hailed, if of the convoy, will return her name, then ask the other hers, and then exchange with each other the parole and counterfign, that they may not be surpris'd by a ship of war or privateer lurking near them by night or in hazy weather. A Subaltern Officer of the day to be appointed, who is to be on deck, upon all such occasions; and a guard to consist of one Serjeant, one Corporal, and twelve private men, to keep strict order and to prevent fire. As it may possibly happen that the transports may be separated from the convoy, the Commanding Officer on board each transport is to post his men to their particular quarters, and turn them out with their arms, at least once a day, whilst they continue at anchor, if the weather is fair, that they may know how to do it readily, and without confusion, in case of necessity. The men are to turn out with their waistbelts slung, as on the march, and not to fix their bayonets, unless the enemy attempt to board them. All the recruits who have not fired ball, to be posted at the cannon, and as many more of the soldiers as are acquainted with that service, and will be sufficient to work the guns: The cartridges are to be taken from those men and distributed among such as have distinguished themselves in firing at the mark. The firelocks belonging to the recruits, and the men ordered to the guns, to be kept on deck loaded.

loaded, to be carefully put up in an arm-chest, ready for any emergency. The same number of cartouch-boxes, filled with cartridges, likewise to be put up in a safe place, to be ready on the shortest notice. If you should be attacked by a privateer, your expedient will be a close engagement; the soldiers therefore are not to be suffered to shew themselves on deck till the enemy is very near, and quite under the command of your small arms; and, even then, they are not to presume to fire till they are ordered. It is not expected they should fire by division, but singly, as they can take aim: they are not to be in too great a hurry in loading, but to be careful to shake all the powder out of the cartridge before they ram it down. If the Commanding-officer on board finds it necessary to hold a Regimental Court-martial, he may (a sufficient number of Officers being present) and likewise put the sentence in execution. No women to be suffered to remain on board, but such as are lawful wives of the soldiers. A return from each transport to be made to the Commanding Officer every *Monday* morning, that the weather permits.

GENERAL ORDERS and REGULATIONS,
By the late Major-general WOLFE, July, 1759.

THE object of the campaign is to complete the conquest of *Canada*, and to finish the war in *America*. The army under the commander in chief will enter the colony on the side of *Montreal*, while the fleet and army attack the Governor-general and his forces. Great supplies of provisions, and a numerous artillery, are provided; and from the known valour of the troops, the nation expects success. These battalions have acquired reputation in the last campaign,

campaign, and it is not doubted but they will be careful to preserve it. From this confidence, the General has assured the Secretary of State in his letter, that whatever may be the event of this campaign, his Majesty and the country will have reason to be satisfied with the behaviour of the army under his command.

The General means to carry the business through, with as little loss as possible, and with the highest regard to the safety and preservation of the troops; and to that end he expects, that the men work cheerfully, diligently, and without the least unfoldier-like murmur or complaint; and that these few, but necessary orders, may be strictly obeyed.

The General proposes to fortify his camp in such a manner as to put it entirely out of the enemy's power to attempt any thing by surprise, and that the troops may rest in security after their fatigue. As the safety of an army depends in a great measure upon the diligence of the out-guards, any Officer or Non-commissioned Officer who shall suffer himself to be surprised by the enemy, must not expect to be forgiven. When any alarm is given, or the enemy perceived to be in motion, and that it is thought necessary to put the troops under arms, it is to be done without noise or confusion.

The brigades are to be ranged in order of battle, by the Brigadier-general, at the head of the camp, in readiness to obey the orders they shall receive. False alarms are hurtful to any army, and dishonourable to those that occasion them: the out-posts are to be sure the enemy is in motion, before they send their intelligence: soldiers are not to go beyond the out-guards; the advance-centinels will fire at all who attempt to pass by the proper bounds. It may be proper to apprise corps that the General may, perhaps, think it necessary to order them off, the light
troops

troops to retire before the enemy, so as to draw them nearer the army, with a view either to engage them to fight at a disadvantage, or to cut off their retreat. The light infantry of this army are to have their bayonets fixed, as the want of ammunition may sometimes be supplied by that weapon: and because no man should leave his post, under pretence that all his cartridges are fired, it must be remembered, that bayonets are preferable to fire, that the service of the campaign may fall as equally as possible upon the whole. The corps shall do duty, for their real strength. No change shall be in the first regulation, unless any particular loss should make it necessary. All cattle or provision taken by any detachment of the army, is to be delivered into the public magazine, for the use and benefit of the whole. Mr. *Wire*, the Commissary, will give receipts for it. No churches, houses, or buildings of any kind, are to be burned or destroyed, without orders. The persons that remain in their habitations, their women and children, to be treated with humanity: If any violence is offered to a woman, the offender shall be punished with death: if any person is detected in robbing the tents of Officers or soldiers, they will be (if condemned) certainly executed. The Commanders of regiments will be answerable that no rum or spirits of any kind be sold in or near the camp: When the soldiers are fatigued with work, or wet upon duty, the General will order such refreshment as he knows will be of service to them; but is determined to allow no drunkenness or licentiousness in the army. If any sutler presumes to bring on shore those liquors in contempt of the General's regulations, such sutler shall be sent to the Provosts in irons, and his goods confiscated. The General will make it his business to reward, as far as possible, such as shall particularly distinguish themselves; on the other

G

hand,

hand, will punish any misbehaviour in an exemplary manner. The men to be acquainted with these orders, and it is expected the Officers will take proper care to explain them.

Sutherland, off Cape Rouge, 1759.

THE enemy's force is now divided, great scarcity of provisions is in their camp, and universal discontent among the *Canadians*. The two second Officers in command gone to *Montreal*, or *St. John's*, which gives reason to think that General *Amherst* is advancing into the colony, a vigorous blow struck by the army at this juncture may determine the fate of *Canada*.

Our troops below are in readiness to join us; all the light artillery and tools are embarked at *Point Levi*, and the troops will land when the *French* seem least to expect it. The first body that gets on shore is to march directly to the enemy, and drive them from any little post they may occupy. The Officers must be careful that the succeeding body do not fire by any mistake upon them that go before them.

The battalion must form upon the upper ground with expedition, and be ready to charge whatever presents itself. When the artillery and troops are landed, a corps will be left to secure the landing-place, while the rest march on, and endeavour to bring the *French* and *Canadians* to a battle. The officers and men will remember what their country expects from them, and what a determined body of soldiers, inured to war, are capable of doing against five weak *French* battalions, intermingled with disorderly peasantry. Soldiers must be obedient and attentive to their Officers, and resolute in the execution of their duty.

Camp

Camp at the Island of Orleans, 1759.

THE army must hold itself in constant readiness to get under arms, either to march or fight, at the shortest notice.

ORDERS of REGULATIONS and SIGNALS to prevent the landing or being surprized by the Enemy. Given at Palais, 1762. Belleisle.

Parole, BATH; Countersign, DUNBAR.

THE Officers commanding the different detachments round the coasts are to make themselves acquainted with the roads, to bring in the field-pieces to the principal bays in their respective commands.

Signals to be made in case of discovering any Embarkation of an Enemy.

IN case the enemy's embarkation should be discovered in the night by any of the King's ships, the ship who first perceives it is to fire guns and shew a great number of lights, and false fires; which she is to continue doing till *Belleisle* answers by firing one gun from that part of the island, nearest to the ship who makes the signals. The ship of the Commander in Chief is to do the same, and immediately to dispatch a boat to the shore, with an Officer to acquaint the first Field-officer he can meet, how the enemy's embarkation seems to direct their course; of which the Field-officer will send immediate notice to the Commander in Chief; and the ship or ships are to get under sail, if the wind and tide permit, and use every endeavour to burn or destroy the enemy's vessels. As it is possible an enemy's embarkation may pass to the North-west of the King's ships in the

G 2

night

night undiscovered, if that should at any time happen, it will be for the good of the King's service that it should be immediately communicated; which may be done by firing two guns, and immediately after letting off two sky-rockets, to the port to which the discoveries made from the port near *Viceaux Chataux* to be repeated from *Point Cardinal* at *Sauzon*, in order to be more distinctly heard by his Majesty's ships; and, if the enemy proceed quite to the back of the island, leaving the port near *Viceaux Chataux* behind them, the signal to be repeated that moment it appears certain. This will be of use to the Sea-officer in directing his ships round the island. If in the day, an enemy's embarkation is discovered at the back of the island unattended by line of battle ships, it may be communicated by hoisting a Dutch jack, at the flag-staff on the citadel, and firing one gun, which will be answered by the ship of the commanding Sea-officer, by the same jack at the ensign-staff; but if the line of battle ships make part of the armament, it will be necessary it should be known, and may be told by hoisting a red pendant at the flag-staff, which will also be answered in the same manner. The Officer commanding in that part of the island, where the discovery is first made, will immediately dispatch an Officer to the Commander in Chief to acquaint him of it. Signals to be made by the cruisers of *Port Lewis* by day. If the enemy's ships should be discovered at sea, the ship who first perceives them is to hoist a white flag at the main top gallant mast head, if they should be discovered coming out of the harbour of *Port Lewis*, and then the ship that gives the alarm is to fire three guns distinctly, and let off three sky rockets, and make all possible dispatch towards the ship stationed at *Sauzon*, still repeating the alarm by firing guns, till the ship
stationed

stationed there answers by shewing three port fires; that is, one from the truck of each mast-head.

The foregoing signals being extremely well calculated by the Officers of his Majesty's navy, to prevent a surprise, Governor *Forrester* recommends it to the troops to pay particular attention to them, as their safety and credit in a great measure depends upon it, and especially those in the night. Upon any alarm in the night the troops will immediately get under arms. The infantry, thirty two rounds of powder and ball and three good flints each man, and their arms in every particular, ready for immediate service. The corps of artillery will repair to their several posts ready for immediate service.

The Officers commanding at the post nearest that quarter from whence the alarm comes, will immediately send a reinforcement to that post of such number of Officers and men as he shall judge necessary, and the several detachments will reinforce their posts in the same manner.

If the enemy should be so hardy as to attempt to land at any particular post, there is no doubt of their being received with a spirit and resolution, becoming *British* soldiers, and of their maintaining their posts to the utmost. Upon any alarm, the Officers commanding the several detachments, will send an Orderly Officer to the head quarters to attend the Governor, and to receive such orders as may be necessary to send to the corps they belong to.

The Officers commanding in villages, will take care to keep their centinels very alert in the night, that they may give them immediate notice of any alarm.

The Officers commanding in the different bays are to be answerable that every night the masts, sails, oars and rudder, belonging to such boats as are in their respective bays, are lodged in the guard-

room; and when the owners have occasion to go out, they are to examine their passes, and be answerable that none go in them but the numbers mentioned in their passes. Patroles in the night being the surest method to guard against surprise, and to keep the garrison and guards alert, they are to commence on *Sunday* next in the manner following.

The parties to consist of a Serjeant and five men; one Corporal and three men: the Corporal's party to set out so as to reach the farthest post at twelve o'clock, where he is to halt one hour before he returns: the Serjeant's party to set out about twelve o'clock, and remain so long at the furthest post he visits, so as to reach that he first set out from near day-break: He is to visit every post and centry going and coming, and to report to the Officer under whose command he is, who will report all extraordinaries to the Commander in Chief. Each guard to mention, in their report, the hour they visited, and by what patrole. An Officer's patrole is also to visit each post twice in a week, varying the nights and hours according to the direction of their respective commanding Officers.

Major *Nearn's* regiment will take from *Palais* to *Port Sailis*; the Regiments in the citadel, from the glacis to *Port Toquet*; their last patrole to be let in and out at the *Salle Port*; and whenever it is to be opened, the Officer of the citadel-guard is to have his guard under arms till the keys are returned to him.

Major *Martin's* detachment takes from *Port Toquet* to *Port Blond*; Lieutenant-colonel *Oswald's* and Major *Hamilton's* will settle three patroles from *Sauxon* to *Port Shewell*, and Major *Ogle's* from *Port Danzick* to *Fort St. Lawrence*. When the several Officers have regulated the manner of their furnishing their patroles

in

in the most convenient way, according to their different cantonments, they will report the manner they have settled it to the Governor.

The posts occupied by *Wedderburn's* being so far asunder are to be visited by an Officer of each company, between twelve o'clock at night and day-break.

PRECAUTIONS *a Governor or Commandant of a Garrison should use in Time of War.*

“**A** Governor should, betimes, and before an enemy appears, examine the works of a place; palisade the covert-way, and, if it has not been done before, repair those that want it; he should likewise lay some horizontally on the middle of the parapets, which have no revetement; clear the ditches from the mud, see that the gates or entrances are secure and well defended from being broken up; keep a strict discipline and good order in the town, preventing the garrison from molesting and abusing the inhabitants; and watch narrowly that nobody keeps correspondence with the enemy to betray the place: for which purpose the Governor should send some people, whom he can trust, to get into companies, unsuspected, hear what passes, and give him notice of what they say. If there are any old aqueducts, or under-ground passages, they should be stopped up; and centries placed at their entrances. If there is any river passing through or near the town, parties must be put into boats in the night-time, both above and below the place, to watch that the enemy doth not come that way. In frosty weather, the ice in the ditches should be broke every day, and the shoals

laid at top of one another towards the place ; which will make, in time, a kind of a wall, so slippery as not to be passed over.

“ The Governor should send parties every day, both of horse and foot, to range about the country, and in all the principal avenues, for two or three miles distance from the place, to see whether any enemy approaches, or lies concealed thereabouts ; and, in the night, he should take care that the several guards keep strict to their duty, and watch carefully at their several posts, not letting any-body approach the walls, not even the centries, without the forms usual in such cases. The patrolle should walk all night about the several posts, to see that the centries do not fall asleep, and that they do continually listen whether they hear any enemy approach ; and, on the least noise or suspicion, give notice thereof to the guards, and they to the Governor.

“ It is particularly needful, on fair or market days, that the gates should be strictly guarded : the horse and foot should be ready to assemble and march upon the first notice given them ; no people should be suffered to pass through the gates, but such as have some visible business in the town, or can give a good account of themselves. The centries should not let any coaches, waggon, carts, &c. enter too close behind one another ; and when they are loaded with hay, straw, or with any other thing, wherein people may be concealed, they should be well examined before they are permitted to pass ; and never let any carriage stop upon a draw-bridge, on any pretence whatsoever, to prevent their being drawn up, if occasion require.

“ On holidays, festivals, or rejoicing-days, the Governor should also take more than ordinary care in seeing the guards kept in the strictest manner ; and the military discipline should, at all times, be kept with

with the utmost rigour. No great assemblies should be suffered after it is dark.

“ As the clergy are as apt to betray a place, and often more, than any other set of people, as experience has shewn, the Governor would do well to examine, now and then, the churches and religious houses, in the night-time, to see whether there is any-body concealed there, or whether they have any under-ground passages leading out of the town, as there sometimes are. Had the Governor of *Cremona* taken these precautions, he would not have been surpris'd, as he was, by Prince *Eugene*, who held private correspondence with a priest, who concealed a strong body of men in a chapel, which, together with others that were let in by treachery, surpris'd the Governor in his bed.

“ When the enemy know that a Governor takes such and other precautions, they will hardly venture to attempt the surprisal of a place ; and, should they be presumptuous enough to undertake it, it must certainly turn to their confusion.

S T O R E S.

“ THE quantity of each kind of stores required for a siege cannot be precisely determin'd, on account of the various considerations on which it depends ; as on the strength of the place and garrison, the capacity of the Governor and Engineers, the quantity of artillery, ammunition, stores and provision ; and, lastly, on the time, place, situation, &c. But as it is necessary to give some idea to the unexperienced Officer, I shall here set down the quantity of each kind, for a month's siege, as estimat'd by Marshal *Vauban*, whom we chuse to follow, on account of his great experience and undoubted judgment.

Stores

Stores required for a Month's Siege.

Powder, according as the garrison is more or less strong, — — —	} 8 or 900,000 lb
Shot for battering pieces	6000 lb
Shot of a lesser fort,	10,000 lb
Battering cannons, — — —	80
Cannons of a lesser fort, — — —	40
Small field-pieces for de- fending the lines, }	12
Mortars for throwing { Shells, — — —	24
{ Stones, — — —	24
Shells for mortars, — — —	15 or 16,000
Hand-granades, — — —	40,000
Leaden Bullets, — — —	180,000 lb
Matches, — — —	10,000 Braces.
Flints for muskets, of the best sort,	10,000
Platforms complet for guns, — — —	100
Platforms for mortars, — — —	60
{ Carriages for guns, — — —	60
Spare { Mortar beds, — — —	30
{ Spunges, rammers and ladles,	20 Sets.
Tools for working in the trenches,	40,000

“ Several hand-jacks, gins, sling-carts, travelling-forges, and other engines proper to raise and carry heavy burdens, as likewise some to carry water to extinguish fire.

“ Several parcels of spare timber for bridges, wheelwrights, carpenters, &c.

“ There are, besides, several other things necessary; as Miner's tools, mantlets, stuffed gabions, fascines, pickets and gabions, in great quantities; tools for smiths, carpenters and wheelwrights; a number of horses for the artillery; carts and waggons. Such as can be procured in the country, are also used upon occasion.”

INVESTING PLACES.

“ **P**REREQUISITE to invest a place with success, the General ought to use various stratagems for deceiving the enemy, and to prevent him from guessing his real design. Sometimes the deceit may be carried so far as to invest another place; at other times, it may be made by marching with the army, as if the General had a mind to attack the enemy, in order to drive him some distance from the place, and then return quickly to invest it. In short, no opportunity should be neglected to arrive before the place, ere the enemy hath time to throw in either troops, ammunition or provision, since the success of the siege depends chiefly on this diligence.

“ The place is properly to be invested in the following manner.

“ A body of 4 or 5000 horse is to be detached from the army, if the country is open; or a body of horse and foot, if it be full of defiles or woods; commanded by a Lieutenant-general and two or three Brigadier-generals, who march with all possible speed, day and night, till they come within four or five miles of the place; where they halt, in order to consult and divide themselves into as many parties as there are principal avenues leading to it; then they march on, so as to arrive in the dusk of the evening at their several appointed posts, much about the same time; which posts ought to be just out of the reach of cannon-shot from the place.

“ This done, small parties are sent to the very gates to carry off men, cattle, and whatever may be serviceable to the garrison. The parties are to be supported

ported by some squadrons of horse, and it would not be amiss if they receive some cannon-shot, in order to discover the reach of the guns. In the mean time, the rest of the detachments take their posts in the most convenient places, so as to prevent any succours being thrown into the town.

“ In the day-time they keep without cannon-shot; but as soon as it is dark, the several parties approach the place as near as possible, so as to leave but small intervals between them; then turning their backs upon the town, and placing guards before and behind them, to prevent any surprise, half the troops are to keep always mounted, whilst the rest refresh themselves.

“ As soon as day-light appears, they retire by degrees, observing the situation of the place, and the nature of the works, as likewise that of the ground round about it, till they come to their former posts, where they place proper guards towards the town, and in all the principal avenues towards the country; the rest repose themselves, keeping their horses ready saddled for mounting at a minute's warning.

“ Parties are sent to reconnoitre the enemy, while the Commanding-officer and Engineers pitch upon a proper place for encamping the army, as soon as it arrives, and observe where the line of circumvallation is to be made.

“ The day the place is invested, the train of artillery begins to march, with all the stores and ammunition necessary for a siege; whilst, on the other hand, the army makes forced marches, and arrives commonly within three or four days after the investing.

“ The Commander of the detachment goes about two or three miles to meet the General, in order to give an account of his proceedings; on which the General settles the disposition of the camp.

The

"The next day he rectifies any mistakes which might have happened, and goes to reconoitre the place himself; attended by the rest of the General Officers, and chief Engineers, so that the situation of the line of circumvallation may be determined.

"This being done, the encampment regulated, and the troops placed in the order agreed on, the General assigns to the other General Officers their quarters; the chief or head quarter is fixed upon, as also those for provision, and the park of artillery. All these particulars are to be rectified, as soon as the place for opening the trenches is determined.

"In the mean time, small guards are posted near the town, in the most convenient places, sustained by larger, to strengthen the garrison as much as possible, and the Engineers roughly trace the line of circumvallation, with rods and pickets only, in order to regulate the encampment."

The Preparations which are generally made for an Assault on a considerable Out-Work, or the Body of the Place, are as follows.

[This is copied from BLAND's Discipline.]

THE number of troops which are commanded on these occasions, must depend on the strength of the place to be attacked, and the number of men who can be brought to defend it.

A detachment from every company of grenadiers at the siege, with a proper number of battalions, are ordered to join the guard of the trenches; but to prevent any dispute about precedency or right, in making the attack, the battalions thus ordered should be those who are next on command for the trenches.

A detachment of hatchet-men, with their large axes, are likewise ordered; that, if the passage of the grenadiers is obstructed, by meeting with large palisadoes, either in the covert-way, or in the intrenchments behind the breach, they may be ready to cut them down; because, though the bombs and cannon from the batteries generally break them down, yet they cannot always reach them; for which reason there should be hatchet-men ordered, lest they may be wanted for that purpose.

There are likewise a sufficient number of workmen ordered with tools, and others to carry the proper materials; such as wool-packs, sand-bags, gabions, fascines, and pickets, for the making of a lodgment on the breach, if so ordered, or an intrenchment in the body of the out-work, to cover you from the fire of the town, and so secure you against any attempt which the besieged shall make to regain it.

Engineers are commanded with the workmen, to direct them in making the proper lodgments, that no time may be lost in the forming them.

There are always more battalions ordered than are necessary for the attack, that some may remain as a reserve in the trenches; which, in my opinion, should be those out of the additional number ordered, whose turn of mounting the trenches is furthest off.

The battalions which compose the guard of the trenches, always march after and sustain the grenadiers; and the additional battalions only sustain them.

The General Officers then on duty in the trenches, command the attack, unless the number of troops so ordered may require a greater number of Generals than are then on duty, or one of a superior rank; in which case, the command always falls to the eldest; but, unless for the reason just mentioned, the

the command is never taken from the Generals of the trenches,

The disposition of the troops for the attack is generally made as follows.

The grenadiers designed for the attack, are to be posted at the head of the trenches, or that part of them which lies nearest the work to be attacked ; the particular disposition of whom is as follows.

1. A Serjeant and twelve or sixteen grenadiers are drawn out for the forlorn hope ; they are not taken from one company, but one from each of the twelve or sixteen eldest companies ; or, if they consist of the troops of different nations, they are taken in proportion to the number of the battalions of each nation.

2. A Lieutenant, and thirty or forty grenadiers, formed by detachment in the same manner, to sustain the forlorn hope.

3. A Captain, two or three Lieutenants, with eighty or an hundred grenadiers, formed also by detachment, to sustain the Lieutenant.

4. A detachment of two hundred genadiers, commanded by a Major, to sustain the Captain.

5. The whole body of genadiers, according to seniority of companies, or nations, under the command of Field-officers, in proportion to their numbers. They should march as many in front as the ground they are to pass over will admit of, or the breach contain.

6. The hatchet-men are to be posted next to the grenadiers, and to march immediately after them.

7. The battalions, which compose the guard of the trenches are posted, according to seniority, next to hatchet-men, to sustain the grenadiers.

8. The additional battalions that are to go upon the attack, are posted next to the guard of the trenches, in order to sustain them.

9. After

9. After the troops designed for the attack; the detachments of workmen commanded by their Officers, are posted, that they may be ready to march, when ordered to make the lodgments, with whom the Engineers are to march to instruct them.

10. The battalions appointed for the reserve, are posted next to the workmen; and when the others march out to the attack, they are to move up to the head of the trenches; that, if the troops which make the attack require any assistance, they may be ready to march out and sustain them, when they shall be so ordered by the General who commands the attack.

That those who make the attack may be as little exposed to the fire of the besieged as possible, all the cannon on the batteries are pointed against the several works of the town which defend the breach; on which they are to fire incessantly, during the attack, to keep the enemy from the walls.

The signal commonly given for an attack, is the throwing of a certain number of bombs into the town at the same time; but if they are thrown into the work which is to be attacked, or towards the gorge of the bastion in which the breach is made, (that being the place where the besieged entrench themselves for the defence of it) it will be of great service to those who make the attack: for, as the enemy will be obliged either to quit their posts, or lie flat on the ground till the bombs have broke, it will give the grenadiers (if they have not far to march) sufficient time to mount the breach, and attack the entrenchment without meeting with much opposition till they come there, provided the batteries fire at the same time on the defences of the town.

Where there are more attacks than one to be made at the same time (which, if the breaches are ready, would

would be exceeding proper, in order to divide the force of the garrison) each must have the same preparation and disposition made for it, unless a greater opposition is expected from the one than the other ; in which case, the difference then lies in the numbers ordered for each, but not in the disposition or order of the attack.

Sham attacks are sometimes made at the same time with the real ones ; but as they are intended to amuse the besieged, to oblige them to divide their troops, that those who make the real attack may meet with less opposition, the workmen are generally omitted.

When an attack is to be made on the covert-ways, the troops which are appointed for that service are generally divided into several bodies, in order to attack at different parts at the same time. The number of workmen, with the several materials before mentioned, particularly wool-packs, are greater on these occasions ; because an attack on the covert-way is generally designed to force the enemy from thence, till a lodgment is made on the glacis, or, as it is commonly, though erroneously, called, the counterscarpe ; for as the counterscarpe is the wall of the ditch which supports the covert-way, to be lodged on the counterscarpe, properly speaking, is to be lodged on the brink of the ditch ; but, at present, that term is generally abused, by saying that they are on the counterscarpe, when they are only at the beginning of the glacis.

The most favourable time for the making of an attack, is in the day : for as the actions of every man will appear in full view, the brave, through a laudable emulation, will endeavour, at the expence of their lives, to out-do one another ; and even the fearful will exert themselves, by performing their duty, rather than bear the infamous name of coward ; the

H

fear

fear of shame being generally more powerful than the fear of death. The batteries will be likewise of great service by their firing with more certainty on the defences of the town, and the top of the breach, to keep the enemy from opposing the grenadiers in mounting it: besides, in the night, those who go on first will run great danger from the fire of those who sustain them; therefore an attack on an out-work, or the covert-way, is generally a little after sun-set, that night may come on by the time the attack is finished, to favour them in making the necessary lodgments. But this rule will not hold good in an attack on the body of the place; for if night should come on before the town is entirely reduced to your obedience, great inconvenience would attend both your own troops and the poor inhabitants; to avoid which, it is generally made in the forenoon.

I do not pretend, by what is mentioned in this article, to lay down certain rules; but only to give a general idea of attacks, with the usual preparations of workmen, &c. the necessary disposition of the troops, and the general time of making them.

OF CAPITULATIONS.

“**W**HEN a Governor, who defends a place, sees himself reduced to the last extremity, or he is ordered by his Prince to surrender, in order to get better conditions from the enemy, and a more advantageous composition, both for the inhabitants and the garrison, he does what is called, order to beat the chemade; for which one or more drummers are ordered to beat their drums on the rampart next to the attack, to give notice to the besiegers, that the Governor

Governor has some proposals to make; there are likewise put up one or more white colours upon the rampart, for the same purpose, and one of them remains either on the breach or rampart, during all the time of negotiation. The same thing is done for asking a suspension of arms, to bury the dead, and carry off the wounded after a violent attack.

“ The chemade being beat, the fire ceases on both sides, and the Governor sends some Officers of distinction to the Commander in Chief of the besiegers, who deliver to him the conditions on which the Governor proposes to surrender the town. But, as a security for the Officers sent from the garrison, the besiegers send a like number into the town. When the Governor's proposals are not satisfactory to the General of the besiegers, he prescribes the conditions on which the town is to surrender; he commonly threatens the Governor to allow him no conditions at all, in case he refuses those proposed, within a certain time, or when such or such a work is finished. If the besieged find the conditions of the besiegers too hard, the Officers return to their homes, and the drums are beat upon the rampart, to make every body retire before hostility begins, which is done in a very short time after. It is to be observed, that during the suspension of arms, no work should be done on either side, either to secure the besieged or besiegers: notwithstanding, however, that nothing should be undertaken during the negotiation, yet it is nevertheless very necessary to be upon the watch at that time as much as at any other, for fear of being surprised by stratagem, which is now looked upon as lawful.

“ But let us suppose, that the terms of capitulation are agreed upon: In that case the Governor sends two or three of his principal Officers into the camp, and the General sends the same number, and of the

same rank, into the town, as a security for accomplishing the capitulation: when the besieged have performed every thing according to agreement, their hostages are sent back to them again; and when the besiegers have performed every thing agreeable to the articles, their hostages are likewise sent to them.

“ The conditions of the besieged may be of various kinds, according to the different circumstances or situations in which they are; but the most common ones are as follow.

“ 1, That the garrison shall march out through the breach with their arms, baggage, horses, drum-beating, matches lighted on both ends, flying colours, a certain number of cannons and mortars, with their appertenances, spare carriages, ammunition for a certain number of charges, to be conducted in safety to the town agreed on, and which is usually the next belonging to the besieged. It must be observed to insert, *by the shortest road*, or, that the road is specified in words, which the garrison is to march. When the garrison has several days to march, before it can reach the town agreed on, it is required that the troops should be provided with provision and lodgment during that time.

“ 2, One of the gates shall be delivered up to the besiegers, either the same evening or at a certain hour next day, and the garrison shall march out in a day or two after, according to the agreement made between both parties.

“ 3, The besiegers shall furnish a certain number of covered waggons; that is, such as are not to be searched, besides others to carry the wounded and sick, which are in a condition to be transported; and, in general, all the carriages necessary to carry the garrison's baggage, and the artillery allowed by the capitulation.

4. That

" 4, That the sick and wounded, which cannot be carried off, and are obliged to remain in the place, shall have free liberty to go away with every thing that belongs to them, when they are in a condition to do it; and they shall be furnished, in the mean time, with lodgings and provision gratis, or otherwise.

" 5, There shall be no indemnification required from the besieged, for horses taken from the inhabitants, or for houses burned or destroyed during the siege.

" 6, That the Governor, the rest of the Officers under him, and those belonging to the garrison, the garrison itself, and, in general, every-body in the King's service, shall freely go out of the place, without any manner of reprisals of any nature whatever, neither under any pretext whatsoever.

" 7, If those who take possession of the town are of a different religion from that of the inhabitants, it must be inserted in the capitulation, that the inhabitants shall exercise their religion without any molestation.

" 8, That the inhabitants, and those depending on the place, shall be maintained in all their rights, privileges and prerogatives.

" 9, It shall be at the choice of those who have a mind to leave the place, to go where they please, with all their effects. It is also sometimes stipulated, and always should be, that those of the inhabitants who have shewn any partiality to the garrison, shall not be molested on that account, which they might have been before and during the siege.

" 10, It is also mentioned in the capitulation, that all the powder and ammunition remaining shall be delivered to the besiegers: that the places where mines are ready loaded shall likewise be shewn; and,

" 11, That all the prisoners made on both sides, during the siege, shall be released.

" It must be observed, that a garrison must have provisions and ammunition, at least for three days, in order to be entitled to a composition; without which they will be obliged to be made prisoners of war: but if the besiegers have not enquired into it before the capitulation is signed, it would be injustice to make the garrison prisoners of war, after having found the want of ammunition and provision.

" When the besiegers will agree to no other composition than that the garrison shall be made prisoners of war, and the garrison is not in a condition to hold out any longer, it is a general endeavour to make the conditions as little onerous as possible; and commonly agreed,

" 1, That the Governor, and the rest of the principal Officers, shall keep their swords, pistols, baggage, &c.

" 2, That the Subalterns, under the Captains, shall keep their swords only, with their baggage.

" 3, That the common men shall not be rifled nor dispersed from their regiments.

" 4, That the garrison shall be conducted to a certain place, by the shortest road, where they are to remain prisoners of war.

" 5, That the principal Officers shall have leave for two or three days to go where they please, to settle their affairs.

" 6, When the garrison quits the place, it shall not be permitted to decoy the soldiers, in order to make them desert from their regiments.

" When the capitulation is settled, an Officer of artillery from the besiegers comes into the place, who, together with an Officer of artillery from the garrison, takes an inventory of all the artillery and ammunition remaining in the place; and a Commissary of
of

of provision enters likewise, to take an account of the provisions which remain.

“When it is found necessary to surrender, and there are considerable magazines stored with ammunitions and provisions, there is as much of it destroyed as can be done, before any mention is made of capitulating, that so there may remain no more than what is necessary for capitulating, in order that the enemy may reap no benefit by them. If this should be done after the capitulation is mentioned, the besiegers may insist on a recompence; but what is done beforehand cannot be helped.

“As soon as the besieged have delivered the gate of the place to the besiegers, the first regiment of the army enters and mounts guard there.

“The day on which the garrison is to leave the place being come, the besieger’s army is put under arms, and ranged into two files, between which the garrison passes. The time of marching being come, the General, and the rest of the principal Officers, head the two files, to see the garrison defile before them.

“The Governor marches at the head, followed by the principal Officers, who make the garrison march, in the best order possible. The eldest regiments march commonly the first and last, and the rest in the center, together with the baggage. When there is any horse, it is also divided into three bodies, to march at the head, center, and in the rear. Small detachments of horse and foot are made, to march at the sides of the baggage, to take care of its not being rifled.

“The artillery, allowed by the capitulation, marches after the first battalion.

“When the garrison is arrived at the place agreed on, the Governor remits the hostages of the besiegers to the escorte; and, when the escorte is arrived

rived at the army, the hostages which the besieged have left for the security of the escorte, carriages, and other things allowed by the army, for escorting the garrison, are released.

“ When the garrison is made prisoners of war, it is likewise escorted to the place agreed on in the capitulation.

“ Every thing agreed on in the capitulation ought to be looked upon as sacred and inviolable; and every word ought to be understood in its plain and genuine sense, without any forced construction being put on it: yet, as this is not always the case, the Governor ought to be very cautious not to have any word inserted but what is clear and plain, without admitting of any other sense than that for which it is used. There are abundance of examples which prove the necessity of this precaution.

“ In the capitulation of a garrison, where there is a citadel, into which the garrison retires, there are some particular conditions to be requested; such as follow :

“ That the citadel shall not be attacked at that side next to the place; that the sick and wounded, which cannot be transported, shall remain in the place, and in the lodgings where they are; and, after being cured, they shall be provided with carriages and passports, to retire to the place agreed on in the capitulation. No persons should be let into the citadel but those who might be useful in its defence; the rest, who are useless, should by no means be suffered to enter. It must be mentioned in the capitulation, that these people shall be conducted to a neighbouring place belonging to their Sovereign, which is to be named. It ought also to be agreed on, to have a certain time allowed for the garrison to march into the citadel; and the besiegers should be absolutely prohibited from making any works whatsoever

soever for carrying on the approaches towards the reduction of the citadel, during the time prescribed.

“ A maritime town requires likewise some particular conditions, relating to the ships which might be in the harbour. It ought to be agreed that they shall leave the harbour the same day that the garrison leaves the place, or when the weather permits it, in order to sail to the port agreed on. They ought to keep all their artillery, ammunition, provision, &c. If bad weather should oblige them to enter any harbour belonging to the besiegers, it should be mentioned in the capitulation, that they shall be received, and that they shall there be furnished with necessaries to continue their voyage; they should also be provided with passports, and, in short, all the security possible, in order not to be insulted by the enemy's ships, till they are arrived at the port specified.

“ A great many other things might be said with regard to the subject treated on in this work: it would require too great a volume to enter into all the particulars of which it is susceptible: all that has been said ought to be looked upon as only a summary account of the principal attention which it requires, and that which is most generally observed.

“ Besides, as a late author, with reason, observes, places have different defences, according to their situations, and their being defended with more or less forces. The experience and courage of a Governor ought to suggest to him the best defence, to furnish him with resources to repair any accidents that may happen, and to make the best advantage of the besiegers' mistakes and negligence.

“ It is not sufficient to have courage enough to defend the place well; for it also requires a great deal of sagacity and knowledge, not only in the art of war, but likewise in fortification.

“ The

“ The defence is attended with a great many more difficulties than the attack, and it may consequently do more honour to a General who distinguishes himself in it. The superiority over an enemy in an attack, the conveniencies there are in receiving fresh forces and ammunition, whenever they are wanted, and all other necessaries, which may be had from the neighbouring country ; all this may serve to repair any accidents that may happen during the siege. It is not so in the defence ; no faults are committed unpunished, in the face of an understanding enemy. The attention must be equally over the soldiers and inhabitants, to keep a strict watch within and without, and not expose the troops without great necessities, and upon such occasions as are visibly useful. In short, the Governor must create a respect from the enemy, by his conduct and sagacity ; and never part with the least part of the works, till after having exhausted all possible means for maintaining it. All this requires the greatest capacity.”

Of the Qualifications requisite for the Commander in Chief of an Army.

[This is copied from M. SAXE's *Reveries concerning the Art of War.*]

THE idea which I have formed to myself of the Commander of an army, is far from being chimerical: on the contrary, it is founded upon observation and experience. Of all the accomplishments, therefore, that are required for the composition of this exalted character, courage is the first; without which I make no account of the others, because they will then be rendered useless. The second is genius, which must be strong and fertile in expedients. The third is health.

He

He ought to possess a talent for sudden and happy resources; to have the art of penetrating into other men, and of remaining impenetrable himself. He should be endued with a capacity prepared for every thing; with activity, accompanied by judgment; with skill, to make a proper choice upon all occasions; and with an exactness of discernment.

He ought to be mild in disposition, and free from all moroseness and ill-nature; to be a stranger to hatred; to punish without lenity, especially those who are most dear to him, but never through passion; to shew a constant concern at being reduced to the necessity of executing with rigour the rules of military discipline, and to have always before his eyes the example of Manlius. He should also banish that idea of cruelty which attends the infliction of punishments, and, at the same time, persuade both himself and others, that severity is a term misapplied for exemplary correction, and the necessary administration of the martial laws. With these qualifications he will render himself beloved, feared, and, without doubt, obeyed.

His province is vastly extensive; comprehending the art of subsisting his army; of conducting it; of preserving it in such a state as never to be obliged to engage contrary to his inclination; of chusing his posts; of forming his troops in a thousand different dispositions; and of seizing the advantage of that favourable minute which happens in all battles, and which is capable of determining their success. All these are circumstances of importance, and, at the same time, as various as the situations and the accidents which produce them. In order to discover these advantages on a day of action, it is necessary, that he should be disengaged from all other kind of business.

His examination of the ground, and of the disposition of his army, ought to be extremely quick: his

his orders should be short and simple; as, for instance, *the first line shall attack, the second shall sustain*; and so on. The Generals under his command must be persons of very shallow parts indeed, if they are at a loss how to execute them, or to perform the proper manœuvre, in consequence of them, with their respective divisions. Thus the Commander in Chief will have no occasion to embarrass or perplex himself; for if he takes upon him to do the duty of the Serjeant of the battle, and to be every where in person, he will resemble the fly in the fable, which had the vanity to think itself capable of driving a coach. Being therefore relieved from the hurry of the action, he will be able to make his observations better, will preserve his judgment more free, and be in a capacity to reap greater advantages from the different situations of the enemy's troops during the course of the engagement. When they are disordered, and a favourable occasion offers, he must repair with all speed to the place, take the first troops he finds at hand, and, advancing with rapidity, put them totally to the rout. These are the strokes which decide engagements, and win victories. I do not presume to point out, exactly, either in what part or in what manner this is to be accomplished, because it is what can only be demonstrated upon the spot, by reason of that variety of places and positions which the combat must produce. The whole is, to see the opportunity, and to know how to benefit by it.

Prince Eugene was particularly eminent in this branch of the art of war, which is the most sublime, and the greatest test of an elevated genius. I have applied myself to the study of his character, and can venture to say, that I am not mistaken with regard to it upon this head

Many

Many Commanders in Chief are no otherwise employed, in a day of action, than in making their troops march in a straight line; in seeing that they keep their proper distances; in answering questions which their Aids-de-camp come to ask, in sending them up and down, and in running about incessantly themselves: in short, they are desirous to do every thing, and, at the same time, do nothing. I look upon them in the light of persons who are confounded, and rendered incapable of discernment, and who do not know how to execute any other business than what they have been accustomed to all their lives; by which I mean, the conducting of troops methodically. The reason of this defect is, because very few Officers study the grand detail, but spend all their time in exercising the troops, from a weak supposition that the military art consists alone in that branch. When therefore they arrive at the command of armies, they are totally perplexed; and, from their ignorance how to do what they ought, are very naturally led to do what they know.

The one of these branches, meaning discipline, and the method of fighting, is methodical; the other is sublime: to conduct the latter of which, persons of ordinary abilities should by no means be appointed.

Unless a man is born with talents for war, and those talents moreover are brought to perfection, it is impossible for him ever to be more than an indifferent General. It is the same in other sciences; in painting or in music the professor must be indebted to nature, as well as art, in order to excel. This similitude extends to all things that pertain to the sublime; which is the reason that persons who are remarkably eminent in any science are so scarce, and that whole ages pass away without producing even one.

one. Application will refine the ideas, but can never give a soul; for that is the work of nature.

I have seen very good Colonels become very bad Generals; others again I have known, who were professed disciplinarians, and perfectly clever at the manœuvre of an army in camp; but if you took them from thence, to employ them against the enemy, they were absolutely unfit for the Command of a thousand men; they would be confused to the last degree, and totally at a loss which way to turn themselves. If an Officer of this stamp should come to command an army, as he would have no other resources than his dispositions, his views would extend no further than to secure himself by them: he would also be perpetually confounding the whole army with his orders, to explain them and to render them more intelligible. The least unexpected circumstance in war may make the greatest alterations necessary: if, in consequence, therefore, he should attempt to change his disposition, he will throw every thing into a dreadful confusion, and be infallibly defeated.

It is requisite, once for all, that one certain method of fighting should be established, with which the troops, as well as the Generals who command them, ought to be well acquainted; by which I mean the general rules for an engagement; such as, the taking care to preserve their proper distance in the march, their charging with vigour, and the filling up with the second line any intervals that may happen in the first. But this does not require any demonstration upon paper; it is the A, B, C, of the troops, for nothing is so easy; and Generals ought by no means to pay such great attention to it as most of them usually do. It is much more essential in a Commander to observe the countenance of the enemy, the movements he makes, and the posts he takes possession of; to endeavour, by a false alarm at one
part,

part, to draw away his troops from another, which he intends to attack ; to disconcert him ; to seize the advantage of every opportunity, and to make his efforts at the proper places. But then to be capable of all this, it is necessary that he should preserve his judgment quite free and disengaged from trivial circumstances.

Although I have dwelt so much upon the subject of general engagements, yet I am far from approving of them in practice, especially at the commencement of a war ; and I am persuaded, that an able General might avoid them, and yet carry on the war as long as he pleased. Nothing reduces an enemy so much as that method of conduct, or is productive of so many advantages ; for by having frequent encounters with him, he will gradually decline, and at length be obliged to sculk, and avoid you. Nevertheless, I would not be understood to say, that an opportunity of bringing on a general action, in which you have all imaginable reason to expect the victory, ought to be neglected ; but only to insinuate, that it is possible to make war without trusting any thing to accident, which is the highest point of skill and perfection within the province of a General. If then circumstances are so much in your favour as to induce you to come to an engagement, it is necessary, in the next place, that you should know how to reap the profits of the victory which is to follow ; and, above all things, that you should not content yourself with being left master of the field of battle only, according to the custom which prevails at present. The maxim, that it is most prudent to suffer a defeated army to make its retreat, is very religiously observed ; but is nevertheless founded upon a false principle ; for you ought, on the contrary, to prosecute your victory, and to pursue the enemy to the utmost of your power.

power. His retreat, which before, perhaps, was so regular and well conducted, will presently be converted into a confirmed rout. A detachment of 10,000 men is sufficient to overthrow an army of 100,000 in flight; for nothing inspires so much terror, or occasions so much damage, as that precipitation which usually attends it, and from which the enemy is frequently a long time in recovering: but a great many Generals avoid making the most of these opportunities, from the unwillingness to put an end to the war so soon.

I could find great numbers of examples to support what I have just been saying, if I was disposed to quote them; but, amongst the multitude, I shall content myself with the following.

As the *French* army, at the battle of *Ramillies*, was retreating, in very good order, over a piece of ground that was extremely narrow, and bordered on two sides by some deep hollows; the cavalry of the Allies pursued it at as slow a pace as if they were marching to an exercise; the *French* moving likewise very gently, and formed, at the same time, twenty deep, or perhaps more, on account of that narrowness of the ground which I have just taken notice of. In this situation, an *English* squadron approached two battalions of *French*, and begun firing upon them, who, imagining that they were going to be attacked, immediately came about, and made a general discharge; the noise of which so alarmed the whole *French* army, that the cavalry took to flight at full speed, and all the infantry precipitated itself into the two hollows with the utmost fear and confusion, insomuch that the ground was clear in an instant, and not a single person to be seen.

Can any one, therefore, after such an instance, presume to boast of the regularity and good order of retreats, or of the prudence of those who permit a vanquished

vanquished enemy to make them unmolested? Commanding Officers who conform to these tenets, make but bad servants, and promote very slowly the interests of their Sovereign. Nevertheless, I do not say they ought to give themselves totally up to the pursuit, and to follow the enemy with all their forces; but only to detach proper bodies, with instructions to pursue as long as the day lasts, and, at the same time, to keep themselves constantly in good order; because after his troops have once taken to flight, they may be driven before them like a flock of sheep. If the Officer, who is detached upon such an occasion, piques himself upon the regularity of his disposition, and the precautions of his march, it answers to no purpose to have sent him: his business is, to push forwards, and to attack incessantly; for it is impossible that any manœuvres can fail, but those which take up time, and give respite to the enemy.

Thus, without here referring the subject of retreats to a particular chapter, I shall conclude with observing that they depend entirely upon the capacity of the Generals who conduct them, and upon the different circumstances and situations by which they are attended. Upon the whole, a regular retreat is impracticable, except a conqueror is guilty of remissness in prosecuting his victory: for if he exerts himself properly in the pursuit, it will very soon be converted into a thorough flight.

Of the Rendezvous of an Army,

WHEN the army is ordered to assemble, it is generally near the frontiers of the country where the Commander in Chief intends to open the scene of war; in which case, the first consideration should be the convenience of a navigable river, for the more
I
ready

ready conveyance of provisions, cannon, &c. Great care must be taken in the marching of the troops that they are not liable to be flanked or intercepted; for of all operations none is more difficult, because they must not only be directed in the objects they have in view, but according to the movements the enemy may have made, or that you may expect they intend to make; therefore every necessary precaution must be taken; such as flanking parties, &c.

The order for the march of the troops must be so disposed, that each should arrive at their rendezvous, if possible, on the same day. The Quarter-master General, his Deputy, or an able Engineer, should sufficiently reconnoitre the country to obtain a just knowledge of it and the enemy before he ventures to form his routes.

When the encampment is to be formed, the General Officers, &c. are appointed to their several posts and stations; and the army divided into brigades, columns, wings, or lines.

Of the Marching of an Army.

After Orders.

THE army to receive two days bread at eight o'clock. The Quarter-masters, camp colourmen, and pioneers, are to parade at eleven o'clock, and march immediately after, commanded by the Quarter-master General, or his Deputy: they are to clear the ways, level roads, make preparations for the march of the army, and mark out the ground for encampment.

The army marches to-morrow; the general beats at two, the assemblé at three, and the march in twenty minutes after: upon beating the general, the village

lages and General Officers guards must march to join their respective corps; and the army pack up their baggage and be in readiness to decamp: upon beating the *assemble* the tents are to be struck, and sent with the rest of the baggage to the place appointed for assembling the *bât* horses, &c. The companies are to draw up in their several streets, and the rolls be called over. At the time appointed the drummers are to beat a march at the head of the line; upon which the companies will march out from their several streets, form battalions as they advance to the head of the line, and then halt.

The several battalions will be formed into columns by the Adjutant-general, or his Deputy, and the order of the march be given to the General Officers who lead the columns.

The heavy artillery, in general, keeps the great road, in the center of the columns, escorted by a strong party of infantry and some cavalry: the field-pieces march with the columns.

Each man is to march with thirty-six rounds of powder and ball, and two good flints, one of which is to be well fixed in the cock of each firelock, so as to procure the most fire. If you are apprehensive of the enemy wanting to attack or surprize you, the grenadiers should be advanced at the head of each column, and small parties of light horse scour the flanks. If the enemy should appear to be near you, these parties are to post themselves on rising grounds, that they may be able to discover their approach, and give immediate notice thereof. Small parties should also be posted at all avenues to woods; openings to roads, villages, or towns; and remain there till the whole army, rear-guard, baggage, &c. have passed.

The routes must be so formed, that no column cross another on the march.

Of its decamping from before an Enemy.

WHEN a General is under the disagreeable necessity of decamping from before an enemy, it is necessary that the utmost secrecy and silence should be observed. The less public orders are used on this occasion, the more certain is success.

When a General observes that the enemy have a very great foraging day, soon after their march for that purpose, he should make a feint as if he intended to do the same, by shewing^a a disposition to move from the left; while, in reality, he is marching off either from the right or the center.

In presence of the enemy, great attention must be had for the safety of the rear guard and baggage, provisions and artillery. Cannon are very useful to a retiring army; for, in case you pass a defile or river, they may be placed at the entry of the former, or on an eminence, if there is one that commands the defile through which the enemy must pass to attack the rear.

The columns are not to be at too great a distance from each other, but always ready to be formed in order of battle.

The Officer who commands the baggage-guard makes his disposition for the security of it.

Every General or Officer who leads a column is to have a copy of the order of march, with a description of the enemy's situation, country, roads, &c.

The common Order of Battle, or general Disposition, ordered by the King of Prussia, to be inviolably observed by all Generals, Commandants of Regiments, and Subalterns in his Service ; issued after the Battle of Molwitz.

1, **T**HE Van-guard shall not advance above two miles before the army shall take all imaginable precautions continually to reconnoitre the enemy.

2, The army marching in columns shall halt three miles from the enemy, and form in order of battle.

3, When the army has advanced far enough, the regiments shall range themselves in the manner which shall then be commanded them.

4, The first line, three deep, shall take great care to keep in close order, their ranks strait and equal.

5, The Colonels, Commandants, and Subalterns, who command platoons, ought to exhort the soldiers to do their duty and make the affair appear as easy to them as possible.

6, The Non-commissioned Officers, who are in the rear of the battalions, ought to beware of bringing the soldiers into confusion by useless words, but to keep a watchful eye over them.

7, If it shall happen that a soldier endeavours to run away, and goes one foot out of his rank for that purpose, the Officer or Non-commissioned Officer in the rear shall kill him on the spot, under the pain of being broke with infamy.

8, As the King observed, that at the last battle the best soldiers were with the baggage, he absolutely hereby forbids it for the future, and the Commandants of regiments shall answer for the same, under the pain of being cashiered.

9, To this effect each regiment shall employ only three Captains at arms with the worst soldiers, the sick, or others unfit for action.

10, The field-pieces, and such heavy artillery as the King may have along with him, shall be advanced eighty paces before the first line.

11, The grenadiers shall be posted behind the first line on the right, left, and center.

12, Three brigades of dragoons, of four hundred each, shall sustain the right wing of the cavalry; the rest shall be posted at the center behind the first line, where they shall wait his Majesty's orders.

13, If the cavalry commanded for the attack shall be repulsed, as at Molwitz, without having done their duty, the grenadiers shall fire on them, even to exterminating them entirely.

14, The Majors and Adjutants shall take care that their battalions do not fall into confusion, and for that purpose shall be continually riding along the front of them.

15, The corps de reserve, consisting of eighteen squadrons and six battalions, shall be posted twenty paces behind the first line, equally divided on right and left, and there wait orders.

16, The hussars shall sustain the left wing, shall observe the enemy's attacks, and act in consequence.

17, If the battle is well disputed, and many are killed, a regiment from the right, and another from the left shall complete the first line, where the General judges it most necessary; and the second line shall advance towards the first.

18, The second line shall be posted eight hundred paces behind the first, their firelocks shouldered; and the Officers shall prevent, under pain of being broke, any soldier quitting his rank.

19, The Officers who command platoons shall carefully visit the soldiers arms, see that the pan holds

holds the priming, and that every thing is in good order: if any thing is wanting it must be instantly repaired.

20, The soldiers should be exhorted to take their aim well, to adjust their shot, and not fire too high: to all these points the Officers should give particular attention.

21, As soon as his Majesty shall cause the signal to be given by three cannon shot at the center, the artillery shall, by a brisk fire, throw the enemy into confusion, and shall continue their fire till the King shall send them orders to cease, by one of his Adjutant-generals.

22, The Captains and Lieutenants of artillery shall point the guns themselves, and not trust it to the Gunners.

23, After the cannonade, the signal for the attack shall be given by three cannon shot.

34, When the army in close order, shall come within six hundred paces of the enemy, then, in order to familiarize the soldiers with the fire, and to blind them with regard to the danger, they shall begin to fire regularly by platoons.

25, The first line, continuing to advance charging, shall take great care that no regiment breaks the line.

26, The Officers in advancing shall give the word of command distinctly and loud, and place themselves one pace before their platoons, that the men may hear them, and they, seeing the men better, may prevent their hurting each other by an irregular fire.

27, In case the enemy's cavalry or hussars shall pierce the first line, then the regiment where they have pierced shall face about, and charge them in the rear.

28, If victory declares for his Majesty, and that the enemy have been obliged to yield, the platoon firing shall cease.

29, The cavalry and hussars shall then march out, and the King himself will chuse such of the infantry as, jointly with the cavalry, shall pursue the enemy.

30, During the pursuit, no soldier shall, under pain of death, quit his rank, to plunder or take booty : the Officers shall answer for this.

31, The regiments who are not sent on the pursuit, shall remain with shouldered firelocks, until they are commanded to order them : but even then no one should quit his rank.

32, His Majesty's pleasure is, that this disposition shall on all occasions be invariably followed.

Of changing an Order of Battle on a Plain.

" **A** Movement made by any one of the wings is, of all things, the most dangerous and the most delicate, if it is performed in the presence of the enemy. The greatest man among the ancients in this way was Scipio. I do not speak here of the Greeks : they were no doubt greater tacticians, and had more ability for general movements than the Romans.

" Our present manner of ranging the troops is more favourable; because the first line covering the second, which, by extending its wings, marching at first by its flank, and afterwards in front, may, by a conversion, form on the flanks of the first line : but for these movements there must be excellent troops and intelligent chiefs; and, besides, the time must be well chosen, and the movement performed with all possible promptitude and rapidity. That
of

of the Marechal de Luxembourg at Fleurus, is worthy of a great Captain.

“It is better, if you are the weakest, to fortify as much as possible the first line, and refuse the combat and keep back your center, while you make your wings advance. In such a case, in order to fortify your wings, you divide the second line in two corps towards the wings; and it is these two corps who partly ought to extend to the right and left, and surround the enemy with all their vigour: for, if the wings are defeated, the center will not hold out. The movements of the wings are not so difficult as those of the center: but these again being less common, and requiring more knowledge, are also more capable of deceiving the enemy. Vegetius says, in his general rules, “that a warlike and well-disciplined army ought to engage by their wings.”

Of the Measures to be taken for the Junction of two Armies.

“A General finds himself sometimes under the necessity of fighting, when it is his interest to join an army separated from his, and that the enemy’s army has got between the two to prevent their junction. To succeed on these important occasions, the chiefs of the two armies appoint a rendezvous at a proper place, and at the same hour, on the right or left of the enemy, in order to endeavour to join before he has intelligence of their march. Or, if it cannot absolutely be done without fighting the enemy in the post he occupies, they take their measures so justly, that both armies arrive and attack him at the same time. To this purpose they advertise each other of the day and hour each will arrive at the place appointed, and agree on the signals to be seen or heard; to which the one and the other ought to answer,

answer, to be the more certain that they are in condition to begin the attack. If this is well concerted and well executed, it is almost impossible for the enemy's army not to be defeated, who are commonly seized with a panic, when they find themselves attacked in front and rear.

"If they find they can make the junction by either side, and that there is a river or a defile, which one of the two armies must pass to join the other; that which is not to pass ought to march first, and construct, at the place appointed, redoubts or retrenchments, and guard them with infantry, to be masters of the passage. In case the enemy march to engage the other, the first shall then pass the river or the defile to succour it.

"If the enemy marches to one of the two, that which he marches against shall endeavour to avoid the action till the others come up, which may be done by taking an advantageous post.

Means proposed for the Retreat of an Army invested by another.

"IF it happens that an army, having too far advanced into a country, is invested by one greatly superior, and which absolutely cuts off their provisions (an inconvenience a General ought, above all things, to avoid;) in such a case, if they occupy a post the enemy dares not attack, and that the General finds he cannot subsist without risking a battle, he ought to try it; but with the greatest briskness and vigour, after having informed his troops that this is the only means left, and that they must conquer or die. A brisk and determined resolution often succeeds; and it may happen that this army will not quit their post with advantage, or that they may receive a convoy which will put them in a condition

to

to maintain it. To succeed in this, the convoy must be brought about by that side of the country which they believe to be the easiest, and with all possible secrecy; and when they are informed it is near, the General should go to meet it with all his forces, and risk the loss of some of his troops to receive it: for nothing should be spared, if the safety of the army depends on this convoy.

“If you judge it as difficult to procure the arrival of this convoy, as to quit your post: or even, tho’ it can be brought, you foresee you will be obliged to quit your post some time thereafter, and that the delay will be of no advantage to you; it is then better to make a brave effort to get out of this difficulty, than to delay it; because an army, shut up in this manner, is always ruined by sickness and diseases, and for want of proper means of treating the sick. You should then have the precaution to leave all your equipage in the post you quit, with some troops to guard it, if that can be done with a few: for if it is necessary to leave many, you should rather carry all along with you, for fear of weakening yourself too much. If, on the other hand, you apprehend the equipage may incumber or hinder the retreat, which otherwise might be performed, you ought to make no hesitation in burning a part of them, and keeping only the best, or what will incumber you least. When the General has taken all the necessary measures, and made all the proper dispositions for his retreat, he ought to begin it at night, after having well observed the easiest place he can pass at, and having given the alarm at several different places, that the enemy may be uncertain by which he intends to retire. If the baggage is carried with you, the troops must cover it: that is to say, if the enemy is before you, the baggage must march behind the troops; if, on the
the

the contrary, the enemy is in your rear, it must march before you, escorted: it must be placed on the left, if the enemy are on the right; and if they are on the left, it must be on the right. If the enemy are in your front, your best troops should form the van-guard; for success in such an enterprise often depends on the first stroke. You should use the same precautions for your flanks or rear, if you foresee that it is there they will make their chief efforts. It may happen, that, being in the night-time, the enemy will only make feeble attacks to retard your march till day, or till all their forces, which may be dispersed, are joined. In this case the General ought not to stop, but defend himself retiring, without insisting too much on sustaining such of the troops as may be attacked, even if he should suffer the loss of some of them. There are occasions where it is necessary to sacrifice a part to save the rest: but as it is a disagreeable alternative, it is only resolved on, in the last extremity. It may also happen, that the enemy hath so divided his forces, that, when one part harrasses your army, the other is detached to seize a certain post: you have then no other part to chuse, but that of attacking those who harrass you. In such a case, the principles for the disposition of the attack are regulated by the nature of the ground on which the enemy is, and the kind of troops proper for it.

Precautions to be taken when obliged to establish your Quarters in a woody or mountainous country.

“A Perfect knowledge of the country is always necessary, but more particularly when you establish your quarters in a woody or mountainous country. The more it appears difficult or impracticable

ticable to turn them and separate them, the more precaution is required on your part. A gorge or opening which you have not sounded and examined, a road whose turnings you do not know, a valley whose bottom you are not perfectly acquainted with heights which appear inaccessible, and which you have neglected to occupy, will sometimes furnish an opportunity to the enemy to penetrate by the rear of your quarters, and to attack and carry them.

“ With this knowledge, a General will not only keep his quarters in security, but he will spare his troops from much fatigue, by placing no unnecessary guards, and not multiplying the patrols; which he will be obliged to do, if he has only a superficial knowledge of the county.

“ After he has taken his first precautions, he will place all his infantry in a first line, in the most considerable places; such as small towns or large villages. To this infantry he will join hussars, to be able to push detachments forward, whether for the security of the quarters, for carrying off the forage between him and the enemy, or for establishing contributions, if he finds means so to do. The dragoons can, according to the circumstances, do duty either on foot or on horse-back: he will therefore place them on the flanks of the cavalry, to cover them.

“ Besides the retrenchments with which he ought to fortify every little town or village, he ought also to cut a trench at the head of all the gorges or roads leading to the quarters, placing barriers on them for the passage of the detachments of hussars or dragoons: and these trenches must be exactly guarded by infantry.

“ In a mountainous country, the detachments ought not to advance so far as in a plain country, because it will be easy for the enemy to get between them,
and

and cut them off from the quarters, by sending infantry by bye-paths, where the hussars cannot penetrate. These troops will place themselves between the quarters and the detachment, after it has past, as we have said; and when it is attacked in front, they will attack it in rear, and so place it between two fires.

“ You must place centinels on the heights, with orders to advertise you if they see any troops coming, but positively not to fire; that the enemy may believe the quarters are not on their guard, and so be drawn into a sort of ambuscade, which will give a dislike of coming to attack your quarters, or even of approaching to examine them; and this is necessary in the beginning, because the troops are there to repose, and to subsist during the winter, that they may be in a condition to take the field early in the spring. However, if the enemy should attempt to attack some of the quarters, as, by the precautions mentioned, he will find the troops under arms ready to receive him, he may probably be defeated, or at least be obliged to retire: and it is very likely such a check may disgust him, and he will leave the quarters in tranquility for the future. This tranquility, true or supposed, ought not to prevent the Commandant from sending out detachments to reconnoitre and examine the country exactly. For such detachments, some Non-commissioned Officers, with six men each, sent out on different sides, will be sufficient. Those detachments which are sent for foraging, or for establishing contributions, must be more considerable, but not too numerous: they should be composed of infantry, hussars, or dragoons, according to the nature of the country.

If the gorges leading to the quarters are crossed by different roads, or if these roads all lead to the high road which conducts to the quarters, you must, during

during the night, place a guard of hussars or dragoons where these cross-roads meet, and centinels or vedettes along all the roads.

“ This guard will retire at sun-rising : it will be useless in the day time, as the enemy seldom chuse to attack then; and, even in that case, the first attack must be made at the trenches and barriers which are before the quarters, at the entry of the roads or gorges : and consequently the troops will have time enough to take arms, and occupy the post ordered.

“ If, for want of forage, the General cannot keep his cavalry, as they are of no use among the mountains, he may send them behind him, to places where they can be in safety, and where they can find forage, unless his project is to quit that country, and carry on the war in another, where they can act more easily.

“ But if the circumstance obliges him to remain in the mountains, and that forage is wanting, he will only keep the hussars and dragoons ; the first will serve for the advanced detachments, and the others will be useful on foot as infantry.

“ Though cavalry are ill placed in the mountains, sometimes it is necessary to establish them there, when the plains have been laid waste ; but they should never be placed but in a second line, and in that part of the country the least mountainous, most open, and most abundant in forage. Care especially should be taken to remove them the farthest from any danger of being attacked, both because they cannot act, and even as it is impossible for them to defend themselves against infantry, which the enemy certainly will employ in such a country.

“ It would be needless to speak of the precautions to be taken by cavalry in a mountainous country, because it cannot be supposed that cavalry alone are
placed

placed there. These precautions can only serve to facilitate their retreat, but never for their defence; and the enemy will soon be master of the country, if you have nothing but cavalry to oppose him with."

Precautions for securing the Cavalry's Quarters in a plain covered Country.

"IT will be sufficient to mention here the means *George Basta* (a Spanish General of note, in the beginning of the seventeenth century) made use of for securing his quarters of cavalry: they appear to be the better, as they are very simple; beside, the authority of a man so conversant in the military art, and so generally approved of, ought to be regarded as a respectable law.

"*George Basta* supposes a village in the middle of a plain; he establishes his guards, great and small, on all the roads which lead to the quarters; he sends out his detachments as far as they can possibly go without the risk of being cut off: he places his guards 150 paces from the quarters, the small advanced guards in proportion, and the vedettes fifty paces before the small advanced guards.

"In the night-time, the vedettes formed a kind of circle round the quarters, near enough to hear each other: they were continually marching towards each other, as if they intended to change place. By this perpetual movement no person could come from or go to the quarters, without being seen or stopped: the detachments which were advanced, secured the exterior part of the quarters to a great distance. Besides all this, there were patrols of three or four men, who kept on the roads 3 or 400 paces from the vedettes, in case the enemy should escape the detachments. These patrols, as well as the detachments,

stopped

stopped from time to time, and listened attentively to hear if any troops were coming towards them. If the enemy had garrisons near, the detachments had orders to advance as near them as possible ; first to secure the tranquility of the quarters, and then to keep the enemy in awe, and prevent their coming to disquiet them, by shewing them they are always on their guard.

“ These precautions appear to be excellent : but if such a quarter is attacked by infantry, what can cavalry do in a village ? All it can do, is to profit by the intelligence given them by the advanced parties, to send off their baggage, and then make their retreat ; for it is impossible to defend a town or village with cavalry against infantry. Whatever precautions are taken, by retrenching the village, making loop-holes through the walls of the houses, and advancing detachments, the cavalry, when attacked by infantry, have no resource but getting into a plain, in order to act : ramparts are not made for cavalry ; it is from their swords they are to expect victory or safety. Such quarters of cavalry alone, invented by *George Basta*, serve only to prove the necessity of vigilance in war ; but this sort of conduct in quarters of cavalry ought not to be followed but when they are greatly exposed. It is always a bad position for cavalry to place them alone in any country, however open it may be : it is even very seldom that the circumstances oblige you to do so : but if the situation of affairs, or the want of forage, require it, the precautions of *George Basta* are excellent, and ought to be employed for the preventing all surprise.”

Of the Vigilance of each Commandant in his own Quarter.

[*This is copied from BLAND's Discipline.*]

AS soon as the troops are entered and established in a quarter, he who commands ought narrowly to inspect all the environs, and, upon his own knowledge, decide the places where posts are most necessary, and fix them there. He will then mark out a place of parade, or general rendezvous, where the troops shall assemble on the first intelligence of the enemy, to be ready to march with promptitude, on the first order from the General.

No person whatever shall quit the quarter, on any pretence, without permission from the Commandant. If the Officer himself gives the example of this exactness, the soldier will not murmur against the severity of the discipline. The troops in quarters shall, as in camp, be in messes; and the Commandant shall daily, morning and evening, receive the report from the Officers of each troop.

A Field-officer shall be daily appointed to visit the messes, besides the Visiting-officer of each company, of which he shall make his report to the Commandant, who shall himself, every day, visit the posts on foot or on horseback, that he may be well assured that every thing is in order: as soon as he has examined every thing, and rectified what he finds wanting or amiss, he shall go and make his report to the General; or if, by the proximity of the enemy, or the distance from the head-quarters, there may be some risque in absenting himself, it will be sufficient to send a Field-Officer to the General, to inform him of what passes in the quarter. The Commandants at each quarter shall

shall observe the same order, as well those in the rear as those the most exposed.

It is indispenfibly necessary to have always advanced detachments : this is a general rule, without any exception. It is by this the quarters are secured, or at least put beyond all surprise. This detail does not belong to the particular Commandant of each quarter ; it is the province of the General who orders it ; they only obey : however, as it is to be presumed they may be attacked, they ought to take every sort of precaution not to be surprised. The duty of the particular Commandant is to watch over the interior security of the quarter ; and that of the General is to provide for its exterior security, without neglecting the interior. Indolent minds, whom this multiplicity of precautions drag from sloth and repose, sometimes murmur against the General, and accuse him of apprehensions and uneasiness. The Officers ought to reprove and suppress such reproaches among the soldiers, which only dishonour those who make them : but the General or Commandant ought to take no other notice of them but to punish them where they appear. The glory of success, which will ever follow such precautions, is a sufficient recompence for those mean, wretched imputations.

It is not the multiplicity of guards, nor their force, which rather embarrasses them, that gives security to one or many quarters ; it is the manner of disposing and adapting them to the situation of the place. In fact, of what use are very strong guards, when, by their distance from others, they cannot be secured ? Whereas, guards, placed at a reasonable distance, can assemble on the first signal, and compose a little army, which appears to increase in proportion as it is attacked. The advanced detachments, the exact discipline of the troops, and vigilance of the Chiefs, are the sources of the most glorious successes.

The more the enemy appears to be tranquil, or the greater distance you are from him, the more should you be on your guard: security founded on the distance of the enemy, is very dangerous: often the enemy's feigned tranquility is only a stratagem to surprise you, to defeat you with more certainty, and which may draw along with it the defeat of several other quarters.

The Manœuvres to be opposed to the Enemy's false Alarms.

“ **A** VIGILANT enemy does not fail to give an alarm to the quarters, true or false, as often as he can; and he can as often as he will. He has frequently no other view but to disturb and fatigue them, and, by keeping them always alert, to prevent their re-establishment during the winter; or to abate the General's vigilance against true alarms, by often deceiving him with false ones. A negligence which will soon communicate itself among the troops, and the particular Commandants, if great care is not taken to prevent it, will afford an easy opportunity of surprising and carrying off, at least, some of the quarters.

“ But a wise and prudent General knows how to prevent these inconveniencies, by preserving order in the quarters, by taking the necessary precautions for their security, by making the infantry take arms without beat of drum, and the cavalry mount without sound of trumpet: in order that the enemy, deceived by this silence, and believing them asleep, may advance into the quarters to fall upon them. When he finds them under arms, his surprise alone will occasion his defeat; or, at least, will make him abandon his enterprise, and begin his retreat; but which

which he cannot perform without being greatly harassed. It is on such occasions a General's genius appears. It is not sufficient to know how to secure his quarters; he must turn to the enemy's disadvantage the very manœuvres they intend to be his. This particular way of doing it seems very favourable; and, if it succeeds, they will have no more cause to fear false alarms, because the enemy will be convinced of the vigilance of the troops. However, you must not pursue your advantage too far, for fear of an ambuscade; but, so long as you see the country clear before you, you ought to profit by the enemy's surprise, and charge him with vivacity.

"It is always necessary to bring the troops under arms without noise. It is a general rule that, on all occasions, silence is favourable in war: the orders of the Commandant are then better understood, and executed with more promptitude. This silence, which does not prevent your being on your guard, prevents the enemy, troubled and dispirited by seeing himself deceived in his project, from continuing to give you false alarms, and restores tranquility to the quarters. The enemy himself will begin to think of allowing his troops to repose, after the fruitless fatigues they have suffered in these attempts.

"As to the cavalry, they ought also to saddle and mount without any sound of trumpet; for whatever good order there may be in the quarters, the trumpets on one hand, the cries on another, the hurry to saddle their horses, and to find their arms, occasion confusion, and make the orders to be ill understood. Quarters in such confusion may be easily defeated by inferior numbers, who, perhaps, only came to give a false alarm, or to reconnoitre.

"In general, good order in the quarter depends on the knowledge and understanding of him who commands, and on the vigilance and good discipline

he causes to be observed. It is by such conduct that he not only has nothing to fear from the enemy, but even draws from their attempts his own certain success. The reputation he will acquire among the enemy by his vigilance, will procure him advantages beyond his expectation."

1. *Of the Grand Manœuvre.* 2. *Of the Column.*

[This is copied from SAXE's *Reveries concerning the Art of War.*]

ARTICLE I. *Of the Grand Manœuvre.*

I AM persuaded, that unless troops are properly supported in an action, they must be defeated; and that the principles which M. de Montecuculli has laid down in his Memoirs, are founded upon certainties. He says that infantry and cavalry should be always reciprocally sustained by each other; nevertheless, we, in direct opposition to his measures, post all our cavalry upon the wings, and our infantry in the centre, each to be sustained by itself only; which disposition, as the interval between our lines is usually five or six hundred paces, is in itself sufficient to intimidate the troops; because it is natural for every man, who sees danger before him, and no relief behind, to be discouraged; and this is the reason why even the second line has sometimes given ground, while the first was engaging; which is what many others, probably, as well as myself, have seen happen more than once; and although it seems hitherto to have escaped the reflection of any, it cannot, as I have already observed, be imputed to any other cause than the frailty of the human heart. The following is a transcript of what the abovementioned illustrious author says upon this subject.

In

In the armies of the antients every regiment of foot had a certain proportion of horse and artillery ; the horse were divided into two sorts, under the appellation of heavy armed and light armed ; the former of which wore breast-plates : why, therefore, would they incorporate these distinct bodies together, unless it was on account of the absolute necessity of such a connection, and the mutual service they would be capable of rendering each other by acting in concert ? According to the modern practice, where all the infantry is posted in the center, and the cavalry upon the flanks, at the extent of several thousand paces, how is it possible they can support each other ? If the cavalry are defeated, it is evident that the infantry, becoming abandoned, and their flanks exposed, must unavoidably share the same fate, from the enemy's cannon at least, if not by other means, which happened to the *Swedes* in the year 1614. When their cavalry had been driven off the field of battle, they perceived the error of their disposition, and, in order to remedy it, posted some platoons of musqueteers between the squadrons ; but all efforts were then ineffectual, for the squadrons were totally disordered ; and the platoons, not having any body of troops at hand to retire to, nor pikemen to cover them, were put to the sword ; for how could they possibly retreat to their infantry, which was at so great a distance ?”

It is for these reasons that I have posted small bodies of cavalry at the distance of thirty paces, in the rear of my infantry ; and battalions of pikemen formed in the square in the interval between my two wings of cavalry ; in the rear of which, likewise, it will be able to rally, if broken or repulsed.* My

* Perhaps it may be objected, that this cavalry, if repulsed by the enemy, will fall into disorder upon the square battalions ; but it should be observed, that the Marshal furnishes them with pikes, on purpose to render them capable of opposing the shock

second line of cavalry will never fly, so long as they see the square battalions in their front, and their countenance will also animate the first. The battalions will maintain their ground, from the persuasion of being soon succoured by the cavalry, who, under the cover of their fire, and a vigorous resistance, will presently form again and renew the charge with fresh courage, in order to retrieve their honour, and wipe out the disgrace of their late discomfiture: the battalions will moreover serve to cover the flanks of the infantry. Some, very improperly, post small bodies of infantry between the intervals in their line of cavalry: the weakness of this disposition is alone sufficient to intimidate them; for the foot see that if the cavalry are defeated, they must inevitably be cut to pieces; and if the cavalry, who have also a dependance upon them, make but a brisk movement, they leave them behind; so that perceiving they have lost their assistance, they soon fall into confusion, and, being put to flight, leave the flanks of your army open to the enemy.

Others again post squadrons of cavalry amongst their infantry, which is equally absurd; for the destruction of horses from the enemy's fire occasions disorder; and if the cavalry give way, the infantry will presently do the same.

But I would ask, in what manner squadrons in this disposition are to act? Are they to stand fast, sword in hand, and wait the attack of the enemy's infantry, firing and advancing upon them with fixed bayonets; or must they make the charge themselves? If they do the last, and are repulsed, which will
most

of cavalry; besides, the intervals between them are so large, that, however precipitate the horse might be in their retreat, it is improbable they would fall upon them; but, for a farther security, they might be covered with *chevaux-de-frise*.

most probably be the case, they must break their own infantry in their retreat, because it will be difficult for them to find their former posts again; and the intervals allowed them being small, will certainly have been filled up; for the battalions are subject to such great inconveniencies, from their present method of forming, that the disorder of a few files, whether occasioned by their own movement, the doubling of the ranks, or the enemy's cannon, is sufficient to throw the whole into irretrievable confusion. It is far otherwise with my centuries; they follow each their respective standard, and keep in a body together: all disorders among them are easily remedied, and if not, so long as they are guided by their standards, which are to range in a line with that of the legion, no fatal consequence can ensue, because the Officers will be able to keep the ranks straight, which it is impossible for them to do in the battalions; and this being also one great defect in *M. de Folard's* column, I shall take the present opportunity to give my sentiments of it.

Of the COLUMN.

NOTWITHSTANDING the very great regard I have for the Chevalier *Folard*, and the high esteem I entertain for his ingenious writings, yet I cannot agree with him in opinion concerning the column. It is striking, indeed, and formidable in appearance; and the idea of it, which first presented itself to my imagination, seduced for a while my judgment, till, by trying it in execution, I became convinced of my error. The following analysis, or calculation, will be necessary to discover the defects of it.

In action, every man is to be allowed one foot and a half, or eighteen inches distance, and the flanks of the column are to face outwards; which flanks,
in

in whatsoever order they are formed, must be always composed of at least forty files in depth, upon twenty-four ranks in breadth; thus, when faced, it consequently takes up sixty feet for its flank-front: in marching, it requires one hundred and twenty, which is double its former distance; because a man will not be able to move, without kicking his leader; if confined within the space of eighteen inches; but to march with celerity, must be allowed three feet; so that when the front of the column marches first off its ground, the rear will be obliged to wait till it has gained sixty paces; and likewise to march the same distance, after the front has halted; as it must make intervals in the flanks, which will expose them to great danger. This defect will naturally be increased, in proportion to the number of files which are added; so that a column, consisting of two hundred and forty, will occupy, in its standing order, three hundred and sixty feet in length, and, of course, seven hundred and twenty, marching. After having pierced the enemy, its flanks are to face to the right and left outwards, in order to charge their broken ranks: but as it takes up double its proper allowance of ground, its files will remain open, and large intervals be left, especially if the charge is to be made with speed and impetuosity, which ought to be the property of the column.

The Chevalier is very much deceived in imagining it to be a body capable of moving with ease; inasmuch that I do not know any one so unweildy, particularly when it is formed in the manner just above described. If it happens that the files are once disordered, either by marching, the unevenness of the ground, or the enemy's cannon, which last must make a dreadful havock amongst them, it will be impossible to restore them to good order again: thus it becomes a huge, inactive mass, divested of
all

all manner of regularity, and totally involved in confusion. I do not think, notwithstanding what the Chevalier says, that the weight of it can be of any great consequence; for the men do not push one another forwards, in the manner which he describes; neither is it possible they should, while they take up three paces distance, which they are obliged to do in marching.

In retreating, it has the advantage of battalions formed in the square; not that it is capable of marching with more celerity, but because every part moves together; and although it be even pierced by the enemy's cavalry in pursuit, yet the injury it will thereby sustain is inconsiderable, for they must be exposed to a fire from behind, and the interval they make will be presently closed up.

Two battalions, formed back to back, will answer the same purpose marching by files and facing to the right and left outwards, when necessary. This method of retreating must be performed very slowly, for otherwise the rear will soon be separated from the main body, by reason of that distance of three feet, which every man will take up in marching. But to believe that the column is an active and light body, is an error of which I am thoroughly convinced; insomuch that I am even induced to think it a dangerous disposition when composed of but twenty-four by sixteen, on account of the difficulty of forming it again, when once broken or disordered. Properly, it should never consist, in breadth, of more than two battalions, formed each four deep, which does not at all confound their natural order.

What I have been saying concerning the room which every man must necessarily take up, shews the danger of marching by files. If you do it in the presence of an enemy in order to fill up any interval, you must inevitably be undone; for your
battalion

battalion will then occupy double its former quantity of ground, and you will also require double the proper time to form it again : as, for instance, supposing your battalion consists of six hundred men, with files closed, it will cover two hundred and twenty-five feet ; if it is to gain ground to the right, the right hand man, will have marched that distance before the left hand man has moved ; and after the former has halted, the latter will have the same number of feet to march, before the battalion can be in its proper order, to face to the front again ; which together takes up as much time as would be necessary to march the distance of four hundred and fifty feet, or one hundred and eighty paces. If then the enemy is a hundred paces off, and seizes this opportunity to charge you, he will have the advantage of as much time, before you can be formed, as is required to march eighty paces ; the danger of this movement naturally increases in proportion, as you augment the number of troops that are to make it ; for if you have four battalions, and the enemy is at the distance of eight hundred paces, you are exposed to as great a disadvantage. In this I proceed upon geometrical principles, to which it is necessary to have recourse on many occasions in war.

The tact, or cadence, is the only effectual remedy for these defects, on which the event of all engagements totally depends. It is what I have dwelt upon the longer, on purpose to demonstrate the great efficacy of it, and, at the same time, to expose the ignorance of our modern disciplinarians ; who, notwithstanding they concur with me in regard to the reality of these errors, remain yet unacquainted with any other method of avoiding them in practice, than by marching slow.

We cannot even bring a single battalion drawn up but four deep to the charge, without being subject

ject to the inconvenience of which I have been speaking: unless we march at a snail's pace, our ranks and files when we approach the enemy are open. This monstrous defect in our discipline is what gave rise to the present method of firing; for to charge otherwise, it is necessary to move briskly and together, which cannot be done, allowing only eighteen inches to a man, without the tactick.

It is also impossible that the Romans and Macedonians, as their manner of forming was in close and deep order, could engage without it; it is a term which is very familiarly used, but has hitherto, methinks, been totally misapplied or mistaken.

I have frequently been surprized, that the column is not made use of against the enemy, on a march; for it is certain, that a large army always takes up then, three or four times more ground than is necessary to form it. If, therefore, you get intelligence of the enemy's route, and the hour at which he is to begin his march, although he is at the distance of six leagues from you, you would have very sufficient time to intercept him; for his front usually arrives in the new camp before his rear has quitted the old. It is impossible to form troops that take up so much more than their proper quantity of ground without making large intervals, and a dreadful confusion. Notwithstanding which, I have very often seen the enemy suffer it to be done without molestation, when one would have imagined, that nothing less than fascination could have prevented his taking the advantage of an opportunity so favourable to him.

The present subject might furnish a very useful chapter; for how many different countries will occasion such straggling marches, and in how many places may one make an attack without risking any thing? How frequently does it happen to an army,

to

to be divided on its march by bad roads, rivers, difficult passes, &c. and how many situations will enable you to surprize any part of it? How often do opportunities present themselves of separating it, so as to be able, although inferior, to attack one part, with advantage; and, at the same time, by the proper disposition of a small number of troops only, prevent its being relieved by the other? But all these circumstances being as various and undeterminate as the situations which produce them, nothing more is required, than to keep good intelligence to acquire a knowledge of the country, and to assume the courage to execute; for as these affairs are never decisive on your side, and may be so on that of the enemy, the risk you run is inconsiderable, when compared with the advantages you may gain. The manner of attack, is with the heads of your columns, which are to charge as fast as they arrive, and to be sustained by the others which follow; so that your disposition is made in a manner spontaneously, and you attack an enemy without either order or support, and totally unprepared to make any defence.

Of PARTIES.

“AN army can never be informed of the enemy’s motions in too many different ways; and as to spies, as some may be discovered, others prevented giving their intelligence in time, it is very necessary to have parties continually patrolling without, composed according to the nature of the country into which they have to penetrate; and by whom the General is informed of every thing which passes, within a reasonable distance of his camp.

“Parties, as well soldiers as Officers, are often commanded by their tour in the roster: often also the

the General chuses particular volunteer Officers to command them, who are well acquainted with the country they are sent into, and capable of examining narrowly, and giving a distinct account to the General of every thing he wants to be informed of. It is better too, the men should be volunteers and approved of; for, if they are taken by the roll, a malingerer, or bad marcher, may be found among them; besides, they should be men of resolution and known courage.

“ The general object of parties is, to be informed of every thing that passes in the country, and to hinder those of the enemy from knowing what they are doing, or what they intend to do. But it is not an easy thing to conduct a party properly; and we see very few capable of acquitting themselves of it. This proceeds, no doubt, from their not applying to this part of the service when young; which is, however, of great use on many occasions; and in which, consequently, all Officers ought to be instructed. A young man, who wishes to be a proficient in the military business, and would make his way quickly, can never use more certain means to accomplish it, than attending an experienced partisan, and endeavouring, by this example, to become capable of leading a party: it is in this way, he will, in a short time, see many stratagems and many actions: and this is the road which leads to his being often employed himself, and often gives him the opportunity of doing great service to the General in Chief.

“ A General Officer is often detached with a considerable body of troops, when the General wants to be informed of the enemy's situation, to watch their motions or to harraßs them.

“ Often also a private Officer is detached with a small party of infantry or cavalry, either for the same purposes,

purposes, or to carry off forage, make prisoners, or even to inform the General of something he wants to know, previous to the undertaking some enterprizes.

“ The Officer who commands a party, ought to be perfectly acquainted with the country, the roads, the fords or bridges over rivers, the defiles, woods, villages, farm-houses or hamlets, in the neighbourhood where they are to pass: they ought to make acquaintance with the Mayors and Bailiffs, and other Magistrates there, and endeavour to have private intelligence from them; for this purpose, let him behave to them with generosity, make them presents, never permit any harm to be done their towns or villages, and carefully protect every thing which belongs to them. A Partizan who has taken these precautions, will always march with safety, and never can be surprized; for he will be exactly informed of the smallest parties the enemy can send out, either from their garrison or their army.

“ A party, composed only of infantry, should never march but through a covered country, and never expose themselves in a plain, in the day-time. By this precaution, which is essential for their safety, they are, at the same time, less subject to be discovered, and may the more easily execute what they are ordered. The Partizan ought also to use all sorts of stratagems, by marches and counter-marches, to arrive at the place he has in view, and return in the same manner: he ought to be capable of resolving quickly, and at one glance of his eye to determine whether to engage or retreat, according to times and occasions. He must know, when weak, how to post himself to advantage, how to dress an ambuscade properly, and how to avoid falling into those of the enemy: he must preserve his ammunition, and take particular care that his men's arms are always in order.

order. He must, in short, keep his troops in the most exact discipline, and make them even observe strict silence, which is absolutely necessary for parties.

“ Let him give great attention never to halt in villages, farm-houses, or gentlemen’s seats: if his soldiers need refreshments, let him send an intelligent sagacious soldier to the nearest village to seek them; and, when brought out of the village, detach one or two to fetch them to the place he has chosen for his halt; which should be proper for concealing his men; to prevent the peasants from seeing or counting his numbers, and fit for defence, if he is then attacked. He ought also to shun passing near villages, castles, &c. whether he marches by day or night, that he may not be discovered by the barking of dogs, or seen by the peasants, who may inform the enemy; neither should he in the day-time keep the high roads, or march through a very open country.

“ It is fit he should carry a watch, pen, ink, and paper, with him, that he may be able to mark to the General, the hour he sends him any report; mentioning what has happened to him, or what he has discovered that is of importance. The soldier he sends with his written or verbal report, ought to be privately instructed by him, where he will find the General, if the army has marched; concealing from the rest the motions of the army; whether it has made or is to make any, so that the enemy can never be informed by those who may desert from him. If he wants to inform the General of something of very great consequence, he ought to detach two or three soldiers, who must take different routes; so that one may arrive safe, in case the rest, by malice or misfortune, fall into the enemy’s hands.

“ If two equal parties engage in an open field, it is the courage and hardiness of the Partizan which decides

L

decides the success. If to form an ambuscade in a close covered country, and then surprize the enemy, who, for want of proper precaution, has fallen into it, he owes his success to his judgment and sagacity: and, if he takes any prize or booty, let him distribute it with the utmost equality. Other rules for the conduct of a Partizan would be needless: he must find them in his own capacity and experience."

General Instructions to the Van-guard.

[This is copied from BLAND's *Discipline*.]

THE van-guard is to march before the regiment: the distance which they are to be advanced cannot be absolutely determined, since it must depend on the nature of the country you march through; so that in an inclosed country it cannot exceed two hundred yards, without losing sight of the regiment, which they are by no means to do, unless they have orders: and in an open or champaign one, they ought not to be above three or four hundred yards, lest they should be attacked and cut off by a superior party, before the regiment could come up to their relief.

The van-guard is to reconnoitre, or view every place where any number of men can lie concealed; such as woods, copses, ditches, hollow ways, straggling houses or villages, through which you are to march or pass near.

That the regiment may not halt upon every occasion of this nature, the Officer who commands the van-guard must order a Serjeant and six or twelve men to advance before him, but not to march out of his sight, who are to reconnoitre all suspected places; and

and where there are more than one of those places to be looked into at a time, by having them both on the right and left of the road, he is to order out another small party for that purpose.

When there are any woods or villages which will require some time to view, the Officer must halt his guard at some distance from them, and remain there till his advanced parties have reconnoitred them thoroughly, and sent him an account that all is safe; after which he is to march on.

Upon every halt of this kind he is to send one to the Commanding-officer of the regiment, to acquaint him with the reason of his halting; upon which he should halt the regiment as soon as they come in sight of the van-guard; and when it marches again, the regiment is to do so too.

The reason for the van-guard halting at some distance from a wood or village, till it is reconnoitred, is for fear of an ambuscade; for should they march up too near, before it is viewed, they might be drawn too far into the snare to be able to extricate themselves, and, by that means, draw the regiment into the same misfortune; whereas, by halting at some distance, that danger is avoided; at least so far, that they cannot surprize you by falling upon you unprepared; which is all that can be expected from an Officer.

The same reason holds good for the regiment's halting, when the van-guard does.

When the van-guard discovers any body of men, it is to halt, and the Officer is to send back immediately and acquaint the Commanding-officer with it, and to know what particular commands he has for him: and when he discovers any thing further, he is to do the same, whether it relates to their numbers, quality, (as horse or foot) movement, and disposition, that he may take his measures accordingly.

Thus I have given as full an account of the duty of a van guard as the nature of the thing will admit of, or that general rules can direct.

General Instructions to a Rear-guard.

[*This is copied from BLAND's Discipline.*]

THE chief instructions of a rear-guard is to take up all the soldiers who shall fall behind the regiment, and march them prisoners, in order to their being punished for leaving it; which but too many will do, without a great deal of care, in order to plunder or marode.

This precaution is therefore absolutely necessary, without which a great many men may be lost, and the country suffer extremely by being left to the discretion of those gentlemen.

The Officer commanding the rear-guard must therefore be very diligent in examining every place in which the soldiers can hide themselves, to prevent these disorders.

As the rear-guard is not to be at any great distance from the regiment, it will likewise prove a security, in preventing their being fallen upon in the rear, before they have notice to prepare for their defence; for the moment that any troops appear in the rear, the Officer of that guard must send and acquaint the Commanding-officer with it, that he may have time to make a disposition suitable to the occasion; to gain which, the Officer of the rear-guard is to oppose them in the best manner he can: but if the superiority of the enemy obliges him to give way before he can receive further orders from the Commanding-officer, he must endeavour to join
the

the regiment by a slow and regular retreat, in making a stand at every spot of ground that can be disputed. If he finds it impracticable for him to join the regiment, by his retreat being cut off, he must endeavour to gain the nearest place of security, whether inclosures, woods, hollow-way, morasses, villages, or towns, in order to save himself and party; but this should not be attempted while there are any hopes left of his putting a stop to the enemy, or his joining the regiment, since it will be weakened by his going off.

Of AMBUSCADES.

“ **A**MBUSCADES are snares set for the enemy, either to surprize them when marching without precaution, or by posting yourself advantageously, and drawing them there, by different stratagems, to attack them by superior force.

“ An active and vigilant General oftener employs stratagem than open force in war; and, by multiplying small advantages, procures, at length, a decisive one. Ambuscades are the surest means of procuring these small successes: they are of two kinds; great and small. It is very seldom the first kind can be practised against an able, cautious General: they may even be extremely dangerous, if discovered by the enemy; and therefore, though we speak of the manner of employing them successfully, we insist less on the necessity of them than of small ambuscades, which are frequently employed, and with little risk. These small ambuscades have different objects in view: they serve to carry off Magistrates or Hostages for the payment of contributions; Merchants who transport provisions to the enemy, &c.

“ A Partizan may also form an ambuscade when he is well assured, by good spies, of the day and road one of the enemy's convoys is to pass; whether with young horses to remount the cavalry, recruits, provisions, or ammunition, and that the escort is weaker than his party. The advice he receives from spies or friends, who give him intelligence, gives him often the facility of taking, by an ambuscade, one of the enemy's Generals, detached to reconnoitre some particular place, to be cured of his wounds, to receive some person of distinction, or otherwise.

“ When you have a spy intriguing enough to be instructed, and to give advice of the day and road the enemy are to go a foraging, an ambuscade may be formed near the road to carry off some of the horses or foragers: you may also lie in ambuscade within the chain of forage, and fall on the foragers when dispersed; but you must observe to plant your ambuscade, in both these cases, in a place distant from the enemy's troops, who form the chain; that is to say, behind the center of the foragers, and have sure retreat as soon as you have struck your stroke.

“ You may also plant small parties of light-troops in ambuscade in different places, without the chain of escorte; who, as soon as the foragers disband, give the alarm at the different posts; so that the enemy, not knowing on what side the real attack is, are obliged to re-assemble the escorte; and, as much time is lost in this way, night comes on before the foraging is completed, and the cavalry are fatigued, weakened, and insensibly destroyed. Ambuscades may also be placed to carry off the men or equipages who remain behind when the army disperses to go to quarters, or when the troops, which are to compose it, are assembling in the spring.

“ Ambuscades

“ Ambuscades are drest to carry off prisoners or inhabitants of the country, in order to gain intelligence. In this case, the prisoners ought not to be allowed to remain or talk together, lest they concert some false intelligence to deceive you.

“ In short, ambuscades may be employed to carry off couriers, or small convoys of the enemy, who pass between their army and their great towns: but in all these cases the parties who form them must be attended by good guides, who know all the bridges, rivulets, fords, passes, marshes, footpaths through woods or over mountains, that they may retire through roads unknown to the enemy.

“ It is not necessary that these kind of ambuscades should be composed of greater numbers than the escorts of the enemy, especially if these escorts must march through defiles.

“ If you form an ambuscade, where the safety of your retreat does not depend on your numbers, but entirely on their address and celerity, it should be composed of light cavalry, and of no more than are judged necessary to defeat that part of the enemy's corps against whom they are intended.

“ When your retreat is short, but through a rough covered road, the ambuscades should consist of more infantry than cavalry; but if the retreat is to be long, and by a broad open road, you must have no more infantry than what the half of your cavalry can carry behind them; while the other half, having nothing to embarrass them, form the front or rear-guard, and make head against the enemy. If you would disquiet and harass the enemy by small but frequent ambuscades, you must, from time to time, form a great ambuscade, to over-awe the enemy, and prevent their sending out detachments against your small parties.

L. 4

“ Ambuscades

" Ambuscades should march with great secrecy, and generally in the night time; they ought never to carry dogs with them, because they bark; nor mares with stone-horses, because of their neighing; they ought to take as few servants with them as possible; and strictly forbid them, or the party, to fire at game, if it should spring.

" They should endeavour to enter the place of ambush, so as to leave no trace behind them; and for this purpose they may turn the shoes of the horses of the rear-guard, or throw down their cloaks for the rest to walk along.

" They should not arrive at the place of ambush long before they expect the enemy, because accidents may happen to discover them; or their men, if fatigued, may fall asleep.

" It is needless to mention the places fit for parties to lay in ambush; every place is proper; a hollow way, a small wood, a dry ditch, the grotto of a mountain, a garden, a court-yard, a field of corn, a thick hedge; in short, every place covered by art or nature. It is the person that commands who must chuse the spot where he is not exposed to be discovered, and at hand to carry off his intended prize.

" Great ambuscades have so immediate a connection with marches, surprizes of armies, and battles, that, to have a just notion of the manner of employing them with some hopes of success, it is necessary to combine what will be said hereafter on these three subjects.

" The object of great ambuscades is to carry off a corps of the enemy left to their own strength; to surprize a convoy, or the equipages of the army; the attack of an army on march; the carrying off a part of a garrison; or taking a town by escalade.

" Great ambuscades are formed in woods or valleys, and care taken to place small parties in ambush
all

all round, or on the neighbouring eminences, to stop and arrest hunters, travellers, or other passengers, who might discover your main body.

“ Great ambuscades may also be formed in a village or town, whose inhabitants favour you ; where, for fear of being betrayed by some spy, you leave centinels all round, publishing a strict order, on pain of death, not to pass beyond your centinels. On a steeple, or the highest place, there you appoint an Officer for centinel, who, with good glasses, discovers the approach of the enemy, their numbers, and the road they keep ; and informs you of these particulars, that you may have your troops in order of battle in the streets : but if the Officer on the steeple informs you that the enemy is superior, and that you have not time to retire, you must draw up your troops in an opposite street, or in a church, placing only a few of your men, disguised and dressed like townsmen, in the street through which the enemy are to march, to try to prevent any inhabitant informing them. This sort of precaution supposes you have taken all others proper for your defence ; for if the enemy has the least experience, he will not enter the village till he has searched and examined it.

“ Plains covered with corn or brush-wood are very commodious for placing infantry in ambuscade, because from thence you can see at some distance the number of the enemy, and the manner in which they approach ; you can march out in order of battle to attack them ; or, if you find them superior, you have a free retreat on all sides.

“ When you know the enemy’s army is to march through a country which produces little water, especially if the season is hot, you may, if the ground permits it, dress a strong ambuscade near some fountain or rivulet by the road. The success in this case is the more certain, because the soldiers, fatigued with
the

the march, never fail to disband, each trying to be the first to quench his thirst before the water is troubled by the rest ; and as the current of the water has dug a course for itself, and has formed a hollow way where the corps are obliged to defile, this renders it the more easy to attack one part of them, before or after they passed, with great advantage.

“ If it is necessary to keep in ambuscade more than one day, it is supposed they have brought provisions with them, and they must chuse a place where there is water ; lest, if at a distance, the soldiers are discovered going to fetch it.

“ The troops in ambuscade must be placed without confusion, so as to be able to make their fall in order.

“ As soon as they have arrived at the place where they are to form the ambuscade, the Commanding-officer of each troop must review them : if any soldier, servant, or others are missing, he must immediately inform the Commander in Chief ; who ought, in that case, to retire with the party.

“ He must place his centinels where they can see farthest on all sides : but, that they may not themselves be perceived at a distance, by the colour of their regimentals, or the shining of their arms, the centinels ought to place their firelocks on the ground, and lay themselves amongst the leaves or bushes on the eminence where they are placed ; for, from the summit of a little hill or rising ground, a man sees more than a mile : if there is no rising ground, they can place the centinels towards the top of thick bushy trees, behind branches, or cover them by some small brush-wood they may have carried with them for the purpose.

“ If the centinels’ post is so far from the ambuscade that they cannot be heard, or come, or send another with their intelligence without the risk of being perceived

ceived by the enemy, in walking over some open field betwixt the ambuscade and the first or farthest off centinels, other centinels must be placed at smaller distances, under the cover of some hollow way, rock, or bush, that the intelligence may pass by word of mouth from one to the other.

“ But, lest these advices should not be clear, or to the purpose, and may throw you into confusion, these centinels should be Officers, Serjeants, or intelligent Corporals. This is particularly necessary with regard to the sentinel the most advanced on each side ; that is to say, he who has the farthest view.

“ It is necessary to have, on the right, the center, and left of the ambuscade, three small parties of cavalry, who, on the first advice from the centinels, are ready to ride after and arrest deserters, or peasants, who may discover your ambuscade.

“ If you know the road a detachment of the enemy intends to take, and that this march is through your country, place at the side opposite to your centinels some flocks or herds of cattle scattered along the hills, within sight of your ambuscade ; the desire of carrying them off will make the enemy disband, or at least weaken themselves by sending parties to carry them off. Instead of shepherds, place soldiers disguised to tend these flocks ; who, seeing the enemy advance, shall seem to retire with their flocks ; and, when the enemy have got very near, these soldiers shall make their escape, the best way they can, on horses given them for that purpose.

“ You may also draw the enemy into your ambuscade, by bribing their guides ; who, in concert with you, may propose a road where you shall be in ambush ; or may draw them there by giving false advice of the force of your party, or of your project. They may also be drawn into an ambuscade, by detaching a party to carry off cattle, or by making
some

some prisoners near the enemy: in such a case, this party must be sent out before any of the soldiers who compose it can suspect your design; so that if any one should desert, he can never inform the enemy of your intended enterprize; the Officers of the party must alone be informed of your intentions, and you must mention the exact hour at which they shall begin to throw themselves, lest the enemy following them should arrive at the place of ambuscade before you are posted.

“ But this party must not retire so near the ambuscade that the enemy’s patrols may discover it before their main body is engaged in it. The centinels placed near the road, by which the enemy march, who are pursuing your small party, shall retire before they are discovered, and the party shall continue their feigned flight, till they are got considerably beyond the ambuscade, to oblige the enemy to advance the farther; for the troops which compose the ambuscade ought not to begin to charge the enemy till their main body is opposite to your front, in order to attack their flanks, that the action may be complete and less dangerous.

“ To prevent your ambuscade being discovered too soon, you must caution your men to remain quiet and concealed till they get a certain signal, even though they should hear some shots fired by their troops in ambuscade, which may happen either by some firelocks going off by accident, or by some one firing at game which may spring.

“ The signal may be made by planting a standard on some eminence within sight of your troops, by sounding a charge with several trumpets or drums united, or some other warlike sound different from what the enemy use on their march, and which may be easily distinguished by your own troops. You may also place some straw, so as to be seen by all your
your

your troops, and, by setting fire to it, give the signal for the attack ; or by firing a certain number of shots, or throwing one or more sky rockets from an eminence, which may be seen by the whole. But in all these cases, the persons destined to give the signals must be people of intelligence, who give them exactly at the proper time, when the enemy are thoroughly engaged in your ambuscade.

“ When the troops of your ambuscade are greatly superior in number to those of the enemy whom you expect, divide them in two corps, which you may place at a greater or smaller distance from each other, in proportion to the breadth of the road or the ground the enemy may occupy from his vanguard to his rear-guard ; so that these two corps may fall at once from their ambuscade, and charge the enemy when just between the two.

“ Even if the troops are not numerous enough to be divided in two equal bodies, each of which are superior in number to the enemy, the defeat will still be the greater, if you charge their vanguard with their main body, and their rear-guard with a detachment ; but if the nature of the ground makes it easy for the ambuscade to attack the whole flank of the enemy's troops when defiling, it will be needless to divide the troops, it being more advantageous to charge them in flank.

“ If the enemy have in the rear a considerable party at hand, to sustain their rear-guard as soon as engaged, it is necessary to preserve a detachment of your troops, in order to oppose this party, in case they should advance to charge your troops who have attacked the enemy's rear.

“ When the ground (because of its inequality, it being covered with woods, or any other obstacle) prevents your seeing whether the enemy have in their rear such a party as is just mentioned ; in such a case, you

you must have the precaution to keep in ambuscade a small corps de reserve ; and your troops the farthest advanced in the ambuscade, must use the same precautions, if the front of the enemy's main body is preceded by a detachment ; without which, there would be great danger that this detachment, by wheeling to right or left, might take your troops in flank, when engaged by the enemy's main body.

“ In an ambuscade, the best marksmen should be placed in the front line, and desired to fire at those whom they can distinguish to be Officers ; for small resistance can be expected from troops surprized and thrown into confusion and disorder by an unexpected attack, if the loss of their Officers is added to it. The grenadier Officers, or such as carry fuzees, should have the same orders.

“ If the Officers who have been placed as sentinels report that they have discovered a more considerable body of the enemy than you expected, and more than you are able to defeat, let the Commanding-officer repair to that post ; and if by the help of good glasses he is convinced of the truth of the report, he ought to hasten his retreat ; for it is then to be presumed, that the enemy, informed of your design, comes with a strong detachment to surprize you in your ambuscade.

“ If the enemy have a superior body of troops near you, and you have reason to believe your ambuscade has been discovered, either by any of your people deserting, or that your march has been seen by any of the enemy's parties, who will discover it to their camp or garrisons ; in any of these cases you ought also immediately to form your retreat.

“ If, in spite of retiring with all promptitude, you shall be overtaken and attacked by the enemy with superior numbers, you must then take such necessary precautions as prudence requires, to assure your retreat ;

treat; or, if you are near enough to hope for succours, make a vigorous and gallant defence till they shall arrive.

“ If you have made any detachments who are in ambush at a certain distance, that they may not be abandoned and lost, you should immediately send five or six horsemen, who should take the most favourable road, and inform them of your retreat; having taken care to mark to these Officers with the detachments, the route they are to pursue; either to join you, or form their own retreat.

“ If you want to draw a part of the troops of one of the enemy's garrisons into an ambuscade, you should conceal beyond your ambuscade, and as near the garrison as possible, a small party of cavalry, who must endeavour to carry off the herds of cattle, flocks of sheep, or Officer's horses belonging to the place, which come out to feed or water in the morning; or, in the evening, try to carry off the Governor, the Officers, principal citizens, or ladies, who then come out to take the air.

“ In this last sort of expedition, you should wait for a fair or a holiday, when many walk out; because the more people of distinction you can surprize, the more will their friends and relations endeavour to prevail with the Governor, and engage him to send out a detachment against your party, which ought not to retire precipitately, lest the enemy should abandon the pursuit; but draw them on by degrees towards the ambuscade.

“ You ought not to place the main body of your ambuscade too near the town, in order to render the retreat of the enemy's detachment more difficult after you have put them in disorder.

“ You may also, if the ground allows of it, place in ambuscade a corps of cavalry, a little beyond the principal ambuscade, towards the town, to cut off
the

the enemy's retreat when defeated. We suppose, however, that these two ambuscades are not so far distant from each other, but that the principal one, which is the farthest from the town, can easily come to the other's assistance, in case they have by any accident been discovered and are attacked by the enemy.

" If the environs of a garrison are so entirely open that it is not possible to place a proper number of troops in ambuscade, the cavalry, in that case, may serve to conceal the infantry.

" If you have plenty of troops, and have reason to believe the Commandant of the town or post is weak enough, or so ill advised as to allow himself to send out so great a number of troops on a sally, as to leave his garrison unprovided, you may place an ambuscade on the opposite side of the town, provided with the necessaries for a surprize-escalade, or by applying the petard, who shall make their attack when the enemy are at some distance in pursuit of your other party.

" The same stratagem may be employed against a town where there are no regular troops, and whose unexperienced inhabitants are easily deceived by all the common stratagems of war.

" Before you try a great ambuscade, it is very proper to have often formed small ones, or to have made excursions into the country with small parties; so that the Governor or Commandant of the post being accustomed to believe you have but a few troops, is the more easily determined to detach a part of his garrison.

" If you want to draw the enemy's army, or a great part of it, into an ambuscade, you must march with your army towards the enemy, so long as you are not afraid of being discovered by their parties, or grand advanced guards: there you must halt with

all

all possible silence, and detach a good part of your cavalry; which, without halting, shall charge that flank of the enemy nearest your ambuscade; the first charge being over, without giving the enemy time to attack them with too many troops, they must retire to their main body; so that, if the enemy shall inconsiderately pursue them, they fall into the ambuscade.

“ Having given our ideas on this subject, we shall end it with observing, that, with the quantity of light troops now in use, and who are continually patrolling the country, it is very difficult to surprize an enemy with a great ambuscade; the small ones only can succeed, and such particularly as are conducted by an able Partisan, who has good intelligence, and who understands the *petit guerre*.”

Attack of the Covert-way, Sword in Hand.

“ **W**HEN a town is not strongly garrisoned, the attack may be made as follows:

“ The third parallel, in this case, should be made at least as forward as the mid-way of the glacis, having its parapet made step fashion, that the troops designed for the attack may pass easily over it, without any confusion; a great quantity of fascines, gabions, and other materials, must be got ready and placed at the back of this parallel; a strong party of grenadiers is ordered, and placed in this parallel, five or six deep, and the workmen behind them, on the reverse of the parallel, having their tools and materials by them: moreover, all the adjacent parts of the trenches must be well furnished with troops to support the grenadiers, if there is occasion, and fire wherever the enemy appears. The grenadiers must be provided with hatchets to cut the pallisades, in case the guns should not have broke them.

M

“ Before

“ Before the attack is made, the guns and mortars are to fire briskly for some time, at all the defences of and into the covert-way, to drive the besieged from thence, to break the pallisades, if possible, and plough the ridge of the glacis in such a manner as the troops may enter the covert-way without much difficulty; then the guns cease in order to cool: when this is done, the signal is given for the attack; upon which all the troops begin to move together, and, passing quickly over the parapet of the parallel, march directly to the covert-way, which they enter either through the sally-ports or passages made by the guns; or else the grenadiers cut down the pallisades with their hatchets; and, being entered, charge the enemy so vigorously as to oblige them to retire: then the engineers set the workmen about making a lodgment on the ridge of the glacis, opposite to that part of the covert-way which the besieged have abandoned.

“ These lodgments are made with gabions and fascines, in the same manner as the saps; and traverses are made every where to prevent the enfilades. The troops keep behind the workmen, and kneel down till the lodgment is so far advanced, that they may retire into it. Whilst this is doing, the batteries fire continually upon all the defences of the covert-way, either to silence or abate the fire of the enemy, as much as possible, and to oblige them to think more of their own safety, than opposing the besiegers.

“ If the besieged should return to the charge, as probably they will, and overthrow the work and maintain their ground, nothing but a superior force can make the besiegers masters of the place.

“ When the besieged find that they cannot possibly hold out any longer, they will set fire to their mines and retire; upon which workmen are immediately sent

sent to make a lodgment in their ruins, which is afterwards joined to the rest of the trenches.

“ This was the manner of attacking the covert-way formerly ; but since M. *Vauban*, by great experience and knowledge, has brought the art of attack and defence to so great a perfection as it is now, the covert-way has very seldom been taken sword in hand. His chief study always was to preserve the troops as much as possible, and never to expose them to any danger, without the utmost necessity.

“ However, when a garrison is but weak, and the army of the besiegers very strong, the guns of the besieged may be silenced, and the palisadoes torn to pieces by the batteries a ricochet. In such a case the covert-way may be attacked with open force, sword in hand, and that without much danger ; but if the garrison is strong, and commanded by a Governor who knows his business, it would be imprudent to make such an attack ; for it would prove one of the most bloody actions of the whole siege.”

The taking a Place by Escalade.

“ THE manner of taking a place by escalade, is much the same as that of surprising it by any other stratagem ; the only difference is, in passing the ditch and mounting the rampart by means of ladders. The scaling-ladders used upon these occasions, are of various sorts : some are of ropes, and some of wood ; some are made of several joints, so as, when put together, to make a ladder of any length ; which, in my opinion, are the best sort ; for the height of the walls are seldom known till you come upon the spot ; and therefore no proper length can be given to the ladders before-hand. There is another sort used here in *England*, much of the same make as

the common ladder, only steps turn about wooden pegs, so that the poles may be brought near each other, or shut like a parallel ruler. This ladder is very convenient for carriage; but as they are of a certain length they are not so useful as those with joints.

“ Being arrived before the place in the night, the first thing to be considered is, where and in what manner to pass the ditch. When it is dry and deep, there needs no other consideration than how to get into it; if it is muddy, boards, hurdles, or fascines, are to be thrown in; but if it is full of water, the passage is like to be troublesome; but it often happens that a Governor, because the town seems to be in no immediate danger of surprize, grows careless in his duty, and negligent in military discipline, and by that very means may be more easily surprized.

“ When a river passes by or through a town, a great number of boats must be provided in as private a manner as is possible, and brought in the dark, so as to be ready to carry the troops over, in the middle of the night or early in the morning, about an hour before day.

“ But if there is a deep wet ditch which has no communication with any river, small boats made of tin should be provided, each to hold one man only. Sometimes baskets covered with skins or oiled cloth, have been used on such occasions. These kind of boats being very light, are easily carried by the detachment; and when the first have passed the ditch, they push the boats back again for others to get over, and so till all are passed.

“ Supposing then the troops prepared to pass the ditch, by some means or other a party must first be placed on the counterscarpe opposite to the landing-place, ready to fire at the garrison, in case they have

taken the alarm, and come to oppose their mounting the rampart. If the ditch is dry, the ladders are fixed in some place farthest distant from any centry ; and as soon as they are got upon the rampart, they put themselves in order, to be ready to receive the enemy, if they should appear. Then the Commanding-officer, or some trusty man, who speaks the language of the garrison, advances some distance before the rest, towards the gate : if he meets with a centry he goes up to him, under some pretence or other, as if he belonged to the garrison ; and if the centry suffers himself to be thus surprised, claps a pistol to his breast, to keep him quiet : but should the centry, knowing his duty, offer to keep him at a distance, he must endeavour to kill him with as little noise as is possible, and then advance quickly with the detachment towards the gate, and either surprise or kill all who opposes them. Immediately upon this they fall to work, break open the gate, let in the rest of the party, and then proceed in the manner described before.

“ If the ditch is wet, the rampart high, and has a revetement, it will be a hard matter to surprise the town that way ; but if there is no revetement, the troops may hide themselves along the out-side slope of the rampart, till all are over, and then proceed as before.”

R E M A R K S.

“ IN the late war, *Keiserslautern* was surprised by the *French* in the following manner. A *German* deserter told the *French* Commander, that if he would send a party with him, he would engage to surprise the place ; accordingly a detachment was sent, which marched through the woods, till within half a league

of the place, where they stopped till it was dark, and provided themselves with as many sheep and horse-racks as they could get, to serve them for ladders. The ditch was dry and the wall low. In the dusk of the evening they approached the town, got into the ditch, and fixed their ladders : four hundred grenadiers, provided with hatchets, mounted the rampart, with the German at their head : as soon as they were got up, he advanced, at some distance before the rest, to the centry ; told him he went the round, that his light was out, and desired him to strike a light for him : the centry, not suspecting any thing, went to strike a light, and, whilst he was about it, the other gave him a blow with an iron bar, which he had ready for that purpose, by which he threw him into the ditch : the grenadiers upon this immediately advanced to the gate, surprised the guard and opened it. The garrison finding how things went, withdrew into the castle. When the inhabitants had ransomed the town from plunder, the *French* retired, as they could not keep it for want of the castle.

“ In the year 1676, *Loo*, a town on the river *Dender*, belonging then to the *Spaniards*, was surprised by the *French* : the ditch was wet, and the rampart without a revetement ; half the detachment passed the ditch in small baskets covered with oil cloths, while the other half stood ready to fire upon those who should oppose their passage ; then followed the rest in the same boats, and took the place.”

Attack of a BARRACK.

TRYAL is to be made to take it by escalade, by passing the ditch and mounting over the wall with ladders.

The troops, by a stolen and quick march, the better to facilitate their intended surprize, being unsuspectedly

suspectedly arrived before the barrack in the night, the first thing to be considered is, where, and in what manner to pass the ditch, and escalate the wall; when, their guards and centinels, from a sense of being secure, are negligent of their duty, may be easily surprised by a sudden and vigorous attack. But, on the other hand, let us suppose the enemy to have taken an alarm, and are prepared for the attack. In that case, the best marksmen should be ordered to fire singly into the loop-holes, and to the top of the wall: hand grenades and a quantity of dry fascines dipped in rosin should also be thrown over it. The marksmen should then immediately run up and endeavour to stop the loop-holes, while the rest of the party escalate the wall. This being effected, they are to form in one body and charge the enemy, or break open the gate. If there should be any houses or eminences which command the barracks, they must be possessed as soon as possible, in order to fire from them on the enemy, whenever they present themselves.

Defence of a BARRACK.

I Suppose the barrack encompassed by a wall, that will serve you for a parapet: round the out-side of this a ditch should at all hazards be dug, with the utmost expedition, the earth of it thrown over the wall, and well rammed down, to form part of a banquette, which the barrack bedsteads, by being placed upon it, will complete.

Upon every bedstead have a quantity of stones, each stone to be of such a weight that a man can but just throw it over the wall, in case the enemy should attempt to take shelter under it,

Opposite every bedstead, where the wall is too high to fire over, you must break two holes, by

way of loop-holes, through the wall, at three feet asunder; each loop-hole is to be eight inches long, two inches wide within, and six without, if the thickness of the wall will allow of it.

To fortify the gate, in order to fire upon the enemy, raise a semi-circular intrenchment within side of the gate, with a small ditch; the earth of which, together with boughs of trees and spare lumber in the barracks, will form a parapet, which must be six feet high.

If there are any houses which command the barrack yard, the doors and lower windows of them must be barricaded; and men posted at the upper windows to fire upon the enemy. If men cannot be spared for this purpose, such houses must be pulled down.

Post your men in such a manner in the night, as to prevent an escalade; and provide sticks, pitch-forks, &c. to over-set the ladders, in case the enemy should attempt it.

Your next consideration must be the number of men that will be in the barrack, what provisions you can lay in, what quantity and quality, barrels of beer, or water, &c. If you should have a stream of water in your barrack-yard, it is likely the enemy would find means to cut it off; therefore, nothing should be left to chance. No person should be suffered to remain in the barrack, except such as are able to oppose the enemy, and are acquainted with the use of fire-arms; lest you may have too many mouths for your provision.



Of Spies and Guides.

[*This is copied from M. SAXE's Reveries, concerning the Art of War.*]

ONE cannot bestow too much attention in the procuring of spies and guides; M. de Monticuculli says, that they serve as eyes to the head, and they are equally as essential to a Commander; which observation of his is certainly very just; money, therefore, should never be wanting upon a proper occasion; for the acquisition of such as are good, is cheap at any price. They are to be taken out of the country in which the war is carried on, selecting those only who are active and intelligent, and dispersing them every where amongst the General Officers of the enemy; amongst his sutlers; and, above all, amongst the purveyors of provisions; because their stores, magazines, and other preparations, furnish the best intelligence concerning his real design.

The spies are not to know one another; and are to consist of various ranks or orders; some to associate with the foldiers, others to follow the army, under the disguise of pedlars; but it is necessary that all of them should be admitted to the knowledge of some one belonging to the first order of their fraternity, from whom they may occasionally receive any thing that is to be conveyed to the General who pays them: this charge must be committed to one who is both faithful and ingenious, obliging him to render an account of himself every day, and guarding as much as possible against his being corrupted.

I shall not insist any longer upon this subject, which, upon the whole, is a detail that depends upon a great variety of circumstances, from which a General, by his prudence and intrigues, will be able to reap great advantage.

Of

Of SIGNS.

[This is copied from M. SAXE's Reveries, concerning the Art of War.]

THERE are certain signs in war, which it is necessary to study, and by which you may form judgments with a kind of certainty. The knowledge you have of the enemy, and of his customs, will contribute a great deal to this. But there are some, at the same time, which are common to all nations.

In a siege, for example, when, as the evening approaches, you discover toward the horizon, and upon the eminences, bodies of men assembled together and unemployed with their front facing the town, you may take it for granted, that preparations are making for a considerable attack; because, upon such occasions, every different corps usually furnishes its proportion of men; by which means the assault is made known to the whole army; and all those who are unengaged, and off duty, resort to the high grounds towards the close of the day, in order to observe it from thence at their ease.

When your encampment is near that of the enemy, and you here much firing in it, you may expect an engagement the day following, because the men are discharging and cleaning their arms.

When there is any great motion in the enemy's army it may be discerned by the clouds of dust raised by it; which is, at the same time, a certain indication of something extraordinary being in agitation. The dust occasioned by foraging-parties is not the same as that of columns in march; but then

it

it is necessary that you should be able to distinguish the difference.

You may judge likewise which way the enemy directs his course, by the brightness of the arms when the sun shines upon them: if its rays are perpendicular, he marches towards you; if they are varied and unfrequent, he retreats; if they dart from the right to the left, he is moving towards the left; and if, on the contrary, from the left to the right, his march is to the right: if there is a great quantity of dust in his camp, which appears to be general, and is not raised by foraging parties, he is sending off his sutlers and baggage, and you may be assured that he will march himself presently after. This discovery furnishes you with an opportunity of making your dispositions to attack him on his march; because you ought to know how far it is practicable for him to come to you, as also whether that is his intention, and what way is most probable he will march; of which you are to judge from his position, his magazines, his preparations, the situation, and, in short, from his conduct in general. It is sometimes usual for him to erect his ovens upon the right or left of his army: in which case, if you happen to be covered by a small river, and, in that situation, can discover the time of his baking any considerable quantity of bread, you can make some movement towards the side which is remote from his ovens, in order to amuse him; after which you may suddenly return again, and send 10 or 12,000 men to attack them, supporting that detachment with your whole army, as fast as it arrives. This enterprize must be executed with so much expedition as not to allow him time to prevent its success, because you will have the advantage of some hours before your first movement can arrive at his knowledge, exclusive of what more time may elapse between his intelligence

intelligence and the confirmation of it; for which he will undoubtedly wait, before he puts his army in motion; so that, in all probability, he may receive information of the attack of his magazine, before he has even given orders for his march.

There are an infinite number of such stratagems in war, which a skilful Commander may put in practice with little, or even no risk, and whose consequences are equally as beneficial as those which attend a complete victory, by obliging the enemy either to attack him with a disadvantage, or shamefully to retreat from him, with an army even superior in strength.

A few Observations to be made before the Ground of Encampment is marked out.

THE greatest precaution must be taken, that the situation is strong; that there is plenty of forage, water, &c. A particular attention must be had as to the salubrity of the ground, and that it is not commanded by any eminence.

Camp for a Battalion of Foot, nine Companies, with two Field Pieces.

The front, containing one hundred and seventy yards, is divided as follows:

		Yards
For pitching	8 double rows of tents at five	
	yards each — — —	40
	2 single rows at two yards and	
	half each — — —	5
The breadth of	Grand Street — — —	21
	8 lesser streets at thirteen yards	
	each	104
	Total front	170
	Battalion	

Situation of the Battalion Guns.

	Yards
From the side of the Serjeant's tent to the centre of the	
1st gun — —	4
2d gun — —	6
Left of next regiment — — — —	20
Interval 30 — — — —	30
Front and interval — — — —	200

N. B. The muzzles of the battalion guns, are in a line with the front of the Serjeants tents.

The rearmost of the Gunners tents, are in a line with the rear of the battalion tents.

The Subalterns of the artillery are in a line with the Subaltern of the battalion.

Depth 320 yards.

	Yards
From the front pole of the Officer's tent of quarter guard to the center of the bells of arms of ditto —	8
To the parade of quarter guard — — — —	4
To the 1st line of parade of battalion — — — —	50
To the center of the bells of arms — — — —	30
From the center of the bells of arms to front pole of Serjeants' tents }	4
For pitching ten tents with their intervals at three yards each }	30
From the rear of battalion's tents to the front of Subalterns }	20
From front of { Subalterns to Captains 24 Captains the Field Officers 24 Field Officers front Colonels 12 Colonels of Staff Officers 16 Staff Officers of 1 row of Batman's tents 18	
	<hr/> 240

				Yards
Brought over				240
Front row of bàtman's tents				
			First } Row pickets	2
			Sec ^d } for horses	12
			2d row bàtmans tents	2
			Front of grand sutler	14
			Kitchens	20
			Center } <i>Petit</i> Sutlers	5
			Front of } Bells of arms	10
			Center } Of rear guard	15
Total depth				320

The front poles of the quarter-guard tents are in a line with the poles of the center company, and in a line with the center of their bells of arms.

The bells of arms front the poles of Serjeants tents — — — — —

The colours and espantoons are planted, and drums placed in the center of the grand street in a line with the bells of arms.

Each company pitches twenty tents of ten in a row.

The Lieutenant-colonel's and Major's tents front the center of the second streets from right and left of the battalion.

The Colonel's tent is in the line of the grand street fronting the colours.

The Staff-officers front the center of the second street on right and left of the grand street.

The bàtman's tents front towards their horses; and the Grand Suttler's is in the rear of the Colonel's.

Inner diameter of the kitchens is sixteen feet, surrounded with a trench three feet broad, and the earth thrown inwards: the centers of the kitchens front the center of the streets of their company.

The front poles of the *petit* sutlers tents are in a line with the centers of the kitchens, allowing

ing to each *petit* futtler six yards in front and eight in depth, enclosed with a trench of a foot in breadth and the earth thrown inwards.

The rear guard front outwards; the front poles are in a line with the center of their bells of arms, and each six yards distance.

The parade of the rear-guard is four yards from their bells of arms.

N. B. This has no reference to Plan 9, which represents a small sketch of an encampment, and from which the enemy are supposed to be advanced.

Of Battalion Field-pieces and Horses.

EACH battalion encamps with two field-pieces. A Serjeant and twelve men of the battalion, who have been taught the artillery exercise, are to attend each gun in the field, on the march and in quarters, and are exempted from all other duties.

Six men will draw a light six pounder, in the field.

A three pounder requires but one horse.

A six pounder - - - two,

A twelve pounder - - three, and

A twenty-four pounder - six.

The light three, six, and twelve pounders are commonly charged with a quarter of the shot's weight, and the light twenty-four is loaded with five pounds of powder.

I shall now suppose an encampment formed of a number of battalions, and that it is necessary to make preparations for the attack. For this purpose, gabions, fascines, and pickets are to be brought in great abundance, and laid in front of the camp, with pick-axes, shovels, and spades in plenty, hooks and forks with long poles fixed to them, for placing
and

and settling the gabions; wheel-barrows; hand-baskets, mallets, and sand-bags in great numbers; likewise, mantlets, stuffed gabions, and saucissons. The cannon are also to be mounted, the mortars on their beds, and the necessaries for making the batteries and platforms in readiness.

[The three following Articles are copied from BLAND's Discipline.]

Relating to the Command of the Governor in his own Town, with the Respect and Obedience due to him from the troops which compose the Garrison.

ARTICLE I.

WHOEVER is Governor of a town, has the entire command of the troops which compose the garrison, though Officers of a superior rank to him in the army should be ordered in with them; for the town being committed to his charge, he is answerable to his master for it; and, consequently, cannot give up the command, without express orders from him, in due form, or from him to whom he shall delegate his power.

In the absence of the Governor, the command devolves on the Lieutenant-governor; and if the Town-major has a commission of Town-major Commandant (which is sometimes conferred on those abroad) the command falls to him in the absence of the Governor and Lieutenant-governor; otherwise it goes to the eldest Officer in the Garrison, whether he is of the horse, foot or dragoons, who is called, during the time, Commandant of the Garrison. This is the general rule; but as they may be obliged, on particular occasions, to throw a considerable

considerable body of troops into the garrison (either for the defence of it, or to annoy the enemy) and that a General Officer of a considerable rank may be ordered in with them, it is usual to give him a commission of Commandant of the Troops, in the body of which is particularly specified how far his power over them is to extend, to avoid all disputes that might happen betwixt him and the Governor about it; and though this may, in a great measure, lessen and divide the Governor's power, yet the outward marks of distinction are generally left with him; such as giving the parole, the administration of the civil affairs, keeping the keys of the town, &c. as also the signing of the capitulation, jointly with the Commander of the Troops, in case of a surrender.

The reason for appointing a Commandant of the Troops, I suppose, may arise from the Governor's not being of a rank in the army sufficient to give him a due authority over them; or, that he may not be thought equal to the command; but, supposing him equal to it, both from his experience and ability, unless he is distinguished with titles of dignity, his orders will not be so readily executed as if he was; and though a commission of Governor creates him, in a manner, Captain-general in his own town, yet when Officers of an equal rank to him in the army are ordered into the garrison, it is a hard matter for him to keep up his command as it ought to be, or get them to obey him with the same deference as they would one of a superior rank; and if it proves so, when only those of an equal rank are commanded into the garrison, it will be much more difficult for him to exert his authority over those who are his superiors in the army, as well as shocking to them to be commanded by an inferior; the truth of which, with the detriment that arises from it to the service, is so well known in

N

France,

France, that when the case happens so there, and that they have no mind to supersede the Governor, they always appoint an Officer of rank and ability (in proportion to the number of men, which, upon occasion of danger, shall be ordered into the garrison) Commandant of the Troops; in which case, care is generally taken, that the person so appointed, be of such a rank in the army, that not only all disputes about command in relation to him, is out of the question; but, likewise, any contests of this kind, that may arise in the garrison, are terminated, and his decisions more readily submitted to, than if they came from one of an inferior character. I shall now proceed to the command of a Governor, when there is no Commandant of the troops appointed.

How far the Governor's power extends over the civil must be determined by the laws and constitutions of the country; however, all persons in the town, whether ecclesiastical or civil, are subject to his jurisdiction, as far as it relates to the order and preservation of the town; and whoever offends therein, though he may not have the power of punishing, yet he may secure their persons till they can be tried in a regular manner for the crimes they have committed.

His power over the military is very extensive; for all the Officers and soldiers in the Garrison are obliged to obey him, without controul.

He may order the troops under arms as often as he shall think proper, either to review them or upon any other account.

He may send out detachments or parties, without being obliged to give a reason to the Officers for it, or come to an explanation with them on that head; neither have they a power to demand it; but if they think themselves aggrieved, they may represent it to him

him in a respectful manner; that is, singly, and by way of request, but not in a riotous way, and in numbers; since that will be deemed mutiny, which, by the Articles of War, is death.

Neither Officer nor soldier must lie a night out of the Garrison, without the Governor's leave; but, that the Colonels, or those who command regiments, may have a proper authority over their own corps, a Governor seldom grants his leave of absence to either Officer or soldier, but at their request. A Governor who has a true notion of the service, will act according to this rule; and it appears to me reasonable that he should do so; otherwise, how can they answer for their regiments, if their Officers and soldiers have leave of absence given them without their knowledge? Besides, as the Colonels are supposed to have a thorough knowledge of those under their command, they must be proper judges, who ought, or who ought not, to have leave given them; and therefore will not importune the Governor but when it is reasonable they should have it; which will not only ease him of a great deal of trouble, but likewise prevent his being imposed upon, by their pretending they have business, when, perhaps, pleasure, or the love of idleness, is the chief motive which induces them to ask it: the truth of which cannot so easily be entered into by the Governor as the Colonels; who, in justice to their regiments, will limit the number they ask leave for, that the duty may not fall too hard on those who remain.

What is abovementioned, without entering into the deference due to Colonels, when it relates to those immediately under their command, is so equitable, that it is generally followed; but, however just this rule may appear, yet a Governor has an undoubted right to deviate from it when he shall think proper, by granting his leave of absence to either

Officer or soldier without the consent of their Colonels; and though particular regiments may suffer now and then by such a proceeding, yet that evil is of less consequence to the service, than what the limiting of the Governor's power might produce; viz. the loss of subordination; which is of such weight and consideration, that it is the very life and soul (if I may be allowed the expression) of discipline, without a due observance of which the service can never be carried on; for whosoever endeavours to weaken it, by making the Officers or soldiers independent of the principal persons who are placed over them, whether Governors or Generals, must do it, either through evil design or ignorance, since both produce the same effect, disorder and confusion; a state which soldiers may be easily brought into (from that natural love of independency, which reigns in all mankind) but not so soon remedied; for, when a licentious, independent humour has prevailed amongst troops, it must be time, infinite pains, and severity, to reduce them to their proper obedience; the want of which may prove as prejudicial to the state, as the want of troops; since the loss of subordination produces not only the neglect of orders, but, in a great measure, the power, or at least an imaginary one, to dispute them; the consequence of which is too well known to be further enlarged upon.

The practice of the army in this case, is, that when an Officer has business that may require his absence from the Garrison, he is to make his first application to his Colonel, and desire him to intercede with the Governor for leave. If the Colonel complies with the Officer's request, he should wait upon the Governor in his behalf; but, if the Colonel refuses the Officer, he may then, no doubt, apply to the Governor; though such a step should
not

not be taken without he is necessitated so to do, either from extraordinary business, or that he finds himself harshly used by his Colonel; since the doing of it is, in a manner, putting him at defiance, and therefore not to be rashly undertaken.

When any of the private men want leave, they are to apply to their Captains first, the Captains to the Colonel; and, if he agrees to it, he is to send their names by the Adjutant to the Town-major, that he may acquaint the Governor that they have his consent, and to desire he would be pleased to grant them his leave of absence.

When the soldiers have applied to their Captains, and are refused by them, they may then apply to their Colonels; but they ought not to do it till they have been with their Captains, for the same reason that an Officer ought not to apply to the Governor till he has been with his Colonel.

ARTICLE II.

ALL soldiers who have leave to go out of the garrison must have passports, signed by the Governor, specifying the regiment to which they belong, the place they are to go to, and the time they have leave to be absent; the particulars of which must be given in by the Adjutant to the Town-major. Whoever goes without one of these passports, or is found taking a contrary road to that which is expressed in it, will be looked upon as a deserter; and, when taken, tried accordingly. It is therefore the duty of the Officers on the port-guards to examine all soldiers who shall come into the town, and do not belong to the garrison: when they find any of them without a pass, or that they have taken a wrong route, or have any reason to suspect it forged, they are to send

them to the main-guard, in order to their being further examined by the Governor, or those whom he shall appoint for that purpose ; and if they are found to be deserters, they should be secured till they can be sent to their regiments to be tried as such.

When Officers on party meet any soldiers, they must examine their passports ; and if they have any reason to suspect them, they must take them prisoners, and deliver them over to the main-guard when they return to their garrison, and acquaint the Governor with it.

No regiment can hold a Court-martial, or punish any of their men, without first obtaining the Governor's leave, or the Commandant's, in his absence : however, it is customary, upon the first application which the Colonel makes of this kind to the Governor, to give him a discretionary power to hold regimental Courts-martial, as often as he shall have occasion, and to put the sentence in execution, provided the regiment is not to be under arms at the performing it ; because no Colonel can order his regiment under arms, either for exercise, punishing offenders, or otherwise, without having leave every time of the Governor ; therefore it is usual to punish the soldiers on the regimental parade, in the presence of the men who mount the guard in the morning, unless the sentence directs otherwise.

When the Colonel or Commanding-officer would have the regiment under arms for exercise, review, or to punish any of his men, he may send the Adjutant to the Town-major, that he may acquaint the Governor with it when he goes to receive the night-orders ; and, if granted, the Town-major is to give out in public orders, that such a regiment is to be under arms, &c. to morrow morning.

The ceremony of giving out in public orders, when regiments are to be under arms, has an appearance
as

as if it was only to keep up the authority of the Governor, and to shew his command over the troops in his garrison; and, indeed, I never heard any reason given for it, but that it was the custom: however, it cannot be doubted but that a better reason than custom can be given for it; but since it has not come to my knowledge, I beg leave to offer my opinion on that head.

Should a part of the garrison draw out in the morning, without the rest being apprised of it, they might imagine that it proceeded from some attempt of the enemy, who were going to surprize the town; and, consequently, occasion their beating to arms; therefore, to prevent these false alarms, which would not only fatigue the troops, but, by their being too often repeated, make them dilatory in repairing to their alarm-posts upon a real occasion, as also cause a bustle and disturbance in the town, it is therefore necessary that it should be given out in orders by the Town-major, the night before, when any of the troops are to be under arms, that all may know it: besides, the assembling of troops, without the Governor's leave, must put the town in the power of those Officers who command them; especially if we will suspect any ill intention or correspondence with the enemy; for, though it is to be presumed that Officers of their rank are above temptation, yet instances of the contrary may be given; and, in war particularly, we ought not to rely on what they will not do, but on what they cannot do.

ARTICLE III.

In case of an alarm, the Officers and soldiers who are not on guard are to repair, with their arms, immediately to their alarm-posts.

N 4

Upon

Upon these occasions the Colonel's company may be ordered to assemble where the colours are lodged, which is generally at the Colonel's quarters, to guard them from thence to the alarm-post of the regiment.

Sometimes all the Field-officer's companies are ordered to assemble there ; but, unless the garrison is very numerous, they will be of more service with the regiment ; one company being sufficient to guard them : and the Ensigns who are to carry the colours are to assemble there at the same time. The reason for the troops being ordered to their alarm-posts, may proceed from one of the three following causes.

First, Upon the appearance of the enemy before the town, or intelligence being brought that a body of their troops are marching towards it : therefore, to prevent a surprize, it will be proper to order the regiments to repair to their alarm-posts.

Secondly, Upon any considerable rising of the inhabitants, or tumult in the town, that the Governor may be able to disperse the mob, and bring the offenders to justice.

Thirdly, Upon a fire breaking out in the town, it is extremely necessary to have the troops at their alarm-posts ; for, by their being assembled, they may be sent, under the command of their Officers, to assist in the extinguishing of it, and to keep the streets open, that the engines may be brought to play ; as also to keep the mob from stealing the goods which may be saved from the flames. Besides, as the town may be set on fire by a stratagem of the enemy, they, by lodging a body of troops at some distance from the town, may endeavour to seize one of the gates, during the consternation ; which, by the assistance of the inhabitants, might be easily effected, were the precaution of shutting the gates and assembling the troops omitted.

But,

But, on whatever occasion the alarm may be given, when the troops are assembled, no Colonel must dismiss his regiment, though it should prove a false alarm, till he receives the Governor's or Commandant's orders for it.

Thus far I have endeavoured to shew the command which a Governor of a town has over the troops in it, and how the Officers and soldiers are to conduct themselves towards him on that head.

Of the Staff of the Army.

“THE staff properly exists only in the time of war; the Quarter-master-general may be reckoned the first person belonging to it: he works with the General on whatever regards the marches of the army; and the evening before they are to move, he gives to each General-officer, who is to conduct a column, a copy of what regards him; and to the General-officers of the day, a copy of the whole order of that day, that they may cause every thing to be executed with his order by the General. He also keeps a roll of the General-officers, and makes them be advertised when there is any thing new, which regards their tour to march. He marches to the new camp with the Major-general of the day, and distributes the ground which the Major-general has marked out to be occupied by the army; he makes the fourier mark the head-quarters, and the quarters of the other General-officers; he visits the avenues of the camp; reconnoiters the country round about, makes the inhabitants give him exact information; and, on the report he makes the General, he receives his orders for regulating the marches of the army, in the manner the General intends they should be executed. It is he who delivers to each
of

of the General-officers a copy of the order of battle ; and he signs and distributes all the orders for foraging, and commonly reconnoitres the quarters where the army can forage. In short, though he has no direct authority over the troops, as he is continually with the General, whose orders almost always pass through his hands, and as he necessarily possesses the secret of the movements of the army, this employment gives very great consideration to him who exercises it, and requires an intelligent Officer, well versed in the great parts of war ; he has commonly three or four assistants to ease him in his functions ; and they are commonly gratified, at the end of some campaigns, with a Colonel's rank. The Quarter-master-general, in a day of action, stays close by the General ; and, on every other day, he goes to receive the parole from the Major-general of the day : but, when necessarily employed, he sends one of his assistants to receive the parole, and fetch it to him.

“ The Adjutant-general makes the detail of the duty of the whole infantry of the army, with the Brigade-majors. He keeps an exact state of the brigade, of each regiment in particular, and of the companies of grenadiers, with a roll of the Colonels, Lieutenant-colonels, and Majors of the infantry. He is every day at the head-quarters to take the orders which he receives from the Major-general of the day ; he then distributes them at his own quarters to all the Majors of the brigade, from whom he demands the number of men they are to furnish for the duty of the army, and informs them of any detail which may concern them. In the morning, he is at the parade of the guards, and sees them defile : he may, if he has time, visit them at their posts, and always see that the piquets are in good order : he also accompanies and follows the General ; by whose
orders

orders he commands all the detachments of infantry, and sees them march off from their rendezvous, or leave this care to his assistants.

“ On marching days, he follows the Major-general of the day with the encampment, and distributes to a Major of each brigade the ground of the camp; he makes a daily report to the General, of the situation of all the posts of the infantry, placed for the safety of the army, and of any changes made in their posts. In a day of battle, the Adjutant-general sees the infantry drawn up, after which he places himself by the General, to receive any orders which may regard the body of which he has the detail. In a siege, he orders the number of workmen demanded; he counts them when they return from work, and signs the billets for their payments: he receives the guards of the trenches at their rendezvous, examines if they are in good condition, and also gives and signs all the orders for skirmishing parties. As he is charged with all the duty of the whole infantry, he has orderly men for that body; that is to say, a Serjeant and Corporal from each brigade of infantry in the line, to carry them the orders which he may have occasion to send from the General.

“ *N. B.* To avoid repetition, the duty of the Adjutants-general of the cavalry and dragoons, *mutatis mutandis*, is the same with the infantry.

“ In France, the Major of the oldest regiment of each brigade, is the Major of brigade; in England, Holland, and elsewhere, he is a particular Officer appointed for that purpose; and towards the end of the late war, the Prince of Orange gave them a Lieutenant-colonel's rank, that the Majors of the regiments of each brigade might receive the parole and orders from them.

“ The Majors of brigade go every day to receive the orders from the Adjutant-general; there they
writer

write exactly whatever is dictated to them; from thence they go and give the orders at the place appointed for that purpose, to the different Majors or Adjutants of the regiments which compose that brigade; regulate with them the number of men and Officers which each are to furnish for the duty of the army, taking care to keep an exact roster, that one may not report more than another, and each march in their tour: in short, the Major of Brigade is charged with the particular detail in his own brigade, in much the same way as the Adjutant-general is charged with the general detail of the army. The Major of Brigade sends every morning to the Adjutant-general an exact return, by battalion and company, of the men of his brigade missing at the retreat; or a report expressing that none are absent: he also mentions the Officers absent with or without leave.

“As all the orders pass through the hands of the Majors of Brigade, they have infinite occasions of making known their talents and exactness.”

Of Aids-de-camp.

“AIDES-DÉ-CAMP are Officers attached to the person of a General Officer, to carry his orders. This employment is of greater importance than is generally believed; it is, however, often intrusted to young men without experience, and often without capacity; but in some of the foreign services, they give great attention to this article.

“The Marechal *De Puységur*, says, in his *Art of War*, on the subject of Aides-de-camp, That in the time of the great Prince of *Condé* and Marechal *Turenne*, the employment of Aid-de-camp was always filled with Officers of character. The reason is, that in a battle, a moment may change the face of affairs; infomuch that tho’ an order sent by the General for an inferior

inferior Officer to act in such or such a manner, and which was properly given, with respect to the situation of the action at that moment, yet, before the Aide-de-camp arrives and delivers it, the actual state of the action may be so far changed, as that the order becomes improper. It is therefore necessary, that he who carries it, has comprehended the spirit in which the General meant it, and takes care not to deliver it in such a positive manner, as to oblige him who receives it to act up to the letter of the order, and not to leave him liberty to change it. The Marechal says, he saw a battle lost, because an Aide-de-camp had, upon a false representation of the local made to the General, been sent to him who commanded the right wing, to order him to change his ground; who, knowing the strength of it, tried to argue the matter, but to no purpose; the Aide-de-camp delivered the positive order, and the Commander was obliged to obey: the enemy immediately possessed themselves of his advantageous post, and by that means won the battle."

*Advice to a young Officer, Commandant of a Corps, with
a Scheme worthy of Attention.*

CONDUCT, on many occasions, is as necessary as courage: an Officer can never have too many virtues, too much knowledge, or experience. He should have affability to gain the affections of his corps; and, by the influence of example, occasion a perfect harmony to subsist among them: he must have sufficient address to acquire their good opinion and confidence; and resolution enough to support discipline, with unshaken firmness: but, on the other hand, if the young or unexperienced Officer inadvertently commits a fault, he, as his superior should reprimand him, in private, with calmness and solidity; which

which, in general, will have its proper effect; for the severity of an arrest, is a thing of so serious a nature as nothing but the necessity of the service will justify.

A good Commandant will exert himself in administering strict justice to every one with the greatest disinterestedness: for which purpose, when vacancies happen, his interest, as their patron and benefactor, should be used to promote the succession of all his Officers in rotation, except those whose incapacity or misconduct may render them unworthy of his favour: such he must, at all events, endeavour to get rid of, by obliging them to sell or retire on half-pay.

He ought to be well acquainted with the strength and detail of his corps, and thoroughly master of all *manœuvres* and principles of the military art. The despising of foes, the want of intelligence, and of reconnoitring and flanking parties, have been the sole cause of many a defeat, and often occasions a shameful, precipitate retreat, even from an inferior force.

The Commandant should have a particular attention to the arms, accoutrements, cloathing, and all other appointments of his corps; that the accounts are kept regular, complaints immediately redressed, the sick well attended, and particular care taken of them. He should never put his Captains to a superfluous expence for the ornaments of a soldier, but content himself with what is proper and has a military appearance; nor permit the Officer commanding in his absence to change the Officers uniform, or spare the stock purse to raise men to mend the corps. He should drum out, with infamy, by sentence of a court martial, such men who are of a dishonest, quarrelsome, or mutinous disposition; and give marks of his liberality to those who distinguish themselves in
time

time of danger; for rewards are as needful as punishments: by the one they are led on to glorious actions; by the other, they are deterred from committing base ones.

“When the corps is under arms, or where the good of the service is concerned, the Commandant ought to remember that he is answerable for the good order and discipline of it; and therefore should oblige every Officer to a strict performance of his duty; but in private conversation, politeness should succeed authority; and the Commandant, without danger, may subside in the gentleman.”

Scheme

Scheme for a Mess in Camp, for Dinner and Supper.

No. of Officers.	Rank.	Each per Day.		Total per Day.		E S T I M A T E.					
		£.	d.	£.	d.	£.	s.	d.			
1	Colonel	3	0	0	3	0	—	—	22	0	0
1	Lieut. Colonel	2	6	0	2	6	—	—	11	9	4
1	Major	2	0	0	2	0	—	—	15	0	0
6	Captains	1	6	0	9	0	—	—	13	0	0
10	Lieutenants	1	0	0	10	0	—	—	61	9	4
8	Ensigns	0	9	0	6	0	—	—			
1	Chaplain	1	3	0	1	3	Field Officers and Captains, 6 guineas each	56	14	0	0
1	Surgeon	1	0	0	1	0	Ten Lieutenants, at 4 s. 8 d. each	—	2	6	8
1	Adjutant	1	0	0	1	0	Eight Ensigns, at 3 s. 8 d.	—	1	9	4
1	Quarter Master	1	0	0	1	0	One Chaplain, at 6 s. 8 d.	—	0	6	8
							One Surgeon, at 4 s.	—	0	4	0
							One Adjutant, at 4 s.	—	0	4	0
							One Quarter Master, at 8 s. 8 d.	—	0	4	8
31	Total	1 16 9		Total 61 9 4							

By this scheme each Field-officer and Captain is to contribute six guineas, and each Subaltern and Staff-officer one day's pay each, towards the purchasing of a dining-tent, kitchen-tent, and also to enable a sutler to buy a cart and two horses, table-linen, kitchen-furniture, &c. Wine, punch, ale, cider, &c. being distinct articles, must be paid for by those only who chuse to call for them; and for each stranger's dinner, one Shilling is to be paid by the inviter.

No gentleman can have his dinner sent him from the mess, except in case of sickness, duty, or when under an arrest.

If this be disapproved of, upon a supposition that the sutler will be too great a gainer, a bill of his expences may be delivered by him, to any Officer accepting that trouble, who, with the consent of the rest, may appropriate the surplus to whatever purpose is most agreeable to the mess.

And if the sutler be a loser, such sum must be made good to him by the mess in general, as well as a gratuity to him for his fatigue and trouble.

Part of a Captain's Duty.

IT is the duty of every Officer, who wishes to succeed in his profession, to study, not only the commission he at present enjoys, but also those of a higher rank. When the Major is absent, the eldest Captain is to fill that post: he ought, therefore, to be well acquainted with the strength and detail of the corps, as it particularly falls on him: he should have a perfect knowledge of the exercise and all manœuvres: he is to draw up the battalion in order of battle, in the manner he is directed, and conduct it wherever he is ordered: he is to be mounted, with his sword drawn, at the head of the grenadiers, when the regiment is marching by files, companies, sub or grand divisions: when the battalion is prepared for
O
the

the attack, his post is then in the rear of the first right hand grand division.

The multiplicity of details which he is charged with, requires the utmost attention to keep them clear and free from confusion: he should be master of the attack and defence of fortified places, as sometimes a command of that nature may fall to him. When the Major acts himself, his post is with his own company, on the right of the battalion, on foot, with a fuzee or espontoon in his hand. On a march, he should be attentive to keep his division or company at their proper distance for forming, and allow none of the men to quit their rank. He should be present when the Non-commissioned Officers and private men are accounted with for their arrears and stoppages; visit them often either in barracks, quarters, or infirmary; see them properly taken care of when sick, and gratify such as are exact and well-behaved. He should know every man of his company by name and character, and inspect his company's arms, accoutrements, ammunition, cloaths, and necessaries, once a week.

Part of a Lieutenant's Duty.

THE Lieutenant, in the Captain's absence, commands the company, and is not only answerable to the service, but to him also, for the care and management of it; nor is it at his choice to exchange any man from the company, but by leave of the Commanding-officer of the corps, or his Captain. He must pay a particular attention to the arms, accoutrements, ammunition, cloaths, necessaries and dress of the soldiers, and to every circumstance which may contribute to their health, &c. oblige the Non-commissioned Officers, commanding squads, to give him a return every market-day, specifying what quantity of provisions, and of what kind they have laid

laid in, and the amount thereof, after which, he should examine their messes, and see if the quantity answers their returns; also visit the sick, and see that they are properly attended and well taken care of; attend roll-calling at least once a day, and make the Non-commissioned Officers give an exact return every morning, wherein they are to insert all Occurrences that have happened during the preceding twenty-four hours, and redress all complaints from the soldiers with readiness and exactness.

When on guard, party, or other duty, with superior Officers, he must observe the precautions taken by them, that he may be able to execute the same when he comes to command.

A List of Things necessary for a young Gentleman to be furnished with, upon obtaining his first Commission in the Infantry; with a Scheme of his constant Expences, and some farther necessary Advice.

List of Necessaries.

A suit of cloaths,	- - - - -	} All regimental.
Two frock-suits,	- - - - -	
Two hats,	- - - - -	
Two cocades,	- - - - -	
One pair of leather gloves,	- -	
Sash and gorget,	- - - - -	
Fuzee, or esponton,	- - - - -	
Sword, sword-knot and belt,	-	
Two pair of white spatterdashes,	-	
One pair of black and tops,	- -	
One pair of garters,	- - - - -	} 1 Pair of leather breeches,
One pair of boots,	- - - - -	
A blue furtout-coat,		
A Portugal cloak,		
6 White waistcoats,		6 Pair of shoes,
		2 Dozen of shirts,
	O 2	1 Dozen

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 Dozen of stocks, | 6 Towels, |
| 18 Pair of stockings, | 3 Pair of sheets, |
| 1 Black stock, | 3 Pillow-cases, |
| 1 Doz. of handkerchiefs, | 6 Linen night-caps, |

A field bedstead, a painted canvas bag to hold it, bed-curtains, quilt, three blankets, bolster, pillow, one matrafs, and a pailace. Those articles should be carried in a leather valise; a travelling letter-case, to contain pens, ink, paper, wax, and wafer; a case of instruments for drawing; and *Muller's Works on Fortification, &c.* It is also essential that he should have a watch, that he may mark the hour exactly when he sends any report, or what he may have discovered that is of consequence.

If he is to provide a tent, the ornaments must be uniform, according to the facing of his corps.

Dimensions of the Tent.

	Feet.	Inchs.
Length of the ridge pole — — —	7	0
Height of the standard pole — —	8	0
Length from the front to rear of the mar- queé between half walls — —	14	0
Breadth of the marqueé between the half walls — — — —	10	6
Height of the half walls of the marqueé	4	0



Scheme

THE MEDLEY.

197

Scheme of an English's constant Expence.

EXPENCES.

	By a Day			By a Week			By 4 Weeks.			By 52 Weeks.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Breakfast	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Dinner	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Wine and beer	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Four shirts, 4 stocks, and 4 handkerchiefs a week	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Four pair of stockings and two night caps a week	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Hair powder, pomatum, soap, blackball, pens, } paper, ink, wax, and wafers	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Soldier to dress your hair, shave you, &c.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Your Subsistence	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Total	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Ballance	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Yearly Arrears	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Total Ballance	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

In

In barracks there will be an additional expence for washing of bed-curtains, sheets, pillow-cases, and towels. From hence you see how necessary it is for you to be an œconomist, and what a small ballance you have to support the character of an Officer; and that upon a supposition of the arrears being paid yearly.

A D V I C E.

CONSIDER the trust and confidence reposed in you, when you have the honour to carry the colours in action, and resolve rather to die than lose them; for courage is admired and cowardice detested. By the Articles of War, “whatsoever Officer shall misbehave before the enemy, shall suffer death.” Pay the same attention to your duty in time of profound peace as when in the theatre of war: reward and punish where due; but on no account be too familiar with the soldiers, or suffer them to take liberties with you; treat them, as soldiers, with humanity and respect; and they, as their Officer, will obey and esteem you.

Be attentive that the Serjeants and Corporals support a proper authority; but let it be done with decency and good order.

Above all things, avoid the company of those who are given to slander, scandal, personal or national reflections, as the pests of society.

Honour is the peculiar characteristick of an Officer; consequently, all your actions should be guided by it: a man of true honour would rather exert his patience than his courage, except in defence of his King or his country; for he that acts on principles of religion and justice, establishes his character and recommends himself to the favour of his Prince, who rewards the deserving.

Sobriety

Sobriety is very becoming in all Officers, but I would in particular recommend it to you; it will preserve your health and understanding, and intitle you to a respectful regard from your superiors. On the other hand, drunkenness will weaken the mind, ruin the constitution; and, by the Articles of War, "whatever commissioned Officer shall be found drunk on his guard, party, or other duty, under arms, shall be cashiered for it."

Attention in duty, is both proper and commendable; it will improve your mind and cultivate your understanding: tho', at first, it may seem severe: yet, if you do it calmly and chearfully, a little perseverance will conquer what seemed so difficult.

Nothing will recommend you sooner to the favour of a general than having gained preferment by merit: time, experience, and a proper attention, are the sure paths to it. By such a conduct you'll add to your reputation, and confirm your character.

I HAVE a regard for the honour of the army, I am sensible how necessary a proper appearance is to support its character, and how inadequate the salaries of gentlemen employed in it are to the figure they should maintain; I have therefore taken this opportunity to state the exact account of an Ensign's income; and have made as near a calculation as possible of the expences which he must be at in supporting his station; from a view of which I have not the least doubt but some Officer of sufficient experience, consequence and ability, will represent this matter, in its proper light, to that august Assembly, which alone can relieve the Officers of the army.

I must also beg leave to remark, that the present pay of an Ensign was established near a century ago, and, at that time, was worth thrice its present value.

Position of a Soldier under Arms.

“**E**VERY soldier must give the greatest attention, remaining perfectly silent and steady, not making the least motion with head, body, feet or hands, but such as directed. To stand straight and firm upon his legs, head turned to the right, heels close, toes a little turned out, the belly drawn in a little, but without constraint, the breast a little projected, shoulders square to the front and kept back, the right hand hanging straight down the side, with the palm close to the thigh, the left elbow not to be turned out from the body; the firelock to be carried on the left shoulder, as low down as can be admitted without constraint, the three last fingers under the butt, the fore-finger and thumb before the swell, the flat of the butt to be supported against the hip-bone, and to be pressed so that the firelock may be felt against the left side, and that it may stand before the hollow of the shoulder, not leaning towards the head, nor from it, the barrel almost perpendicular.”

R E M A R K S.

A SOLDIER should have strength, activity, and courage, and be as obedient to the orders of the Corporal, as if given him by the Commanding-officer, the Corporal being the means by which they are conveyed to him; he should likewise be master of all the beatings of the drum and tunes of the fife, instantly obey them, and attend his colours. The expiration of his furlow he should strictly observe.

When centry, he should be vigilant, observe his orders punctually and inviolably, and have them foremost in his thoughts; if taken ill, and the cold is so severe that he cannot support himself, he is to call to the next centry to acquaint the guard. For a centry

centry sleeping upon his post, leaving it before he shall be regularly relieved, or suffering himself to be surprized upon it, shall suffer death, or such other punishment as shall be inflicted upon him by the sentence of a court-martial.

“ We should instil into the heart of a soldier, that obedience is the foundation of regularity and order. That, by this, discipline is maintained ; by this, great designs are executed ; and, without it, all is confusion and disorder.”

EXERCISE.

Words of Command.

Officers take care,
Recover your arms.

MARCH.

Order your arms.
Take care to perform the manual exercise,

Poise }
Cock } your firelocks.

Present.

Fire.

Half-cock your firelocks.

Handle your cartridge.

Prime.

Shut your pans.

Charge with cartridge.

Draw your rammers.

Ram down your cartridge

Return your rammers.

Shoulder

Rest

Order

Ground

Take up

Rest

} your firelocks.

Shoulder

THE MEDLEY.

Shoulder }
 Secure } your firelocks.
 Shoulder }
 Fix } bayonets.
 Shoulder } your { firelocks.
 Present } arms.
 Face } to the right.
 Face }
 Face to the right about.
 Face } to the left.
 Face }
 Face to the left about.
 Shoulder } { firelocks.
 Charge } { bayonets.
 Shoulder } your { firelocks.
 Advance } { arms.
 Shoulder } { firelocks.
 Prime and load.
 As front rank,
 Make ready.
 Present.
 Fire.
 As centre rank,
 Make ready.
 Present.
 Fire.
 As rear rank,
 Make ready.
 Present.
 Fire.

N. B After having fired, they go on with the motions.

Of the Sound of the Drum.

It is very necessary that soldiers should be instructed to know the sounds and beatings of the drum before

fore they are dismissed from the drill; as, whether it be the general, assemblé, march, reveille, troop, retreat, taptoo, to arms, parley, or chamade, &c. As they are thereby taught to march and perform their exercise, manœuvres, &c. it is also very proper to teach them every other sound and signal.

To beat the general, is an order for the whole to make ready to march; the assemblé to repair to their colours; and the march commands them to move: the reveille, at day-break, warns the soldiers to rise, and the centries to cease challenging; the troop assembles them together, to call over the roll and inspect the men for duty: the retreat is beat at sunset, for calling over the roll again to warn the men for duty, and read the orders of the day: the taptoo beats at ten o'clock every night in summer, and at nine in winter; the soldiers must then repair to their quarters or barracks, when the Non-commissioned Officers of each squad call over their rolls, and every man must remain there till reveille beating next morning. A beat to arms, is to advertise them to stand to their arms, or to repair to their alarm-posts; and a parley, or chamade, is to desire a conference with the enemy.

S I G N A L S.

Turn or face to the right	One single stroke and flam
Turn or face to the left	Two single strokes and fla.
To the right about	Three single strokes and fl.
To the left about	Four single strokes and fla.
To wheel to the right	{ Roll, one single stroke and flam
To wheel to the left	{ Roll, two single strokes and flam
To wheel to the right abt.	{ Roll, three single strokes and flam

To

To wheel to the left abt.	{	Roll, four single strokes and flam
To front — —		Strong double flam
To make ready — —		Preparative
To cease firing — —		General
To march — —		March
Quick pace — —		Quick march
To charge bayonets		Point of war
To form battalion		To arms
To ease, }	{	Tow-row-dow
To secure, } your arms	{	First part of the taptoo
To shoulder }	{	Last part of ditto
To call the Aujutant		First part of the troop
To call a Serjeant and Corp ^l . of each comp. }		Two rolls, six flams
To call all the Serjeants and Corporals }		Three rolls, nine flams
To assemble the Pioneers		Pioneer's march
To assemble the drum ^{rs} .		Drummer's call.

N. B. There is no order to practice these signals.

Manœuvres, &c. and Explanations.

WORDS OF COMMAND.

*By Battalions, Wings, or Grand Divisions,——Form
Column from the Center.*

THE six center files move forward, the wings face inwards, and, marching by the files to the front, follow the center files. If the column is formed by battalions, the grenadiers face with the wings, and follow them; if by wings, the grenadiers will march obliquely to the right and left, and post themselves at the head of each column; if by grand divisions, the grenadiers will post themselves at the head of the right and left columns of the battalion.

Reduce the Column.

THE column or columns face outward, except the center files, and each wing wheels to the right and left to the front, and form battalion. If the column was formed by battalion, the grenadiers wheel with the wings; if by wings, or grand divisions, they face outwards, and march by files to their former posts on the flanks.

By Companies—Form Column from the Center.

THE two center companies move on slowly forward; the grenadiers, with those on the right and left, face to the center, and march by files. When the Officers see their companies joined, they give the word of command, *To the front, turn*; on which the column is formed.

Form Battalion.

THE two center companies keep moving, without gaining ground; the other six, and the grenadiers, face outwards, and march by files. As soon as they have got ground enough to march in front, the Officers of companies will give the word, *To the front, turn*. When the whole have got up, a signal is given from the center for the battalion to move forward.

Second method of forming the column by companies—See Plan V.

Grand Divisions to the Center form Column by Files to the Front—March.

EACH grand division leads out by files, marches obliquely towards the center, and forms in one body on the march. The column is then formed.

Take Care to form Battalion.

THE grand divisions turn to their front, and gain their proper distance.

Form Battalion.

THEY wheel and form battalion—*N. B.* The grenadiers are to be disposed of in such manner as the Commanding-officer shall direct.

Grand Divisions by Files form Column to the Rear—March.

By files they lead out to the rear, marching obliquely towards the center, and form in one body on the march. The column is then formed.

Take Care to form Battalion.

THE grand divisions turn to their fronts, and gain their proper distance.

Form Battallion.

THEY wheel and form—*N. B.* The disposition of the grenadiers must be agreeable to the direction of the Commanding-officer.

By Grand Divisions form Column to the Right—March:

THE battalion are now supposed to be in one line : the grand division on the right marches twelve paces, the second eight paces, the third four paces, and the fourth on the left stands fast. When the divisions have

have made the number of paces ordered, the three divisions on the left, and the left division of grenadiers, face to the right, and march by files, till they cover the right-hand grand division; which then receives the word from the Officers, *To the front, turn.* The right division of grenadiers marches obliquely to the left, till it comes opposite the center of the first grand division; and the left division of grenadiers covers the rear of the column.

March to close Order.

THEY close up to the front division, and complete the column.

Form Battalion.

THE grenadiers in front turn to the right, and march by files to their former post: the first grand division stands fast; and the other three, with the grenadiers in the rear, turn to the left and keep marching by files. When the Officer, commanding the second division, sees he has ground enough to form on the left of the first grand division, he gives the word, *To the front, turn,* and they march up and join the first grand division: the other two divisions, and that of the grenadiers, form in the same manner.

Grand Division march to Half Distance.

IF the battalion is marching in grand divisions, the grand divisions close to half distance.

Form the Square.

THE front and rear divisions keep moving on very slow; and the right hand companies of the other
two

two wheel to the right. So soon as they have performed their wheelings, they turn to the left, and form the right face of the square: while the left-hand companies move contrarywise, and form the left: the front division of grenadiers, being subdivided, marches obliquely to the right and left, and leave an interval for the front of the square, with which they dress: the rear division of grenadiers also march obliquely to its right and left, and dress with the rear face of the square, which then is formed: if halted, the grenadiers cover the angles.

(See Plan II.)

Reduce the Square.

THE front and rear faces continue marching; the right-hand companies of the two other divisions wheel to the left by files, and the left-hand companies in like manner to the right. When the Commanding-officers of companies see them joined, they will each give the word, *To the front, turn*: on which the front division of grenadiers will advance briskly by the oblique step, and join opposite the center of the first grand division: the rear division of grenadiers will march by files, till it joins in the rear of the fourth grand division, when the Officer will order, *To the front, turn*.

Companies march to Half Distance.

If the battalion is marching by companies, they close to half distance with a quick pace.

Form the Oblong Square.

THE companies being told off, in two platoons, they wheel to the right and left, proceeding in every respect

respect as is already directed for forming the square, the grenadiers making the front face, and light infantry the rear.

Halt.

ON which the square stands fast:

Reduce the Square.

THE platoons wheel, as before directed, for the companies in reducing the square.

March to close Order.

THE companies close up.

Form Battalion.

THE grenadiers turn to the right, and march by files to their post on the right: the first company on the right stands fast; the other seven companies, and the light infantry, turning to the left, march by files. When the Officer, commanding the second company, sees he has ground enough to form on the left of the right-hand company, he gives the word, *To the front, turn*: upon which it marches up and joins, when the Officer orders them to halt: and so in like manner the other six companies and light infantry.

(See Plan 11.)

Second Method of forming the Oblong Square.

Form the Oblong Square——March.

THE left wing of the battalion, and the grenadiers on the left, face to the right; the whole step off; the right wing advances eight paces in front, then turns to the left, both wings marching as faced, till they double as far as the second company on the right and left of the battalion.

P

To

To the Front, turn.

EXCEPT the right and left hand companies of the battalion and the grenadiers, both wings turn to the front; the right wing forms the front face, and the left wing the rear; the right hand company of the battalion wheeling to the right by files, form the right face; while the grenadiers do the same, to cover it; the left-hand company wheel contrarywise, and form the left face; while the left division of grenadiers do the same, and cover it.

Reduce the Square.

THE right wing of the battalion turning to the right, and the left wing to the left, each marches as faced till they have room to form battalion.

To the Front, turn.

THE grenadiers and flank companies wheeling up, while the battalion turns to the front, the left wing march up eight paces, and form the battalion.—
Halt—

*Third Method of forming the Oblong Square.**Form the Oblong Square.*

THE two center platoons, and the right division of the grenadiers, stand fast; the wings and left division of grenadiers facing inwards.

March.

THE center platoons march forward; and the grenadiers on the right obliquely to the left, till they

they cover the center platoons; the wings wheel into the right and left by files, following in the rear the flanks of the center platoons, till the wheel comes to the flank platoons, which platoons join in the rear, turn to their front, and form the rear face; the left division of Grenadiers marching on till it covers the rear face, turns to the front.

Form Battalion.

THE grenadiers in front turn to the right, and march by files to their former post; the center platoons stand fast; the wings keep marching till the front file of each platoon comes close to the rear of the center platoons, at which time each platoon has the word of command from its own Officer, *to the front, turn*; they then march to the right and left, and wheel up to their respective places in battalion, and so on to the two flank platoons, who face to the right and left, march by files, and form on the flanks; the left division of grenadiers faces to the left, and marches by files to its post on the left of the battalion.

Battalion pass the Bridge—March:

(See Plan 9.)

THE grenadiers will advance briskly to the river, and fire obliquely at the head of the bridge, till the front of the battalion comes up to it, when they will march and follow the battalion by files; the two center platoons of the battalion move forward; the wings face to the center, and wheel by files in the rear of the center platoons: when the battalion has passed the bridge, the Commanding-officer gives the word of command

Form Battalion.

ON which the two center platoons stand fast, and begin to fire by word of command from their respective Officers; the other platoons marching on till the front file of each platoon comes close to the center platoons; then the Officer commanding gives the word, *to the front, turn*; when, marching to the right or left, they wheel up to their proper places in battalion, and begin to fire as soon as formed: the battalion keeps a continued fire from the center to the flanks (including the grenadiers) till the Commanding-officer orders them to cease.

Battalion repass the Bridge.

THE grenadiers and two center platoons make ready, and the battalion faces outwards. Upon the word *march* to the battalion, the grenadiers and center platoons will begin firing. When the grenadiers have fired, they will march obliquely to the center, halt, and fire, at least once, before they join in the front of the center platoons, who will have fired as often as possible.

March.

THE right and left wing of the battalion counter-march in the rear, wheeling by files on the ground they stand on, until the head files of each meet in the rear of the center platoons, at which time they wheel up and continue their march for the bridge. When the last files of the wings have wheeled, the two center platoons get the word of command from their own Officers, *to the right about, march*—and march in the rear till the battalion have repassed the bridge. When the head files have passed, they wheel

wheel to the right and left outwards, taking great care to observe the proper distance for the battalion to form. The center platoons will march four paces beyond the battalion; then turn to the right and left outwards. The grenadiers will fire once after the center platoons go to the right about; then recover their arms, and go to the right about. When they have passed the bridge, and come close to the center platoons, they will turn to the right and left outward, and march by files along the rear of the battalion to their posts on the flanks. The Commanding-officer then gives the word of command

Turn to the front—Halt.

WHICH done, the center platoons march up into their interval, and form battalion. See Plan 10.

Take care to pass the Defile.

To pass a defile where only two men can march in front, the two center files must stand fast while the grenadiers and wings of the battalion face inwards.

March.

THE two center files march forward, the wings move to the center, and, when they join, a file from each wing will turn to the front and follow them.

Form Battalion.

THE two center files stand fast, while the others run up and dress with the center ones: the files on the right wing form on the right of each other; and those of the left wing on the left.

P 3

Battalions,

Battalions, Wings, or Grand Divisions advance by Files from the Right or Left.

THE whole turn to the right or left, and each wing or grand division leads out by files from the right or left; the grenadiers do the same, keeping dressed with the front files of the battalion.

Form Battalion.

THE front file of each wing, or grand division, and the grenadiers, wheel to the right or left.

Turn to the Front.

THE whole turn to the front.

Battalions, Wings, Grand Divisions or Companies, retreat by Files from the Right or Left.

THE whole face to the right or left.

March.

EACH battalion, wing, grand division or company, wheels off by files to the right or left; and the grenadiers do the same.

By Files to the Right or Left wheel—To the Front turn. Halt—

THIS forms the battalion.

Battalions, Wings, Grand Divisions or Companies, form Ranks intire.

ALL, except the right hand file, turn to the right.
March.

March.

THE right hand file march forward, while the others move till they come to their ground; they then turn to the front and follow the front file.

Form Battalion.

THE three first men stand fast, the rest march up in files upon the left of them, and form the battalion.

Battalion advance from the Right by Files.

THE battalion turns to the right, and wheels to the left by files.

From three deep form two deep.

EVERY second and third file, being told off from the right, opens an interval sufficient for a file to march into.

March.

THE men in the rear of each file face to the left and come up with a quick pace into the interval.—They are then formed two deep.

From two deep form three deep.

THE men that moved up, fall back again in to their former file.

Spring to the Center.

THE right and left wing of the battalion springs to the center, and the battalion is formed three deep again.

From Grand Divisions form Companies.

THE right hand company of each grand division continues marching forward; the left-hand companies turn to their right and march by files. When the Officers see that they cover the right-hand companies, they will turn them to the front: while both divisions of grenadiers, inclining to their right, cover the front and rear companies.

In this manner the battalion is to be formed into wings, grand divisions, companies, and platoons. The signal is the pioneers march. To form large bodies from small ones, the signal is the troop; on beating of which, if the battalion is marching in platoons, the right-hand ones of each company will keep moving, without gaining any ground; the left-hand platoons will march obliquely to their left, and form on the left of the right-hand ones. The grand divisions, in like manner, will be formed from companies, the wings from divisions, and battalions from wings.

In marching by the oblique step, in ranks, companies, sub or grand divisions, wings, battalion or column, a particular attention must be paid by the Officers, Non-commissioned Officers and soldiers, that they keep parallel to their front.

To complete files in action, the battalion is to incline from the right and left to the center of the battalion: the Officers and Non-commissioned Officers in the rear are to see it done expeditiously.

When a Regiment disperses, how it forms itself again.

THE great advantage of this consists in a regiment being able to form in a moment; therefore every Officer, Non-commissioned Officer, and private

vate man, must know his right-hand man, file, leader, and company, that he may, with the utmost quickness, be formed ready for whatever may present itself. When a regiment is suddenly alarmed, repulsed by the enemy, or has performed this evolution, it may be formed again with the utmost celerity. Commanding-officers should therefore accustom their regiments to this evolution, in order that they may know how to form themselves when ordered.

Take Care to disperse—March.

THE Officers, with the colours, march six paces forward.

A Long Roll

By the two orderly drummers disperses the regiment.

To Arms.

THE battalion form, and the Officers, Non-commissioned Officers, and private men, fall into their own files and dress by the colours.

N. B. The Commanding-officer ought to be careful of informing his men that their dispersion by an enemy is the greatest misfortune which can happen to a battalion; but that, even in this case, they are not to look upon the action as lost; for, by their being accustomed to rally, he may soon be able to form them again, and redeem their honour,

Cautions and Directions to Young Officers.

AN Officer should be very circumspect in his examination of such intelligence as he may receive from deserters, and never undertake any thing by

by their advice before he hath made himself secure of their persons; for though they should leave even their wives and children as hostages for their fidelity, yet are they ever to be suspected.

When an Officer is sent on party or detachment, if he receives intelligence of an enemy being superior to him, and that he is marching, in order to intercept him; I would have the Officer send a drummer, beating the long march, a different road from that he intends to take, with orders to conceal himself from the enemy; by which means the enemy may be induced to follow the sound of the drum and give time to form an ambuscade.

If you are sent with a party or detachment to occupy a post, and find the enemy lurking about, in order to intercept you, it would be advisable to march off in the darkness of the night; for if you should not succeed in your attack, it will save the lives of many in the retreat. If you meet the enemy, rush on them with your bayonets; for the courage, strength and activity of the British troops, will add greatly to your success: but you must not fire on any account, lest you may alarm the rest of the enemy.

When you are to march through woods, enclosures, near houses, or by cross-roads, you should never halt or encamp in the little openings of the woods, nor ever pass through them without carefully examining their skirts with the utmost precaution. You should always have scouts, whom you can depend upon, to reconnoitre, and prevent the danger of an ambuscade: for the avoiding of which you cannot be too much upon your guard, particularly when near a pond or rivulet; for the enemy, supposing you fatigued and dry, and taking for granted that the soldiers will strive who shall be first to drink, may take that opportunity to attack you, and

and throw all into confusion, if the strictest discipline is not duly observed.

When the enemy beats a march, you are to suppose them advancing; upon which the regiment forms in order of battle.

If the enemy is marching to your front you should beat a preparative, and fire by companies till they advance within forty yards, when the general must be beat, and the battalion halted: then fire the center and rear ranks; the front reserving their fire, and dropping their muzzles till they can count ten after the center and rear ranks have fired: when the enemy is within twenty yards, fire your front rank, and rush on with your bayonets.

Should the enemy recover their order, and be sustained by a superior number of troops to you, your only expedient is a good retreat. If the enemy pursues, fire by companies, retreating, and continue the retreat till you can occupy some ground to advantage, where you may be able to make a stand: this is, however, difficult to put in practice, without a knowledge of the country.

Should the enemy be thrown into disorder in the pursuit (which has often happened) bring the battalion to its proper front; prepare for the attack, and advance with a quick pace, till you come within twenty yards of them; then give a general discharge, and rush on with your bayonets.

If the enemy is in an enclosed country, village, or behind a defile necessary to be forced, the regiment forms one or more columns.

But if the enemy, after gaining a champaign ground, offer battle, the regiment reduces its column, forms battalion, and fires by sub or grand divisions.

Should a regiment of cavalry be hardy enough to march up against a regiment of infantry, the latter must

must immediately form a square: if the former attempt to force it, the infantry is to fire a volley and charge bayonets; which, against cavalry, is preferred to fire.

If the cavalry are thus repulsed and retire, the infantry reduce their square, form battalion, and pursue with a quick pace, keeping their ranks well dressed.

But if the cavalry are able to form again, and attempt to return to the charge, it will be necessary for the infantry again to form a square, lest the former should move down in columns, which they would be apt to do.

A column that receives an enemy's fire, and maintains good order till a well levelled one is returned, by then rushing in upon them with bayonets, must certainly defeat them.

The Prussian cavalry execute three manner of charges: one directly strait before it, without deflecting either to the right or left; in the second, it turns off to the right, for outstretching the enemy's line by a squadron or two; in the third, it bears to the left, for outstretching the enemy's right flank.

All these charges are performed at full gallop. At the first word of command, *march*, the line immediately moves in a trot; at the second, it puts on a gallop; and thus it proceeds five or six hundred paces, till, at the command, the whole body stops and dresses.

Directions for Picquets and Village Guards.

ALL posts stationed behind ramparts, walls, hedge, or ditch, are to be drawn up two deep in close order; if behind a river, trench, or chevaux-de-frize, three deep; the ranks also in close order

der. The Officers to be posted according to situation and circumstance.

If you should be attacked by a superior body, and are obliged to retire, they should file off in one or two ranks perpendicular, that the object may be as small as possible, lest the enemy fire at you through a hedge.

Young Officers apt to exceed their Orders, from a mistaken Zeal.

[This is copied from BLAND's Discipline.]

YOUNG Officers are but too apt to commit mistakes, by exceeding their orders: through a heat and impetuosity of temper, they often attempt to do something that is great and noble, without considering the consequence that may attend it. I own it is an error on the right side; but still it is an error; for orders are for the most part positive, and leave us no room to act according to our own inclination; a restraint that proves rather indulgent than hard in cases of danger, into which youth would precipitate themselves and others, were it not checked by the cool reason of men of experience: let us, therefore, be subservient to the commands of our superiors, and submit to their judgment in all things relating to the service. We shall gain honour and reputation enough, if we adhere strictly to our orders; but disgrace may attend the exceeding of them, as well as the falling short; the one, however, is more excusable than the other, though the consequences may prove as fatal, since it proceeds from a mistaken zeal; but the other from want of courage. To blame a man for want of courage, when Nature has not bestowed it on him, is not only hard, but unjust.

The

The man, however, who continues in the service, when he knows himself defective in that point, betrays both his King and country ; and, therefore, merits the severest punishment.

Of SUBORDINATION.

[This is copied from the Regulations for the PRUSSIAN Infantry.]

HIS Majesty is highly displeased to understand, that a right harmony and agreement does not subsist in some regiments ; from whence factions and animosities have been produced, which are quite repugnant to subordination, and prejudicial to the service in general, as well as the particular good of those regiments.

His Majesty is likewise informed, that the orders given by superior Officers to their inferiors, are not executed with that respect, alacrity, and application which is required. Nay, that some Officers have even presumed to dispute the orders of their Commanders, and to argue first of all, whether they were right or wrong, according to their opinions : he has, therefore, found it very necessary to forbid the like unmilitary behaviour, on pain of incurring his highest displeasure ; and to give his commands in the most urgent manner, that subordination be kept up amongst the Officers of every regiment, from the General down to the youngest Ensign, with the utmost strictness.

When a General-officer thinks proper to give any orders relating to his regiment, and to his Majesty's service, and the Colonel-commandant is of opinion that such orders are contrary to his Majesty's gracious will and intention, the Commandant may then state his exceptions to the General, in a decent and
submissive

submissive manner; but if the General, notwithstanding, insists on their being performed, it becomes his duty to comply without further contradiction; nevertheless, he is afterwards at liberty to make a representation thereof to his Majesty, who, in case it be founded on justice, will render the General responsible.

N. B. All orders given to a regiment while under arms, are to be immediately executed, and no objections made till afterwards; because it would derogate from the respect and obedience which is due to every Commanding-officer, and might be also attended with bad consequences to the service in general, to dispute his orders in the presence of all the Officers and face of the whole regiment.

Orders to empower the Commanding-officers of Corps to post Subaltern Officers in such Manner as they shall think may best conduce to the good of his Majesty's Service.

G. R.

WHEREAS it has been humbly represented unto Us, that disputes have frequently arisen amongst our forces, concerning the posting Subaltern-officers to troops and companies, whereby our service hath suffered, or may suffer; We have, therefore, taken the same into Our Royal consideration, and have thought fit, in order to remedy the same inconveniences for the future, hereby to authorize and give full power to the Colonels and Commanding-officers of every regiment in our service, to post the Subaltern-officers in such manner as he or they shall think

think may best conduce to the good of Our service, and the regular discipline, and due government of the troops and companies under their command, having regard always to the seniority of such Subaltern-officers as far as may be; to the end, that no prejudice may happen to Our service or to them. And this Our pleasure, the Colonels, Field-officers, and every other Commission-officer in Our service, are to observe and pay due obedience to accordingly.

April, 23, 1736.

Warrant for regulating the Attendance of Officers belonging to the several Regiments of Cavalry.

GEORGE R.

WHEREAS We were pleased by Our warrant bearing date the 27th day of *July, 1764*, to establish certain rules and regulations for the attendance of the several Officers of Our regiments of horse and dragoons within Our kingdom of Great-Britain, with their respective corps; and whereas We have since found it necessary for the good of Our service, to establish some farther regulations for the attendance of the said Officers; We have therefore judged it proper to revoke and annul Our warrant abovementioned; and We do hereby revoke and annul the same; and Our farther will and pleasure is, that in lieu thereof, and for the more effectual maintainance of good order and discipline in Our royal regiment of horse guards, and in Our regiments of dragoon guards and dragoons, the following rules be strictly observed; for the execution of which the Colonel and Field-officer commanding each regiment are to be responsible.

1st, That

1st. That with each of Our said regiments one Field-officer shall be always present with the regiment; that one Captain shall be present with each Squadron, and one Subaltern with each troop.

2d. That the Colonel or Field-officer commanding each regiment may grant leave of absence to such other Officers whose private affairs may require it, taking care always to detain, or from time to time to call in a sufficient number of Officers to do the duty of the regiment, in case it should be so situated, as to require the attendance of more Officers than We have hereby directed to be constantly present.

3d. That the Officers appointed to carry on the recruiting service shall not be included in the number hereby fixed for the constant duty of the regiment, or in the number of those who shall be farther called in by the Commanding-officer for that duty.

4th. That the monthly return of each regiment be made up and transmitted as usual on the first of each month to Our Secretary at War, and to the Adjutant-general of Our forces; and that the return of the absent Officers which We have directed to be made of the fourteenth of each month, shall, in like manner be made up and transmitted from the head quarters of every regiment in England to Our Secretary at War, and to the Adjutant-general of Our forces; and from the regiments in North-Britain to the Officer commanding on that station for the time being; and the Commanding-officer by whom the said returns shall be signed is carefully to examine the same, as he is to be responsible that they are in every respect conformable to Our regulations.

5th. That the number of Officers hereby ordered to be present, shall remain with their commands until they shall be relieved; and notwithstanding the returns are ordered to be transmitted on the 1st and 14th of each month, yet the Officers are

Q

to

to continue at quarters during all the intermediate time; and the Commanding-officer is hereby enjoined not to permit them to absent themselves from the duty they are employed on, except in cases of great emergency, and then but for two days only; and all leaves so granted, are to be specified in the next return with the reasons for granting them.

6th. That no application shall be made either to Us, or to the Commander in Chief of Our forces, for a leave of absence for any Officer of Our said regiments, except through the Colonel or Field-officer commanding the regiment; and that all such applications shall be so regulated that no particular Officer shall be absent from his duty too long at one time; the same caution is to be observed in limiting the leaves granted by the Colonel or Officer commanding each regiment.

7th. That every Officer, whether taken from the half-pay or otherwise, on being appointed to a regiment shall join it within four months at farthest from the date of his commission; unless he shall have obtained particular leave of absence, which is not to be granted except on very cogent reasons.

8th. That if any Officer so appointed shall exceed the time hereby limited without leave obtained for that purpose, he shall be returned, *absent without leave*; and the date of his commission is to be specified in the return; it being Our firm intention immediately to supersede any Officer who shall neglect to pay due obedience to this Our order.

9th. That every Officer newly appointed and who has never before served in any of Our regiments of cavalry, shall upon joining his regiment remain in quarters until he shall be perfected in riding and all regimental duty.

10th. That no Officer belonging to any of Our regiments of cavalry stationed in Great Britain shall

go out of the kingdom without leave obtained from Us, the warrant for which is to express the time for which the leave is granted, and is to be entered in the office of Our Secretary at War.

11th. All Officers while present with their corps are constantly to wear their uniforms.

12th. Every Officer is to be present with his regiment annually in England by the 10th day of March, and in Scotland by the 10th of April, and remain with it till after the spring review; and this Our order is upon no account to be dispensed with, except a particular leave shall be obtained for that purpose from Us, or the Commander in Chief of our forces; and no such leave shall be applied for except in cases of absolute unavoidable necessity.

13th. All recruiting Officers and recruits are to join their respective corps in England by the 10th of March, and in Scotland by the 10th of April, as We do expect that Our regiments on each station shall be compleat annually in men by those respective days.

And We do hereby direct that all and several the rules and regulations hereby established, be punctually observed upon pain of Our highest displeasure. Given at Our court at St. James's the eleventh day of February, 1767, in the seventh year of Our reign.

By his Majesty's Command,

War-Office,
a true Copy.

BARRINGTON.

Warrant for regulating the Attendance of Officers belonging to Regiments on Foreign Stations.

GEORGE R.

WHEREAS We have thought it necessary for the good order and discipline of Our forces stationed in Our garrisons and other Our dominions beyond the seas, to establish certain rules and regulations for the due attendance of the Officers belonging to, or who shall be appointed to commissions in Our said forces, Our will and pleasure is, that the same be observed strictly as follows.

1st. That when any Officer who may be in Britain or Ireland shall be appointed to a commission in any of Our regiments stationed abroad, he shall set out to join his regiment within four months at farthest from the date of his commission, unless he shall have obtained Our leave of absence for a longer time; it being Our firm intention to supersede any Officer who shall disobey this Our order.

2d. Application shall not be made to Us for farther leave except on very extraordinary occasions; and it shall then be made through the Colonel of the regiment, if he is in Britain.

3d. All leaves granted by Us for any term beyond the four months abovementioned shall express the particular time for which they are granted, and shall be entered in the office of Our Secretary at War; and all Colonels are hereby required to take care that all Officers when newly appointed to their respective regiments, be apprised of these Our orders; and report to Us if they shall find that they are not strictly complied with.

4th.

4th. The Officer commanding on each station shall be made acquainted with the leaves so granted, and shall transmit the same to the respective regiments, in order that they may be inserted in the monthly returns.

5th. A list of all Officers newly appointed shall be transmitted by Our Secretary at War, by the earliest opportunity, to the Colonel of the regiment, if he be in Britain; as also to the Commander or Governor where the respective regiments are stationed, with the dates of their commissions.

6th. The said list shall be transmitted by the said Commander or Governor to each regiment under his command; and when any Officer shall be returned not joined, the date of his commission shall be inserted in the return; to the end that We may be satisfied of the due performance of Our Commands herein.

7th. When any Officer belonging to a regiment stationed abroad shall obtain leave of absence from the Commander in Chief, Governor or Commanding-officer, it shall be for a limited time only; which time shall be specified in the returns; and before the expiration thereof, he shall join his regiment.

8th. But as from the uncertainty of a sea passage, it may sometimes happen that an Officer may not return exactly to the day prescribed by his leave, the Commanding-officer is in that case to enquire, and make proper allowances; the whole of which is to be explained in the next return.

9th. And whereas it may be necessary in some particular cases to prolong the leaves so granted, the Colonel of the regiment is upon such occasions to make the application, in order that it may be properly laid before Us, and if granted, the same is to be signified by Our Secretary at War to the respective Commander or Governor, with the particular

time for which each leave is prolonged; in order that the Officer commanding the regiment may be acquainted therewith.

10th. But in order to prevent the necessity of frequent applications to Us upon this head, it is Our pleasure that such leave shall in the first instance be granted, as is reasonable and sufficient; it not being Our intention to prolong the same, except in very particular cases and circumstances which could not have been foreseen by Our said Governors or Commanders.

11. The respective Commanders in Chief, Governors, and Field-officers, are to be responsible that, according to the situation and circumstances of each regiment, there are always a sufficient number of Officers present to do duty.

And We do hereby direct that all and several the rules and regulations hereby established be punctually observed, upon pain of Our highest displeasure. Given at Our court of St. James's, the eleventh day of February, 1767, in the seventh year of Our reign.

By His Majesty's Command,

War-Office,
a true Copy.

BARRINGTON.



Warrant

Warrant for regulating the Recruiting, and reviewing of the several Regiments of Foot, upon Foreign Stations.

GEORGE R.

WHEREAS it hath been humbly represented unto Us, that it wou'd greatly tend to the preservation of good order and discipline in Our several marching regiments of foot, which are or may be upon foreign stations, to have some certain regulations laid down by Us, for reviewing and recruiting those regiments, as well as keeping them complete in arms, accoutrements, and cloathing; Our will and pleasure is, that the following rules and regulations be; for this purpose, strictly observed for the future, by Our Commander in Chief in North America, and by all Our Governors and Officers commanding Our regiments abroad, and by all other military Officers whom it may concern.

1st. That all the old and unserviceable men, who are now in any of Our regiments above-mentioned, be discharged as soon as possible, and such as are proper objects recommended to Our bounty of Chelsea; care being however taken at the same time not to diminish the numbers of any regiment, so far as to prejudice the service on which it may be employed; and, it is Our will and pleasure, that this duty, which We esteem to be indispensable; should be observed, not only now; but constantly; as we expect that Our said regiments shall at all times be maintained, in such a state of compleatness, strength, and discipline, as always to be prepared for immediate service.

2d. That constant care be taken to keep as many parties employed upon the recruiting service, as the number of vacancies, and the state of the regiment may require.

Q 4

3d. That

3d. That positive orders be given to all Officers, who shall be sent with the Command of recruiting parties, that they do not enlist any men but such as are in every respect fit for Our service; and, that they be informed that a most strict examination will be regularly made of their recruits, and that such of them, who do not answer the instructions, shall be rejected.

4th. That for the future, the following respective sums shall be allowed to Officers sent upon the recruiting service, from the several stations abroad, towards bearing the expence of passage: viz.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
From North America, the West-Indies, and Africa	12	10	0
From Minorca	7	17	6
From Gibraltar	5	5	0

and that those sums be advanced to each Officer, when he shall be sent on the recruiting service, by the Pay-master of the regiment, and shall be placed as a charge against the non-effective fund.

5th. And, whereas it is essential to the good of the service, that the arms, accoutrements, and cloathing of Our said regiments, should be always kept complete, and in proper serviceable order; and, that the strictest attention should be had, not only to the discipline, but to the interior œconomy of each corps; for this purpose Our will and pleasure is, that each of Our said regiments (provided it may not be inconsistent with the service on which they may be severally employed) shall be assembled annually, at the most convenient season, and reviewed and inspected by the Commander in Chief, Governor, Brigadier, or any other Officer, under whose command it may happen to be, by whom the following returns are to be made up, and sent as soon as may be practicable, after the review and inspection hereby directed, to Our

Secretary

Secretary at War, and Ajutant-general of Our forces respectively, according to the form here-with transmitted, in order to their being laid before Us : viz.

A return of Officers present and absent.

A return of Non-commissioned Officers and private men.

A general return of the regiment.

A field return.

A return of the state of the arms, accoutrements, and cloathing.

6th. That the Officer, who shall respectively review and inspect each regiment, do add such farther remarks and observations of his own, as may, in every respect, tend to give Us a full information of the actual state and condition of each regiment.

7th. That, if, from the circumstances of Our service, any regiment shall be so situated that it cannot be assembled, the different parts of it shall be inspected in such manner as the Commander in Chief, Governor, Brigadier, or other Officer, under whose command it may happen to be, shall think most convenient for the service, and that the returns according to the forms which are now ordered, shall be made up, and transmitted by the earliest opportunity ; and We do hereby direct, that all, and several the rules and regulations hereby established, be punctually observed, upon pain of Our highest displeasure, Given at Our court at St. James's this eighth day of January, 1768, in the eighth year of Our reign.

By His Majesty's Command,

War-Office,
A true Copy.

BARRINGTON.

Military

Military Honours due to Crowned Heads.

ALL armies salute crowned heads in the most respectful manner; drums beating a march, colours and standards dropping, and Officers saluting: their guards pay no compliment, except to Princes of the blood, and even that by courtesy, in the absence of the crowned head.

Due to the Captain-General of Great-Britain, Field-Marshal, General of the Empire, or of the Dutch.

ALL those denominations, meaning almost the same thing, are treated in the army with equal ceremony: their guards give them all the honours due to the representatives of Sovereigns; the army in which they command shew them, conjunctly and separately, the same respect, except when any of the royal family shall be present.

Regulations of Honours to be paid by his Majesty's Forces to the General Officers of the Army.

GEORGE R.

OUR will and pleasure is that the following rules be duly observed and put in execution:

Generals of horse and foot, upon all occasions, to have the march beat to them, and are to be saluted by all Officers, the colours excepted: they are likewise intitled to a guard of a Captain, Lieutenant and Ensign, and fifty men, with colours and standards. Lieutenant-generals of horse and foot, upon all occasions, to be saluted by all Officers; they are to have three ruffles given them, and are entitled to a guard

of

of a Lieutenant and thirty men. Major-generals are to have two ruffles, and not saluted by any Officer, and are entitled to a guard of an Ensign and twenty men. Brigadiers one ruffle, and are entitled to a guard of a Serjeant and twelve men.

A Lieutenant-general, who is a Commander in Chief, by virtue of a commission from Us, is to have the same respect paid him, on all occasions, as a General of horse and foot: a Major-general as a Lieutenant-general, and a Brigadier as a Major-general.

All Governors, that are no General-officers, shall, in all places where they are Governors, have one ruffle given them, with rested arms; but for those that have no commission as Governors, no drum shall beat.

A Lieutenant-governor, or the Officer who commands in his absence, shall have the main-guard turned out to him with shouldered arms.

A Town or Fort-major, in a Garrison, is to command according to the rank he now has, or has had, in the army; and if he never had any other but that of Town or Fort-major, he is to command as youngest Captain.

A General of horse or foot to be received with swords drawn, kettle-drums beating, trumpets sounding, and all the Officers to salute, except the Cornet bearing the standard.

A Lieutenant-general to be received with swords drawn, trumpets sounding, and all the Officers to salute, except the Cornet who bears the standard, and the kettle-drums not to beat.

A Major-general to be received with swords drawn, one trumpet of each squadron sounding; no Officers to salute, nor kettle-drums to beat.

A Brigadier-general to be received with swords drawn; no trumpet to sound, nor any Officer to salute, nor kettle-drums to beat.

As to the dragoons, they are to pay the same respect, according to the nature of their service.

And Our further will and pleasure is, that Our several troops of horse and grenadier guards, and Our several regiments of foot-guards, be exempted paying any honours to the Generals, unless when they shall be in line with other troops, or mixed with them in detachments, or when they shall be received by any General, by Our special orders!

Honours to be paid to the Generals by the Horse and Grenadier Guards, when mixed with other Troops.

A General of horse or foot is to be received with swords drawn, trumpets sounding; all the Officers to salute, except the Cornet bearing the standard; the kettle-drum not to beat.

A Lieutenant-general to be received with swords drawn; one trumpet of each squadron sounding; no Officer to salute, nor kettle-drum beat.

A Major-general to be received with swords drawn, no trumpets sounding; no Officer to salute, nor kettle-drum to beat.

N. B. The troops of horse-grenadier guards to beat a march to a General, but bayonets not to be fixed: three ruffles to a Lieutenant-general; two ruffles to a Major-general, &c.

Honours to be paid to the Generals by the Foot-Guards.

A General of horse or foot to be saluted by all the Officers, except the Ensigns with the colours; a march is to be beat to him as he passes, but bayonets not to be fixed.

A Lieutenant-general to have three ruffles, and to be saluted by all the Officers, except the Ensigns with the colours.

A Major-

A Major-general two ruffles, and not to be saluted by the Officers.

Regulations for the duty of our Horse and Foot-Guards, when joined with other of our Troops.

THAT our foot-guards are to give no guard to any General-officer, only to the General commanding in Chief, supposing him to be of the degree of a General or Lieutenant-general; in which case they are to furnish, for a General's guard, a Lieutenant, Ensign, and fifty men: for a Lieutenant-general's guards, so commanding in Chief, an Ensign and forty men.

That the quarter-guard be commanded by an Ensign, who is to do no honours, but to the Commander in Chief; but is to turn out his guard to all the Generals above the degree of a Major-general, and to stand at the head of his guard, with his espoon-toon in his hand, and the guard shouldered; that the horse-guards are never to mount any General's guard.

That their standard-guard do turn out only to the General commanding in Chief, supposing him to be of the rank of a General or Lieutenant-general.

That both horse and foot are to turn out at the head of their camp, when the General, commanding in Chief, passeth along the line.

That, in all cases, when they shall be detached in the manner above-mentioned, both Officer and soldier, as well horse as foot, do equal duty, in proportion with other troops with whom they shall be joined.

Given at Our court at St. James's
this 30th day of April, 1729,
in the second year of Our reign.

COLOURS.

C O L O R U S.

The first standard, guidon or colours of a regiment, is not to be carried on any guard but that of his Majesty, the Queen, Prince of Wales, or Captain-general, and, except in these cases, shall remain always with the regiment.

Honours to the Master-General of Ordnance.

The Master-general of the Ordnance shall have the same respects from the troops with Generals of horse or foot; that is, upon all occasions to have the march beat to him, and is to be saluted by all officers, the colours excepted.

Honours paid Governors, General Officers, Colonels, Lieutenant-Colonels, &c. in Garrison.

All Governors, whose commissions in the army are under the degree of General Officers, shall have, in their own garrisons, all the guards turn out with rested arms, and beat one ruffle; and though the main-guard turns out with rested arms, every time he passes, yet they give him the compliment of the drum but once a day; but all the other guards beat as often as he appears near them.

If they are General Officers likewise, they are then to have the further compliments paid them by the several beatings of the drum, as is practised in the army, and are as follow.

To Generals of the horse and foot, the guards turn out, rest their arms, beat a march, and the Officers salute.

To Lieutenant-generals they turn out, rest their arms, beat three ruffles, and the Officers salute.

To a Major-general they turn out, rest their arms, and beat two ruffles, but not salute.

To Brigadier-Generals they turn out with rested arms only, but of late they have added one ruffle to the compliment.

To Colonels, their own quarter-guards turn out, and rest their arms once a day; after which they only turn out with ordered arms.

To Lieutenant colonels, their own quarter-guard turn out with shouldered arms once a day, at other times they only turn out, and stand by their arms.

To Majors, their own guard turn out with ordered arms once a day, at all other times they stand by their arms.

When a Lieutenant-colonel, or a Major commands a regiment, their own quarter-guard pay them the same compliment as is ordered for the Colonel.

All centries rest their arms to Generals, Colonels, Lieutenant-colonels, and Majors: this ceremony is the same both in camp and garrison.

The main-guard are to rest their arms to the Governor, and pay him the compliment with the drum, as before directed: if he continues to walk on the parade, or before the guard, they may lay down their arms.

All centries are to rest their arms as he passes them, or comes near their posts.

A General of the horse and foot, when in garrison, has a Serjeant and two centries at his door.

All Lieutenant-generals have the same.

A Major-general is to have two centries at his door, and the same compliment paid him by the guards as in camp.

A Brigadier is to have one centry at his door, and one ruffle from all the guards in the garrison.

All Colonels or Officers who command battalions, are to have one centry, which they are to take from their

their own regiments; but those Colonels, who have no regiments in the town, are to have the centry from the main-guard, or one of the port-guards, if their lodging lie more convenient for them.

The main-guard is to turn out and stand by their arms once a day to all Colonels; but all other guards must order their arms for them as often as they pass.

The main-guard is to pay no compliment to the Lieutenant-colonels or Majors; but the other guards are to stand by their arms for them.

Lieutenant-colonels are to be treated in their own garrisons as Colonels; and the Majors Commandant as Lieutenant-colonels, unless their rank in the army entitles them to a greater compliment; but when either of them command the garrison, they are then treated in all respects as Governor.

When the Governor, and Lieutenant-governor, are absent, or by sickness rendered incapable of acting, the eldest Officer in the Garrison is to take the command upon him, who is called Commandant of the Garrison, and has all the respect paid him by the guards as Governor, except that of the drum, unless his rank in the army entitled him to it before.

Engineer's Rank.

Chief, as Colonel.

Director, as Lieutenant-colonel.

Sub-director, as Major.

Engineer in ordinary, as Captain.

Engineer extraordinary, as Captain-lieutenant.

Sub-engineer, as Lieutenant.

Practitioner Engineer, as Ensign.

Rank

Rank and Precedence between Land and Sea Officers.

1. That the Admiral or Commander in Chief of his Majesty's fleet, have the rank of a Field-marshal of the army.
2. That the Admirals, with their flags on the main-top-mast-head, have rank with Generals of horse and foot.
3. That Vice-admirals have rank with Lieutenant-generals.
4. That Rear-admirals have rank as Major-generals.
5. That Commodores, with broad pendants, have rank as Brigadiers-general.
6. That Captains commanding post-ships, after three years from the date of their first commission, for a post-ship, have rank as Colonel.
7. That all other Captains commanding post-ships have rank as Lieutenant-colonels.
8. That Captains of his Majesty's ships or vessels, not taken post, have rank as Majors.
9. That Lieutenants of his Majesty's ships have rank as Captains.
10. That the rank and precedence of Sea-officers in the classes above-mentioned, do take place according to the seniority of their respective commissions as Sea-officers.
11. That Post-captains commanding ships or vessels that do not give post, rank only as Majors during their commanding such vessel.
12. That nothing in this regulation shall give any pretence to any Land-officer to command any of his Majesty's squadrons or ships, nor to any Sea-officer to command at land, nor shall either have a right to demand the military honours due to their respective ranks, unless such Officers are upon actual service.

R

Compli-

Compliment due to General Officers, &c.							
GUARDS.							
	Captains.	Lieutenants.	Ensigns.	Serjeants.	Drummers.	Fifers.	Private men.
The General in Chief has	1	1	1	2	2	2	50
General of horse and foot	1	1	1	2	2	2	50
Lieutenant-general of horse } and foot — — — }	—	1	—	1	1	1	30
Major-general of horse and } foot — — — }	—	—	1	1	1	1	20
Brigadier — — —	—	—	—	1	—	—	12
Quarter-master General (as } such only) — — — }	—	—	—	1	—	—	12
The Majors of brigade, in- } camped together — }	—	—	—	1	—	—	12
Judge advocate — —	—	—	—	1	—	—	7
Provost-marshal, as such, a } Serjeant and eighteen men; } but when he has prisoners, } there is added a Subaltern, } Serjeant, drummer, fifer, } and thirty men. }	—	1	—	2	1	1	48

The Train of Artillery, according to the number they shall require.

The guard which mounts on the General in Chief, has always colours.

Facings

Facings of the Cavalry.

HORSE GUARDS.

Facings.

	{ 1st. } Troop.	
	{ 2d. }	
<i>Blue.</i>	{	HORSE GRENADIER GUARDS.
	{ 1st. }	
	{ 2d. }	Troop.

HORSE.

<i>Red.</i>		Royal Regiment of Horse Guards.
<i>Blue.</i>	1st	Regiment of Horse.
<i>Green.</i>	2d	Regiment of Horse.
<i>Yellow.</i>	3d	Regiment of Horse, or Caribineers.
<i>Black.</i>	4th	Regiment of Horse.

DRAGOON GUARDS.

<i>Blue.</i>	{ 1st	(Or the King's) Regiment of Dragoon Guards.
	{	
<i>Buff.</i>	{ 2d	(Or the Queen's) Regiment of Dragoon Guards.
	{	
<i>White.</i>	{ 3d	(Or the Prince of Wales's) Regiment of Dragoon Guards.
	{	

DRAGOONS.

	{ 1st	(Or Royal) Regiment of Dragoons.
	{ 2d	(Or Royal North British) Regiment of Dragoons.
<i>Blue.</i>	{	
	{ 3d	(Or the King's own) Regiment of Dragoons.

R 2

(Or

Facings. } *Blue.* } 5th (Or Royal Irish) Regiment of Dragoons.

LIGHT DRAGOONS.

Blue. { 1st (Or the King's) Regiment of Light Dragoons.
2d (Or the Queen's) Regiment of Light Dragoons.

DRAGOONS.

Green. { 4th Regiment of Dragoons.
13th Regiment of Dragoons.
6th (Or Inniskilling) Regiment of Dragoons.
Yellow. { 8th Regiment of Dragoons.
10th Regiment of Dragoons.
White. { 7th (Or Queen's) Regiment of Dragoons.
12th (Or Prince of Wales's) Regiment of Dragoons.

LIGHT DRAGOONS.

White. { 3d Regiment of Light Dragoons.
4th Regiment of Light Dragoons.

DRAGOONS.

Buff. { 9th Regiment of Dragoons.
11th Regiment of Dragoons.
Lemon. 14th Regiment of Dragoons.

Total

Blue. { 2 Troops of Horse Guards.
2 Troops of Horse Grenadier Guards.

HORSE.

Facings. H O R S E.*Red.* One Regiment.*Blue.* One Regiment.*Green.* One Regiment.*Yellow.* One Regiment.*Black.* One Regiment.

D R A G O O N G A R D S.

Blue. One Regiment.*Buff.* One Regiment.*White.* One Regiment.

D R A G O O N S.

Blue. Four Regiments.

L I G H T D R A G O O N S.

Blue. Two Regiments.

D R A G O O N S.

Green. Two Regiments.*Yellow.* Three Regiments.*White.* Two Regiments.

L I G H T D R A G O O N S.

White. Two Regiments.

D R A G O O N S.

Buff. Two Regiments.*Lemon.* One Regiment.

R 3

Facings

Facings of the Infantry.

<i>Facings.]</i>	<i>Rank and Title.</i>	<i>[Distinctions.</i>
<i>Blue.</i>	1st Regiment, 3 battalions	<i>Guards</i>
	2d (or Coldstream) Regiment, 2 battalions	
	3d Regiment, 2 battalions	
	1st or the Royal 2 battalions	
	4th or the King's own Regiment	
	7th or the Royal Fusiliers	
	8th or the King's Regiment	
	18th } or Royal { Irish	
	21st } or Royal { N. B. Fusiliers	
	23d or Royal Welch Fusiliers	
<i>Blue.</i>	41st or the Invalids	
	42d or the Royal Highlanders	
	60th or Royal American 2 battal.	
	71st	
	72d	
	73d } Invalids	
	74th	
	75th	
	2d or Queen's Royal Regiment	
	5th Regiment	
<i>Green.</i>	11th Regiment	<i>Sea green.</i>
	49th Regiment	
	45th Regiment	
	51st Regiment	
	54th Regiment	
	55th Regiment	
	63d Regiment	
	66th Regiment	
	68th Regiment	
	69th Regiment	
	75th Regiment	<i>Full green.</i>
		<i>Deep green.</i>

Facings of the Infantry.

<i>Facings.</i>	<i>Rank and Title.</i>	<i>[Distinctions.]</i>
<i>Green.</i>	24th Regiment	} <i>Willow green.</i>
	39th Regiment	
	36th Regiment	} <i>Yellowish green</i>
	19th Regiment	
<i>Buff.</i>	3d Regiment or Old Buffs	} <i>Buff.</i>
	52d Regiment	
	57th Regiment	
	61st Regiment	
	14th Regiment	} <i>Paleish buff.</i>
	22d Regiment	
	27th Regiment or Inniskillen	
	31st Regiment	
	40th Regiment	
	48th Regiment	
	62d Regiment	
	6th Regiment	} <i>Deep yellow.</i>
	9th Regiment	
	25th Regiment	
	29th Regiment	
<i>Yellow.</i>	46th Regiment	} <i>Bright yellow.</i>
	10th Regiment	
	12th Regiment	
	15th Regiment	
	16th Regiment	
	28th Regiment	
	34th Regiment	} <i>Pale yellow.</i>
	37th Regiment	
	38th Regiment	
	44th Regiment	
	20th Regiment	
	26th Regiment	
	30th Regiment	

*Facings of the Infantry.**Facings.]**Rank and Title.**[Distinctions.*

<i>Yellow.</i>	{ 67th Regiment	<i>Pale Yellow.</i>
	{ 13th Regiment	<i>Philepot Yellow.</i>
<i>White.</i>	{ 17th Regiment	<i>Greyish white.</i>
	{ 32d Regiment	{ <i>White.</i>
	{ 43d Regiment	
	{ 47th Regiment	
	{ 65th Regiment	
<i>Red.</i>	{ 33d Regiment	{ <i>Red.</i>
	{ 53d Regiment	
<i>Black.</i>	{ 50th Regiment	{ <i>Black.</i>
	{ 58th Regiment	
	{ 64th Regiment	
<i>Orange.</i>	35th Regiment	<i>Orange.</i>
<i>Purple.</i>	56th Regiment	<i>Purple.</i>
<i>Pompadour.</i>	59th Regiment	<i>Pompadour.</i>
<i>Grey.</i>	70th Regiment	<i>Grey.</i>

Blue,	—	—	—	24
Green,	—	—	—	17
Buff,	—	—	—	11
Yellow,	—	—	—	19
Greyish white,	—	—	—	1
White,	—	—	—	4
Red,	—	—	—	2
Black,	—	—	—	3
Orange,	—	—	—	1
Purple,	—	—	—	1
Pompadour,	—	—	—	1
Grey,	—	—	—	1

Total, battalions 85

Blue,

<i>Blue, faced with red.</i>	}	Royal regiments of artillery.
<i>Red, faced with black.</i>	}	Corps of engineers.
<i>Red, faced with white.</i>	}	The divisions of marines.
<i>To be of the colour of the facings of their corps,</i>	}	Majors and Adjutants horse-furniture.

Regulations for the Colours, Cloathing, &c. of marching Regiments of Foot.

NO Colonel to put his arms, crest, device, or livery, on any part of the appointments of the regiment under his command.

No part of the cloathing or ornaments of the regiments to be altered after the following regulations are put in execution, but by Us or Our Captain-general's permission.

G O L O U R S.

THE King's or first colour of every regiment is to be the great union throughout.

The next colour to be the colour of the facing of the regiment, with the union in the upper canton, except those regiments which are faced with red or white, whose second colour is to be the red cross of St. George, in a white field, and the union in the upper canton.

In the center of each colour is to be painted or embroidered in gold Roman characters, the number of the rank of the regiment within a wreath of roses and thistles on the same stalk; except those regiments which

which are allowed to wear devices, or antient badges, on whose colours the rank of the regiment is to be painted towards the upper corner.

The size of the colours and the length of the pike to be the same as those of the royal regiments of foot-guards.

The cords and tassels of all colours to be crimson and gold mixed.

Drummers Cloathing.

THE drummers of all the royal regiments are allowed to wear the royal livery: viz. red, lined, faced, and lapelled on the breast with blue, and laced with a royal lace. The drummers of all the other regiments are to be cloathed with the colour of the facing of their regiments, lined, faced, and lapelled on the breast with red, and laced in such manner as the Colonel shall think fit, for distinction sake; the lace, however, being of the colours of that on the soldiers coats.

Grenadiers Caps.

THE front of the grenadiers caps to be the same colour of the facing of the regiment, with the King's cypher embroidered and crown over it; the little flap to be red, with the white horse and motto over it *nec aspera terrent*: the back part of the cap to be red; the turn-up to be the colour of the front, with the number of the regiment in the middle part behind. The royal regiment, and the six old corps, differ from the foregoing rule, as specified hereafter.

The front or forepart of the drums to be painted with the colour of the facing of the regiment, with the King's cypher and crown, and the number of the regiment under it.

Bells

Bells of Arms.

THE bells of arms to be painted in the same manner.

Camp Colours.

THE camp colours to be square, and of the colour of the facing of the regiment, with the number of the regiment upon them.

Devices and Badges of the Royal Regiments, and of the Six old Corps.

FIRST regiment, or the Royal regiment: in the center of their colours, the King's cypher within the circle of St. Andrew, and crown over it; in the three corners of the second colour, the thistle and crown: the distinction of the colours of the second battalion, is a flaming ray of gold descending from the upper corner of each colour towards the center.

On the grenadiers caps, the same device as in the center of the colours: white horse, and the King's motto over it, on the little flap.

The drums and bells of arms to have the same device painted on them, with the number or rank of the regiment under it.

Second regiment, or the Queen's royal regiment: in the center of each colour the Queen's cypher, on a red ground, within the garter, and crown over it: in the three corners of the second colour, the lamb, being the ancient badge of the regiment.

On the grenadier's caps, the Queen's cypher and crown, as in the colours: white horse, and motto, *nec aspera terrent*, on the flap.

The drums and bells of arms to have the Queen's cypher painted on them, in the same manner, and the rank of the regiment underneath.

Third

Third regiment, or the Buffs: in the center of their colours the dragon, being their ancient badge, and the rose and crown in the three corners of their second colour.

On the grenadiers caps the dragon: white horse and King's motto on the flap.

The same badge of the dragon to be painted on their drums and bells of arms, with the rank of the regiment underneath.

Fourth regiment, or the King's own royal regiment: in the center of their colours, the King's cypher on a red ground, within the garter, and crown over it: in the three corners of their second colour, the lion of England, being their antient badge.

On the grenadiers caps the King's cypher, as on the colours, and crown over it: white horse and motto on the flap.

The drums and bells of arms to have the King's cypher painted on them, in the same manner, and the rank of the regiment underneath.

Fifth regiment: in the center of the colours, St. George killing the dragon, being their ancient badge; and in the three corners of their second colour the rose and crown.

On the grenadiers caps, St. George killing the dragon; the white horse and motto, *nec aspera terrent* over it, on the flap.

The same badge of St. George and the dragon to be painted on their drums and bells of arms, with the rank of their regiment underneath.

Sixth regiment: in the center of their colours, the antelope, being their antient badge; and in the three corners of their second colour the rose and crown.

On the grenadiers caps, the antelope, as in the colours: white horse and motto on the flap.

The

The same badge of the antelope to be painted on their drums and bells of arms, with the rank of the regiment underneath.

Seventh regiment, or the Royal Fuzileers : in the center of their colour, the rose within the garter and the crown over it ; the white horse in the corner of the second colour.

On the grenadier caps, the rose within the garter and crown, as in the colours : white horse and motto over it, *nec aspera terrent*, on the flap.

The same device or the rose within the garter and crown, on their drums and bells of arms : rank of the regiment underneath.

Eighth regiment, or the King's regiment : in the center of their colours, the white horse on a red ground, within the garter, and crown over it : in the three corners of the second colour, the King's cypher and crown.

On the grenadier caps, the white horse, as on the colours : the white horse and motto, *nec aspera terrent*, over it on the flap.

The same device of the white horse within the garter, on the drums and bells of arms : rank of the regiment underneath.

Eighteenth regiment, or the Royal Irish : in the center of their colours, the harp in a blue field, and the crown over it ; and in the three corners of their second colour, the lion of Nassau, King William the Third's arms.

On the grenadier caps, the harp and crown, as on the colours : white horse and motto on the flap.

The harp and crown to be painted, in the same manner, on the drums and bells of arms, with the rank of the regiment underneath.

Twenty-first regiment, or the Royal North British Fuzileers : in the center of their colours, the thistle, within the circle of St. Andrew, and crown over it ;
and

and in the three corners of the second colour, the King's cypher and crown.

On the grenadier caps, the thistle, as on the colour: white horse and motto over it, *nec aspera terrent*, on the flap.

On the drums and bells of arms, the thistle and crown to be painted as on the colours: rank of the regiment underneath.

Twenty-third regiment, or the Royal Welsh Fuzileers: in the center of their colours, the device of the Prince of Wales: viz. three feathers issuing out of the Prince's coronet; in the three corners of the second colour, the badge of Edward the Black Prince; viz. rising sun, red dragon, and the three feathers in the coronet: motto, *ICH DIEN*.

On the grenadier caps, the feather, as in the colours: white horse and motto, *nec aspera terrent*, on the flap.

The same badge of the feathers and motto, *ich Dien*, on the drums and bells of arms, rank of the regiment underneath.

Twenty-seventh regiment, or the Inniskillen Regiment, allowed to wear in the center of their colours, a castle with three turrets, St. George's colours flying in a blue field, and the name *Inniskillen* over it.

On the grenadier caps, the castle and name, as on the colours: white horse and King's motto, on the flap.

The same badge of the castle and name on the drums and bells of arms, rank of the regiment underneath.

Forty-first regiment, or the Invalids. In the center of their colours, the rose and thistle on a red ground, within the garter, and crown over it: in the three corners of the second colour, the King's cypher and crown.

On the grenadier caps, drums, and bells of arms, the same device of the rose and thistle conjoined, with- in the garter, and crown as on the colours.

Forty-second, or Royal Highland regiment: the gre- nadiers of the Highland regiment are allowed to wear bears-skin fur-caps with the King's cypher and crown over it on a blue ground, in the turn-up or flap.

N. B. A few alterations, since the foregoing was first published, have been made in some corps; such as altering the facings of the caps, and drummers cloathing.

Method of sending for the Colours.

THE Officers having taken their posts, the co- lours are to be sent for in the following mannner.

The Major orders the grenadier drummers to beat the drummer's call; which is a warning for the Of- ficers who carry the colours, the drummers and fifers. He then orders a flam; upon which the Officers, drummers, and fifers face to the right, the Officers advancing their espontoons at the same time; and, on the immediate sound of another flam, they march to the head of the grenadiers, and turn to their pro- per front. The captain then orders the company to advance their arms, and marches off in the following order.

Captain.
Lieutenants.
Ensigns.
Fife-major.
Fifers.
Drum-major.
Drummers.
First division of grenadiers.
 * * * * * Serjeant.
 * * * * *
Serjeant * * * * *

Second

Second division of grenadiers.

***** Serjeant.

As soon as the Captain comes to the place where the colours are lodged, he must draw up his company three deep, with the Serjeants in the rear; and then give the following words of command.

Fix your bayonets.

Shoulder your firelocks.

When the Ensigns receive the colours, the Captain gives the word;

Present your arms.

Upon which the grenadiers present their arms; Serjeants charge their halberds: and drummers and fifiers beat and play a point of war: after which the Captain orders;

Shoulder your firelocks.

Advance your arms.

To the right (or left) wheel.

March.

They march back to the battalion, beating and playing the grenadiers march.

When the colours approach the left flank of the battalion, the Commanding Officer orders *Present your arms*—and—*face the battalion to the left*, the drummers and fifiers beating and playing a point of war, and the music, “God save great George our King.” The Captain of grenadiers makes two wheels to the left; the second division of grenadiers moves up to dress with the first: and both open their ranks in the second wheel, so as to be in a direct line with the ranks of the battalion. When the grenadiers halt, the music, drummers, and fifiers cease; upon which the Commanding Officer gives the word

To the right, as you were.

The whole face to the right; the Captain of grenadiers followed by his Lieutenants; behind whom the Ensigns, with the colours, move briskly to the right; the Officers and colours march in front of the line of Officers; the fifers and drummers between the Officers and front rank of the battalion; the front rank of grenadiers between the front and center of the battalion; the center rank of grenadiers between the center and rear rank; and the rear rank of grenadiers along the rear rank of the battalion. When the Ensigns come to the center of the battalion, they are to fall in, and dress with the line of Officers. The grenadiers, having returned to their post on the right, get the words of command from their Captain,

Turn to the front.

Halt.

Shoulder your firelocks.

Unfix your bayonets.

Shoulder.

N. B. The Ensigns have their arms advanced in going for the colours, as well as the grenadier Officers and Serjeants; but in returning they have the colours advanced in place of their arms.

Every Officer should, upon the colours passing by, take off his hat; this being a respect due to the colours. The Officers who carry them are not to take off their hats in return, except when they salute with the colours.

To fire three Volleys in the Air.

THE ranks to be at half distance, and to make ready as center rank.

Preparative.

Make ready.

Present.

S

They

They present in the air.

Fire.

They fire, come to the priming posture, and proceed to load and shoulder.

Preparative.

Make ready.

Present.

Fire.

Go on as before.

Preparative.

Make ready.

Present.

Fire.

They fire and recover.

Flam.

They half cock.

Flam.

They shoulder.

Flam.

They shut pans.

After this they are to give three huzzas, first taking off their hats with the two following motions.

Seize the hat with the right hand, tell one, two, and lift it up, holding it above the head. After the huzzas, they put on their hats, at two motions; bring the hat on the head, and fix it; tell one, two, and let the hand fall down by the side.

To fire a Feu de Joye.

THE ranks to be closed to half distance; and, when they present, they are to raise their muzzles pretty high in order to fire in the air. The men of each file are to fire together; that is, each file distinctly by itself; and so run quick, from one file to another, from right to left.

To

To fire the Street Firing.

THIS firing is only used when troops are under the necessity of engaging in a street, defile, or highway, where many men cannot march in front. In whatever manner you fire in front, it must not be equal to the breadth of the place. An interval must be left on each flank; down which those who have fired, may have room to march by files to form in the rear.

Take care to perform the street firing.

March.

The fifers and drummers play and beat a march! The whole step off with their left feet; and, upon the preparative, the first company gets the word from their own Officer

Halt.

Make ready.

Present.

Fire.

After which the men recover their arms, and face outwards from their center.

March.

They go down the flanks by files, form in the rear; load, shoulder, and keep marching to the front, till they are ordered to fire again.

When one company has fired, the next takes up its ground, fires, and files off in the same manner. When the general beats the firing ceases.

N. B. This firing is to be performed retreating by each company, firing without advancing to the ground of the one that fires before. The usual notice for this fire is a preparative, and the retreat beating immediately after.

Parapet Firing.

WHEN a breast-work, or parapet, is to be defended, I would draw up my men two deep; not only to extend my front, but to prevent disorder in going through the intervals.

Upon the preparative

The front rank, with the Officers, march up to the breast-work, or parapet; the men with recovered arms, and the Officers with theirs advanced, who then gives the word of command,

Present.

Fire.

After which they recover their arms, go to the right about; and, upon the word

March,

they go to the rear; the other rank marching up with intervals open for them to pass through.

Oblique Firing.

WHEN a battalion is ordered to fire obliquely to the right, the front rank turns on the left heel, throwing the right leg back to the left of the center rank men in that file; the center rank face on both heels; the rear rank turns on the right heel, stepping forward with the left toe to the center rank men of that file.

Present.

Fire.

The whole come to their proper front, load and shoulder.

Oblique Firing to the Left.

THE front rank turns on the left heel, stepping back with the right foot to the right of the center rank men

men of that file; the center rank turns on both heels to the left; the rear rank turns on the left heel, stepping forward, with the right toe to the center rank heels of the same file.

Present.

Fire.

The whole come to their proper front, load and shoulder.

N. B. In both the above firings the Officers go in the rear of the intervals.

Funeral Ceremony of Subalterns.

THE party (according to the rank of the deceased) appointed to escort the corpse to the grave, is to draw up three deep, with open ranks, facing the house, or marqueé, where it is lodged; and when the corpse is brought out of the house, or marqueé, the Officer commanding the Party will order

Rest your firelock.

Reverse your firelock.

Rear ranks close to the front.

March.

On which the ranks close.

To the right wheel by division.

March.

They wheel into two divisions, if a small party; or more according to their strength. The Officer will then reverse his espartoon, and post himself in the rear; the Serjeant reverses his halbert, and goes to the head of the party.

Halt.

The party stands fast, till all is ready; when the Officer will order

March.

The party then marches off, led by the Serjeant, and opens ranks; the corpse following the party; and

the drum, being muffled, beating the dead march :
when it comes to the burial-ground, the Officer
orders

Halt.

And the party stands fast.

Ranks to the right and left, wheel backwards.

March.

Each rank being told off, wheels back ; one half to
the right, the other to the left, and forms a lane.

Rest on your arms reversed.

They come to the funeral posture. The corpse,
&c. then pass through the lane, and he orders

Shoulder.

Rest your firelock.

Shoulder your firelock.

To the right and left, wheel and form your ranks.

March.

They wheel up, and form as before.

Rear ranks close to the front.

March.

The rear ranks of each division close up.

Divisions to the right or left, wheel.

March.

They wheel.

Halt.

They stand fast.

March.

They march till they come to the grave.

Halt.

They stand fast.

Rear ranks, to your proper distance.

They go to the right about.

March.

They march five and ten paces.

Front.

They come to their front.

When

When the Adjutant gives the Officer commanding the party a signal, he orders

Make ready.

Present.

They present in the air.

Fire.

They fire a volley, which is to be repeated three times. After the third time, they stand recovered.

He then orders,

Half cock.

Shoulder.

Shut your pans.

Rear ranks close to the front.

March.

They close.

To the right, wheel by division

March.

They wheel again in two divisions.

Halt.

They stand fast.

March.

The Commanding-officer leads the first division, the second following. They open their ranks, and the drum beats a march. When drawn up on the regimental parade, he orders:

Recover your arms.

To the right about.

March.

And the men go to their quarters.

N. B. The party load before they march off.

B R E V E T S.

AN Officer, at any time, who, by his Majesty's leave, shall quit a commission which he has in any regiment or corps, and who, at that time, shall enjoy a rank in the army, superior to his said regimental commission, shall not be considered as entitled

titled to any rank whatsoever in the army, unless his Majesty shall expressly signify his pleasure to be otherwise : and that Officers (not being General-officers) having a rank in the army superior to that of the commission which they bear in any regiment or corps, are not thereby exempted from their several attendance at quarters, and doing regimental duty, according to their rank in the corps to which they belong.

Points of Command.

ALL commands fall to the eldest in the same circumstance, whether of horse, dragoons, artillery, foot, or marines. Among the Officers of the corps of the British troops, entire or in parts, in case two of the same date interfere, a retrospection of former commissions, or length of service, is to be examined, and ended by the judgment of the rules of war.

Method of going and receiving the Rounds in a Garrison.

WHEN the Town-major goes his round, he comes to the main-guard and demands a Serjeant and four men to escort him to the next guard; and one of the men is to carry a lanthorn. He may go first to which gate he pleases; whereas, all the other rounds, except the Governor's or Commandant's, are to go according to the method prescribed them. As soon as the centinel at the guard-room door perceives the round coming, he should give notice to the guard, that they may be ready to turn out. When the round comes within twenty paces of the guard, he is to challenge; and, when he is answered by the Serjeant who attends the Town-major's round, he is to say, *Stand round*; after which he is to call out immediately, *Serjeant, turn out your guard, Town-major's*

major's round. No round is to advance after the centinel has challenged and ordered them to stand. Upon the centinel's calling, the Serjeant is to turn out the guard immediately, with shouldered arms, and the Officer is to post himself at the head of it. After this, he is to order the Serjeant, and four men, to advance towards the round, and challenge. When the Serjeant of the guard comes within six paces of the Serjeant who escorted the round, he is to halt and challenge briskly : the Serjeant of the escort answering, *Town-major's round* ; he replies, *Advance Serjeant with the parole* ; and then orders his men to rest their firelocks. The Serjeant of the escort advancing alone, gives the Serjeant of the guard the parole in his ear ; and, while he is giving it, the former holds the spear of his halbert to the breast of the latter. He then orders the Serjeant to return to his escort ; and, leaving the men he brought with him to keep the round from advancing, goes to his Officer, and gives him the parole he received from the Serjeant. The Officer finding the parole to be right, orders his Serjeant to return to his men, and says, *Advance, Town-major's round—rest your firelocks* ; upon which the Serjeant of the guard orders his men to wheel back from the center and make a lane, through which the round is to pass. The escort remaining where they were, he goes up to the Officer, and, laying his mouth to his ear, gives him the parole, the Officer holding the spear of his esponton at the Town-major's breast, while he gives it. The Town-major having given the Officer of the guard the parole, he is then to examine if the gates are locked and well secured ; whether they have taken possession of their night-posts, and placed the additional night-centinels ; counts the men who are under arms, to see if they are all on guard, and, if any are missing, enquires into the reason of their absence. He may likewise

likewise examine the night-orders; as also all others relating to the guard, and rectify any mistake in them. After these things are done, he should send back the Serjeant and men, who attended him, to the main-guard, and take the same number from this guard to escort him to the next; and so from one to another, till he has finished his round.

As the Town-major's round is designed to see if the gates are locked, the night-posts fixed, and the orders delivered right; I presume he may go either along the ramparts or through the streets, from one guard to another, as he shall think proper; but all the other rounds, except the Governor's, must go along the ramparts.

As soon as the round is gone, the Officer is to order his men to lodge their arms.

The Town-major is at liberty to take what time he pleases for going his round, so that it is completed between the time of shutting the gates and twelve o'clock; but it would be as well if he went at uncertain hours, and changed his way of going, in order to keep the guards alert; however, he must always go the first round, to verify the night-orders.

The Town-major having finished his round, he is to wait on the Governor early in the next morning, and make him a report of the state of all the posts, and the condition he found them in.

All other rounds must be received in the same manner as is directed for the Town-major's, only with this difference, that the Officers on guard are to give the parole to the grand round; but all other rounds are to give it to them: and though the Governor shall go his round, after the grand round is made by the Captain of the main guard, he is to give the parole to the Officers on guard: but, in this case, the Governor may carry an Officer to give the parole for him.

The Captain of the main-guard is to go the grand round, and the Lieutenant is to go the visiting round.

When the Governor or Field-officer of the day intends to go the grand round, notice of it must be sent to the Captain of the main-guard, to prevent his going, that he may be prepared to receive him; it being usual for the Governor or Field-officer to come to the main-guard first, and take an escort along with him from thence to the next guard, or to conduct him quite round, if he thinks proper. The Governor may order what number of men for his escort he pleases.

When the Governor or Field-officer of the day goes the grand round, the Captain of the main-guard is to go the visiting round.

The grand round, or any round which the Governor, or Field-officer, of the day, shall make, may begin where they please; because, whatever round they meet, is to give them the parole; whereas, when two other rounds meet, that which challenges first has a right to demand the parole of the other; but as this might occasion disputes in giving the parole, should both challenge together, or imagine they did, the place where they are to begin, and the hour which each round is to go at, must be particularly mentioned; by which method they cannot possibly meet, but will follow one another in a regular manner, provided they are punctual in the execution.

N. B. All rounds should be reported by the several guards, the Officers names who went them, and at what hours; as also, every thing that happened extraordinary; such as Officers being absent from their guards, or negligent in their duty; centinels drunk, asleep, not alert, or off their posts; if they discovered any thing of consequence, heard any noise in the country, saw any number of people assembled together, or met with any disturbance.

The

The Method of going and receiving the Rounds in Camp.

THE Field-officer to be escorted by a Serjeant and four men, with a drummer, to carry the lanthorn. Every centry is to challenge the rounds, who are to answer *grand round*, whereupon he is to rest his firelock. When the grand rounds is challenged near the quarter or rear guards, the centinel, upon being answered *grand rounds*, is to reply *stand grand rounds*, and call the guard to turn out, before he suffers the rounds to advance.

The Officer commanding the quarter-guard is to order a Serjeant and a file of men to advance within six paces of the rounds, and there to halt and challenge again. When answered *grand rounds*, he replies, *stand grand rounds, advance Serjeant with the parole*, and then orders his file of men to rest their firelocks: the Serjeant of the grand rounds then advances unattended and gives the parole to the Serjeant of the guard, who at the same time is to hold the spear of his halbert at the other's breast.

The Serjeant of the rounds returns; and the Serjeant of the guard leaving his escort to prevent the rounds advancing, goes to the Officer of the guard and delivers to him the parole he received from the Serjeant of the rounds.

The Officer, finding the parole to be right, orders his Serjeant back to his escort, and says, *advance grand rounds*, commanding his guard to rest their firelocks. At the same time the Serjeant orders his men to wheel back from the center, and make a lane for the rounds to go through: the Field-officer goes along the front of the guard; and when he comes to the Officer, he receives the parole from him.

He

He may count the number of men under arms; and, when he has asked such questions and given such orders as he judges necessary, he passes on, and the Officer of the guard orders his men to lodge their arms.

Turning out of the Line.

THE line turn out without arms whenever the General commanding in chief comes along the front of the camp.

When the lines turn out, the private men are to be drawn up in a line with the bells of arms; the Corporals on the right and left of their respective companies; the picquet forms behind the colours, their accoutrements on, but without arms.

The Serjeants draw up one pace in the front of the men, dividing themselves equally.

The Officers, to be drawn up in ranks, according to their commissions, in the front of the colours; two Ensigns taking hold of the colours.

The Field-officers advance before the Captains.

When the Commander in Chief comes along the line, the Camp-colours on the flanks of the parade are to be struck, and planted opposite to the bells of arms; espontoons are to be planted between the colours, and the drums piled up behind them; the halberts are to be planted between, and on each side of the bells of arms, the hatchets turned from the colours.

Forming and returning the Picquet of the Infantry.

THE Officers and men for the picquet being ready dressed and accoutred, as soon as the drummer's call is beat, the men take their arms and form in the streets before the tents. The orderly Serjeants and Corporals

Corporals having likewise their arms, are then to examine the men and form those of their respective companies into ranks, and dress with the line of tents.

When the retreat begins, they are to march them forward, the front rank even with the bells of arms, each orderly Serjeant and Corporal advancing three paces, and remain at the head of his men. The Officers, Serjeants, drummers, and fifers, for the picquet, go to the head of the colours; and, taking their arms, and drums, wait there. As soon as the retreat is ended, the Adjutant orders, *advance to form the picquet*; upon which the whole march forward in three ranks to the lines of parade; the Officers, Serjeants, drummers and fifers of the picquets, as well as the orderly Serjeants and Corporals, advancing twelve paces before the front rank; and when they are come to the ground, the Adjutant orders *halt*; upon which the Officers, Serjeants, drummers, and fifers, face to the right about. He then orders *form the picquet*; at which command, the whole, except the Officers, Serjeants, drummers and fifers, of the picquet, face to the right and left inwards to the center. *March*; they march together, closing to the center, and the Officers, Serjeants, drummers and fifers, take their posts; the orderly Serjeants and Corporals close likewise, but so as to be opposite to the men of their respective companies, to answer for what may be wanting or amiss. *Halt*; the picquet faces to the front, and the orderly Serjeants and Corporals to the picquet.

The Adjutant is then to go through the ranks; and, after having examined the whole, and found all compleat, he orders all the orderly Serjeants and Corporals to their respective companies to call the rolls. They are to face to the right and left outwards, and march regularly with halberts and firelocks recovered. The Adjutant is then to acquaint the Captain that his picquet is ready.

The

The Captain and his Officers are then to examine the men's arms and ammunition; which being done, he orders, *prime and load*.

As soon as the Colonel or Field-officer of the picquet has acquainted the Captain that he may return the picquet, the Captain, having cautioned the men to be ready to turn out at a moment's warning, orders, *picquet to the right and left to your companies*; upon which the Officers, Serjeants, drummers and fifers, move three paces to the front, and the men face to the right and left outwards. *March*; they march until they come opposite to the bells of arms of their respective companies, waiting for the next word of command, *halt*; upon which they face to the bells of arms, and the Officers, Serjeants, drummers and fifers, face to the colours. *Lodge your arms*; they march together, and having carefully lodged their arms, return to their tents; the Officers, Serjeants, drummers, and fifers, doing the same.

Of Forage, Foragers, &c.

		lb.
A compleat ration of forage, in Germany, } consists of, old hay	_____	14
	Oats	
	Straw	
		8
		6
A compleat ration of forage, in Flanders, } consists of, old hay	_____	12
	Oats	
	Straw	
		10
		6

When double rations of corn in lieu of hay, were delivered, they were reckoned a compleat ration.

Each time the army forages, five or six rations are to be weighed in the presence of the Field-officer commanding the foragers; and if any are found to be short of weight or measure, the proportion

portion of that deficiency is to be demanded upon the allowance which each regiment is entitled to by regulation.

No more than one ration is to be given to a horse.

No more than sixteen sacks of corn must be put into any waggon.

Double rations of hay are to be reckoned as hay and corn.

One hundred rations of grass or clover, weighing forty pounds, are allowed each regiment of foot *per diem*.

The Quarter-masters of regiments are to pick out five of the largest, and the country Commissaries five of the smallest bundles of hay or grass; which are to be weighed together, and divided by ten: every bundle they receive afterwards is to be given as weighing the aforesaid tenth part.

Two hundred faggots are allowed for each battalion, *per diem*; and, every eight days, every battalion, including Officers, servants, and bat-men; is also to receive four hundred bundles of straw; each bundle to weigh twelve pounds and an half.

American Weekly Allowance of Provisions for one Person.

Seven pounds of bread or flour.

Seven pounds of beef or pork.

Half a pound of rice.

Three pounds of peas; and

Six ounces of butter.

When they receive fresh meat, each person is to have one pound of beef a day; and one pound of flour; a bullock's head is to be issued for eight pounds, a tongue for three pounds, and a heart for its weight.

Proportion

Proportion of Rations.

Brigadier-general	—	—	12
Colonel	—	—	6
Lieutenant	—	—	5
Major	—	—	4
Captain	—	—	3
Subaltern	—	—	2
Staff	—	—	2

Allowances of Straw and Firing in Ireland, 1759, judged necessary for each Tent.

THE first delivery of straw for each tent is to be six bundles, each bundle to weigh twenty pounds of wheat straw; two bundles of the like weight to be delivered to each tent every seven days afterwards during their encampment. Where wood firing is made use of, twenty pounds weight is allowed to each tent a day, provided the wood has been some time cut; and every day, if green, forty pounds weight, adding one faggot of furze. If furze be made use of without wood, two faggots a day to each tent, provided each faggot weighs twenty pounds; but, if the custom of the country is to make their faggots of sixteen pounds weight, two faggots and a half should be allowed each day. This computation is to shew, that double the weight should be allowed where only furze is burnt.

If turf is made use of instead of wood or furze, forty-four turf should be allowed to each tent a day.

Ten pounds is allowed for each bat horse in Great Britain and Ireland. Sunks and fods to be furnished out of the above allowance.

T

Form

Form of a Warrant.

WHEREAS it hath been humbly represented unto Us, that Major *A.* of Our regiment of commanded by our trusty and well-beloved *B. C. D.* is now, after years service, rendered unable to do his duty; We have, therefore, thought fit, at his own request, and for the good of Our service, by Our commission, bearing date the day of 17 last, to promote Captain *E.* of Our said regiment, to succeed the said *A.* as Major; Captain-lieutenant *F.* of Our said regiment, to succeed the said *E.* as Captain; Lieutenant *G.* of Our said regiment to succeed the said *F.* as Captain-lieutenant; Ensign *H.* of our said regiment, to succeed the said *G.* as Lieutenant; and *I.* Gentleman, to succeed the said *H.* as Ensign.

Notwithstanding which promotion, Our will and pleasure is, that the said *E.* and the Major to Our said regiment, without purchase, for the time being, shall continue to receive pay as Captain only; that the said *F.* and youngest Captain, for the time being, in our said regiment, without purchase, shall continue to receive pay as Captain-lieutenant only; the said *G.* and the Captain-lieutenant of our said regiment, for the time being, without purchase, shall continue to receive pay as Lieutenant only; and the said *H.* and the youngest Lieutenant in Our said regiment, for the time being, without purchase, shall receive pay as Ensign only; and the said *I.* youngest Ensign in our said regiment, for the time being, without purchase, shall receive no pay.

To the end that the said *A.* may, for his future support and maintenance, hold and enjoy, during his life, the full pay of a day: the same to commence from the said day of

I

17 last, inclusive, and to be issued him or his assigns during his life; and that upon the death of the said *A.* the said *E.* and the Major to Our said regiment, for the time being, without purchase, the said *F.* and the youngest Captain thereof, for the time being, without purchase; the said *G.* and the Captain-lieutenant in our said regiment, for the time being, without purchase; and the said *H.* and the youngest Lieutenant thereof, for the time being, without purchase; and the said *I.* and the youngest Ensign thereof, for the time being, without purchase; shall receive pay conformable to Our establishment: and for so doing, this, with the acquittance of the said *A.* or his assigns, shall be, as well to you as to all others whom it may concern, from time to time, a sufficient warrant, authority and discharge.

Given at Our Court at St. James's, the
day of 17 in the year of
Our reign.

By His Majesty's commands,

K. L.

To the Agent of Our
regiment of commanded
by our trusty and well beloved
B. C. D. and to the Agent of Our
regiment, for the time being, in
Great Britain or Ireland, or to
whom the payment thereof shall or
may concern.

B A C K E D.

Warrant for Major *A.* of the regiment
of to retire upon
a day.

T 2

Attorney-

Attorney-general's Opinion concerning Soldiers making away with their Cloaths or Necessaries.

CAPTAIN A. B. of the regiment, represents, in a letter of the of June, from that he has had several hearings before the civil magistrates, with the inhabitants, for buying and taking in pledge from the soldiers, their shirts, shoes, and stockings, particularly in regard to one of Captain company, who sold four shirts, two pair of stockings, and a pair of shoes, leaving himself destitute of linen, &c. &c.

By the objections made by the attorney, in behalf of the defendant, neither the expected penalty nor punishment is inflicted, pursuant to the forty-fifth Clause, in the Mutiny and Desertion Bill, which enacts, " That if any person shall knowingly detain, buy or exchange, or otherwise receive arms, cloaths, caps, or any other furniture belonging to the King, from any soldier or deserter, upon any account or pretence whatever, or cause the colour of such cloaths to be changed, the person so offending, shall forfeit for every such offence, the sum of five pounds, and, upon conviction of the oath of one or more credible witnesses, before any of His Majesty's Justices of the Peace, the penalty of five pounds be levied by warrant, under the hand of the said Justice or Justices of the Peace, by distress and sale of the goods and chattles of the offender.

O B J E C T I O N S.

THE attorney in behalf of the defendant, will not admit the soldier who sells his linen, necessaries, or cloathing, &c. to be an evidence against the person who buys or receives them; neither will the attorney

allow what a foldier is provided with to belong to the King, except his red cloaths and hat; alledging, that shoes, linen, and stockings are the foldier's property, being bought out of his pay, so that he may do with them what he pleases.

A N S W E R.

EVERY foldier is provided with a compleat cloathing; the fund whereof arising from his pay (in which is included his cloaths, hat, shirts, shoes, and stockings) the three last species come within the denomination of small cloathing; but these being of a more perishable kind, the foldier is to be provided with them from time to time, as necessity may require; and, for that end, there is a deduction of six-pence out of his pay, pursuant to the fourteenth clause in the Mutiny Act.

Q U E R I E S.

WHETHER the foldier who sells, may not be admitted an evidence against the person who buys his cloathing, linen &c?

Whether linen, shoes, and stockings are not as much a part of his cloathing, and belonging to the King, as the cloaths and hat; the whole being bought out of the foldier's pay?

As there is a criminal prosecution, I am of opinion, that the foldier may be a witness against the person who buys and sells his cloathing: the linen, shoes, and stockings are, I conceive, within the intent of the recited clause; the detaining, buying, or exchanging them knowingly, is an offence punishable in the manner therein directed.

D. RIDER.

MEMORANDUM.

If the afore-recited clause is not clear and exprefs, with regard to the perfon buying the feveral fpecies of fmall cloathing before-mentioned, every foldier may embezzle them, or be feduc'd fo to do, by evil and defigning perfons.

Articles of Agreement, Forms of Leave of Absence, &c.

AGREEMENT between _____ of
 the _____ regiment, and
 of the faid regiment, whereby the faid
 _____ doth confent and agree to refign his com-
 miffion in favour of
 fo _____ and in confideration of the fum of
 _____ to be lodged in the hands of
 _____ and as foon as His Majefty's approbation
 and royal confent fhall be obtained, and the com-
 miffion made out, the faid fum of
 _____ is to be paid to the faid

To all which, the faid parties have interchangeably
 fet their hands and feals, this _____ day of

17

*A. B.*Witness, *C. D.**E. F.*

N. B Previous to the above agreement, the Com-
 manding-officer of the regiment at quarters is to
 be confulted; and, if it is approved of by him, the
 articles are then to be laid before the Commanding-
 officer of the regiment for his approbation.

* * There is no order for the above form.

What

What Officers are to pay for Tent, to prevent Disputes.

WE the following Officers of the re-
giment of foot, commanded by
being ordered to ascertain in what those who have
been appointed Officers since
ought to pay the predecessors for their tents, or
shares of tents: it is our opinion, that those Officers
who have succeeded to a tent, should pay *l.* and
those who have succeeded to half a tent, should pay

l. Dated

17

A. B. Captain.

C. D. Captain.

E. F. Captain.

*Form of Leave of Absence for Officers, granted in
America, in Time of War.*

By Esq. Colonel in the
or royal regiment, Brigadier-general and
Commander in Chief of His Majesty's Forces up
the river St. Lawrence.

Leave of absence is hereby granted to
of the regiment of foot, commanded by
to go to
for the recovery of his health.

A. B. Brigadier-general.

*Form to renew a Furlow when detained by contrary
Winds.*

THESE are to certify, that private
soldier in the regiment, and
company, now quartered at in

T 4

came and acquainted me, that he waited for a passage to being wind-bound. I therefore renew this furlow for the space of days, he behaving as becometh. Given under my hand this day of 17
A. B. of the regiment.

An Estimate of the Funeral Expences of a Soldier, as near as may be.

	s.	d.
To the Parson — — — —	2	0
To the Sexton — — — —	1	0
To the Grave-digger — — — —	1	0
For the pall — — — —	1	0
For a coffin — — — —	7	0
Total	12	0

Form of an Affidavit for receiving British Half-pay.

County of }

that he has not, between the 17 and the of 17 any other place or employment of profit, civil or military under His Majesty, besides his allowance of half-pay; as a reduced in Colonel A—'s late regiment of maketh oath, of.

Sworn before me
 this

day of

17

N. B. The proper periods for swearing the above, are, the twenty-fifth of June and the twenty-fifth of December; immediately after which, they should be delivered or transmitted to the Agent for half-pay.

State

STATE of BRITISH HALF-PAY.

	Horse		Drag ⁿ		Foot	
	s.	d.	s.	d.	s.	d.
Colonel	13	6	13	0	12	0
Lt. Col. } and Captain per day {	12	0	10	0	8	6
Major	11	6	8	0	7	6
Captain	7	0	5	6	5	0
Lieutenants	5	0	3	0	2	4
Cornet, Ensign & 2d. Lieut. Mar.	4	6	2	6	1	10
Quarter-master	3	0	2	0	2	0
Adjutant	2	0	2	0	2	0
Surgeon	2	0	2	0	2	0
Chaplain	3	4	3	4	3	4

Physician Hosp.	—	—	} Forces {	105.
Apothecary	—	—		5
Dep. Commissary	—	—		5

Widows' Pensions.

	Per Annum.
Colonel's	50l.
Lieutenant Colonel's	40
Major's	30
Captain's	26
Lieutenant's	20
Ensign, Cornet, Adjutant, Quarter-master, Surgeon, Chaplain,	16

N. B. The pensions are the same upon the Irish establishment, except the difference of currency.

STATE

STATE of IRISH HALF-PAY

For one day.

				Horse		Drag ⁿ		Foot	
				s.	d.	s.	d.	s.	d.
Colonel	} and Captain	—	{	19	0	15	8	12	3
Lt. Col.				12	6	9	8	8	3
Major				11	3	8	8	6	9
Captain	—	—	—	8	6	6	2	4	9
Lieutenants	—	—	—	5	3	3	1	2	3
Cornet, 2d. Lieut. and Ensign	—	—	—	4	3	2	7	1	9
Quarter-master	—	—	—	1	6	1	0	0	0
Chaplain	—	—	—	3	4	3	4	3	4
Adjutant	—	—	—	2	0	2	0	2	0
Surgeon	—	—	—	2	0	2	0	2	0

Remarks, with the State of the Deductions of the Half-pay.

It too frequently happens that the brave and deserving Officer, through age, wounds, or other infirmities, is rendered incapable of doing his duty, and therefore obliged to quit the service, though, perhaps, at that very time, the eldest of his rank in the corps: but, not having purchased his commissions, exchanges upon half pay, with the usual difference, from whence the following deductions are made; which will, it is hoped reach the ear of our gracious Sovereign.

Stopped at the Treasury —	{	Poundage 6	}	s.	d.
		Hospital 6		1	1½
		Pells — 1½			

At

	s.	d.
Brought over — — —	1	1½
At the Half-pay Office, for Agency, &c. —	0	6½
And, if not on the spot, he must also allow his Agent for receiving it — — —	0	6
Total per pound	2	2

Form of the Certificate to receive Irish Half-pay.

County of }

came this

day before me, and maketh oath, That he is no otherwise provided for, by any commission or employment, civil or military, in his Majesty's service, than by half-pay on the establishment of Ireland, and is not on any other establishment of half-pay.

Sworn before me

this

day of

17

N. B. The certificates should be dated and delivered into the Half-pay office immediately after the 31st of March, 30th of June, 30th of September, and 31st of December.

Form of a Beating Order.

G. R.

THESE are to authorize you, by beat of drum or otherwise, to raise so many volunteers in any county or part of our kingdom of Great Britain, as are or shall be wanting to recruit and fill up the respective companies of our regiment of foot, under your command, to the number allowed upon the establishment; and you are to cause the said volunteers, to be raised and levied as aforesaid,
to

to march under the command of such Commission or Non-commissioned Officer, in such numbers and at such times, to any place or port you shall think proper: and all Magistrates, Justices of the Peace, Constables, and all other Our civil Officers whom it may concern, are hereby required to be assisting unto you in providing quarters, impressing carriages, and otherwise as there shall be occasion; and for so doing, this Our order shall remain in force for twelve months from the date hereof, and no longer.

Given at Our Court at St. James's, this
day of 17 in the
year of Our reign.

By his Majesty's command,

The S P E E C H.

To all aspiring heroes bold, who have spirits above slavery and trade, and inclinations to become gentlemen, by bearing arms in his Majesty's regiment, commanded by the magnanimous let them repair to the drum-head [*Tow row dow.*] where each gentleman volunteer shall be kindly and honourably entertained, and enter into present pay and good quarters: besides which, gentlemen, for your further and better encouragement you shall receive one guinea advance; a crown to drink His Majesty King GEORGE's health; and when you come to join your respective regiment, shall have new hats, caps, arms, cloaths, and accoutrements, and every thing that is necessary and fitting to compleat a gentleman soldier.

God save their Majesties, and success to their arms.

Huzza! Huzza! Huzza!

STANDING ORDERS *for a Guard who mounts over Prisoners of War.*

A COUNTER-PART of the muster-roll of the prisoners of war, the Officer of the guard is to have, and the said roll is to be called over at the setting of the watch, or relief of the guard, or both, as the Officer of the guard is to direct. No prisoner is to be received, or admitted to liberty on parole, without previously acquainting the Commanding-officer. No person shall enter into the prison, or converse with the prisoners, without permission of the Officer of the guard, who, on such occasion, is to direct the necessary attendance. Centinels posted within-side of the prison are to be relieved every hour during the day-time, and every half-hour after dark; those without as customary, and not obey any orders but those of the Officer of the guard, Field-officer of the day, and Officer commanding. Patrols are alternately to go by a Serjeant or Corporal of the guard, during the night, to keep the centinels alert. The guard is to be mustered often, and the name of every absentee returned to the Commanding-Officer. It is to be expected that the Commissary's œconomy of the prisoners of war, regarding victuals and place of confinement, should be such as humanity, security, and the credit of government require.

Whatever centinel misbehaves on his post, will be severely punished: he is not to quit his post or arms on any pretence whatever, or sit down, whistle, sing, or smoke tobacco, nor suffer any-body to come into his centry-box, except the Officer and Non-commissioned Officers of the guard: to be very vigilant on his post, and exact in passing the word *All's well*; nor is he to suffer any people to assemble on his post, nor himself to hold the least conversation; but to be perfectly attentive to what he is planted there for, in which the Corporal, at posting, is fully to instruct him.

A Table for the several Duties in a Garrison, to be kept by the Town-Major, Town-Adjutant, and the Adjutants of the Corps.

[illegible]

ROSTER for detaching BATTALIONS.		HEADS OF EACH COLUMN.																															
NATIONS.	No. of Battalions of each Nation.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32
		1	6	8	11	12	16	18	21	22	27	29	32	33	37	39	42	43	48	50	53	54	58	60	63	64	69	71	74	75	79	81	84
English.	32	2	7	9		13	17	19	23	28	30		34	38	40		44	49	51	55	59	61		65	70	72							
Hanoverians.	24	3	10		14		20		24		31		35		41		45		52		56				66		73						
Prumans.	16	4			15				25				30				46				57				67								
Dutch.	8																																
Danes.	4	5							26								47								68								
Total	84																																

EXPLANATION

Of the preceding Table.

IN the first column are the names of nations; in the second the number of battalions each had; and, the highest number being thirty-two, there are thirty-two squares opposite to each nation: but, as the Danes have but four battalions, and only give in proportion to that number, all the squares except four are blanks: the same is observed in proportion to the Hanoverians, Prussians, and Dutch. The reason for dividing them will appear very plain: as four to thirty-two, so is one to eight: The dividing of the blank squares opposite to the Danes will appear very regular and easy; as eight to thirty-two, so is one to four; which is the Dutch. The Prussians and Hanoverians are proportioned in the same manner.

All the columns are numbered on the top, from one to thirty-two; and, as the columns, with the figures in them, are supposed to be battalions, I have numbered them from one to eighty-four, that being the whole number of battalions; ten of which I shall suppose ordered upon duty: in this case you begin column one, number one, and carry it on to the Prussians in column three, number ten, that being the endings of such order. If two battalions more are ordered after, the endings will be with the English in column five, number twelve; and so on according to the demand of future orders. Thus, I presume, I have made the nature and form of a roster to be understood by the youngest Officer in the service, and shall therefore spare myself the trouble of adding any similar plans.

A T A B L E O F P A R T I C U L A R S .

Particulars.	Serjeants.			Drum- mers.			Fifers.			Rank and File.			Grena- diers			Pioneers.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Cloathing. { Coat — —	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Waistcoat —	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Breeches —	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Hat and Lace	—	0	10	6	0	2	6	0	2	6	0	2	6	0	2	6	0	2
Cap, Grenadiers	—	1	12	0	0	14	0	0	14	0	0	14	0	0	14	0	0	14
Sash —	—	0	8	0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Knot —	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	1	0	—	—	—	—	—	—
Halbert —	—	0	9	0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Firelock —	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1	11	0	1	11	0	1	11	0
Ramrod —	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2	0
Bayonet —	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0
Sword and scabbard }	1	1	0	0	8	0	0	8	0	0	8	0	0	8	0	0	8	0
Shoulder Belt	—	—	—	—	0	5	0	—	—	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0
Slings	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

*Calculation of Expences which a Recruit must necessarily
be at for the first Year.*

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Two shirts — — — —	0	10	0
Two white stocks, or rollers, — —	0	1	0
A black stock — — — —	0	0	6
A stock buckle, or pair of clasps —	0	0	5
Two pair of stockings — —	0	4	0
One pair of strong shoes — — —	0	4	8
One pair of white linen spatterdashies —	0	2	3
Two pair of black spatterdashies — —	0	3	2
One pair of black tops — —	0	0	7
One pair of ticking drawers — — —	0	2	2
One pair of leather garters — —	0	0	4
Proportion of watch coat about — —	0	1	0
A cocade — — — —	0	0	6
A knapsack and sling — — — —	0	2	6
A haversack — — — —	0	1	0
An oil bottle and oil for his arms — —	0	0	7
A brush and picker — — — —	0	0	2
A worm and screw-key — — — —	0	0	4
A hammer cap and stopper — —	0	0	3
Shoe and garter buckles — — —	0	1	0
For shaving and hair powder — — —	0	3	0
Washing and cooking — — — —	0	19	0
Combs for his hair — — — —	0	0	6
Unavoidable extraordinaries on the march	0	6	0
Deduction for the Surgeon — —	0	4	4
<hr/>			
Total	3	9	3
Subsistence for 52 weeks	9	2	0
<hr/>			
Total subsistence in all	5	12	9

U

R.E.

*REMARKS proper to be made by the REVIEWING
OFFICER.*

OFFICERS.

PROPERLY armed, ready in their exercise, salute well, in good time, and with a good air; their uniform genteel. old, but still very good. A good corps, that makes a very handsome appearance.

MEN.

A very good body, well limbed, but some of them old, and wounded. Clean and well dressed; accoutrements well put on; very well sized in the ranks; the Serjeants expert in their duty, drummers perfect in their beatings, and fifers play correct.

EXERCISE.

In very good time, and with life; carry their arms well; march, wheel, and form well.

MANŒUVRES.

Performed with great exactness, in quick and slow time.

FIRINGS.

Six and thirty rounds, close and well.

By companies from the right and left to the center two rounds; twice from the center to the right and left, by companies; once by grand divisions, from the right and left to the center; by four right-hand companies, and left division of grenadiers, and the four left-hand companies, and the right division of grenadiers, one round; right wing of the battalion, and

and left wing, one round ; battalion obliquely to the right and to the left, one round each ; battalion to the front, one round by the above firings, advancing and retreating. Left-hand companies, and the right division of grenadiers, before they retreat by files ; and the four right-hand companies, and the left division of grenadiers ; when marched up to their intervals, one round each : in the square by the faces and companies, one round each : street-firing, advancing and retreating, one round each : a volley.

R E C R U I T S.

Such as will mend the regiment.

A R M S.

Good and clean kept ; halberds bad ; drums good ; a few swords wanting, and some bad.

A C C O U T R E M E N T S.

Good.

C L O A T H I N G.

Of year, but still pretty good and clean.

A C C O U N T S.

Kept regular.

C O M P L A I N T S.

None.

U N I F O R M.

Red, lapelled and faced with ;
waistcoats and breeches, buttons.

A very fine regiment, well appointed, well disciplined, compleat, and fit for service.

Return of Slops, &c. from on board his Majesty's Ship											17	
under the Command of A. B. of the												
Division.												
Stationed in												
Name.	Rank.	When last clothed.	When embarked.	When accounted to due.	Debtor.	Jackets.		Stocks.	Names of Places By whom they re-supplied.	Time when	Debtor.	Observations.
						Trowsers.						
						Shirts.						
						Black.						
						White.						
						Stockings						
						Spatterdashies.						
						Caps.						
						Names of Places By whom they re-supplied.						
						Month.						
						Year.						
						l. s. d.						

Return of Quarters through which the		Regiment of		has marched from		to		with the Number of Men and Horses they are capable of containing as a Marching Quarter.		Remarks on the Road where good or bad.	
Date.	Regiment.	County Town.	Quarters.	Contiguous Towns, &c. for enlarging Quarters.	Total of Troops in the Quarters and Enlargements.	Men.	Horses.	From	To	Miles.	
			Men.	Horses.	Towns, &c.	Men.	Horses.	Miles from	Head Quarters		

TRANSLATION OF

General M. DE MONTCALM'S EPITAPH.

HERE LIES

Lewis Joseph M. De Montcalm Gazon,
 Marquis of St. Veran's, Baron of Gabriaci,
 Knight of the Order of St. Lewis,
 Lieutenant-General of the French Army;
 Who, from his abilities as a senator and soldier,
 Bid fair for universal conquest :
 But, from his disposition, he loved nothing more
 than true praise :
 He had a happy judgment, well improved by letters :
 He went through every Character of a soldier,
 with an unspotted name :
 Perfectly skilled in every art of war, he knew
 when to improve advantages,
 And guard against the diversity of affairs.
 In Italy, Bohemia and Germany, he proved himself
 a diligent and indefatigable leader.
 All orders from superior Officers, he executed
 with such alacrity and judgment, as proved him
 equal to those that issued them.
 Now grown eminent, from his services,
 He was sent to protect the province of Canada,
 Where, with a handful of men, he more than once
 repulsed superior bodies, in number, of the enemy, and
 took fortifications, best supplied with men and stores.
 Cold, want of provisions, watching,
 and every other difficulty,

U 4

He

He bore with a manly fortitude;
And, unmindful of himself, was ever attentive to the
Distresses of those who served under him.
As an enemy, he was severe; but, as a conqueror,
generous and mild.

By perseverance, experience, and dispatch,
he made up for the want of force.

By his abilities in the cabinet and field,
he gloriously supported, for four years,
the power of that colony.

After having long baffled the joint efforts
of an immense army,
commanded by an able and enterprising General,
and of a powerful fleet,
provided with every implement of war,
and, his first force being diminished by skirmishes,
he was, at length, wounded,
in the first general action,
and died in support of the religion he ever professed,
universally regretted by his friends,
and lamented even by his enemies,
on the 14th of September, 1759,
and
in the 48th year of his age.

Truly grieved for the loss, the French deposited
the remains of this best of Generals,
in a hollow of the ground, made by the falling and
bursting of a bomb-shell,
and recommended the preservation of them
to the generous faith of the enemy.

I must candidly confess that much honour is here done, and that much is due, to the memory of Montcalm: but heartily glad I am to say, no Epitaph is needful to commemorate that piety, ability, politeness, justice, and generosity which immortalised WOLFE. While the glorious conquest of Canada illustrates the annals of England, all those virtues which combine to form a Christian and a Hero, will irradiate his name, and recommend an imitation of his like conduct to the latest posterity.

He not only conquered, but out-generalled, Montcalm upon every occasion; or what must have been the fate of his little army, whom all the force of Canada was assembled to oppose? But so apt was his military capacity to form, and steadfast his resolution to execute, the greatest designs; his penetration to discover, and activity to defeat, the deepest machinations; that, from the unshaken confidence of a few valiant troops in his wisdom, and their love to his person for a constant exertion of his compassion and liberality, assisted by the laudable emulation of those brave Officers who commanded under him; he, with a handful of well-disciplined men, obtained that surprising and complete victory which determined the fate of Canada; where every Officer breathed the spirit of a GRANBY, and all their soldiers behaved like BRITONS.

“ In this decisive action, (says the History of the late War, p. 212.) our troops lost about five hundred men; on the side of the enemy, at least fifteen hundred were killed: but, however glorious this victory was, and however important in its consequences, it must be admitted that it was very dearly bought. Soldiers may be raised; Officers will be formed by experience; but the loss of a genius in war, is a loss we know not how to repair. The death of Wolfe was
indeed

indeed grievous to his country, but to himself the most happy that can be imagined, and the most to be envied by all those who have a true relish for military glory. Undebted to family or connections, unsupported by intrigue or faction, he had accomplished the whole business of life, at a time when others are only beginning to appear; and, at the age of thirty-five, without feeling the weakness of age, or the vicissitude of fortune, having satisfied his honest ambition, having compleated his character, having fulfilled the expectations of his country, he fell at the head of his conquering troops, and expired in the arms of Victory.

“ The circumstances that attended the death of such a person are too interesting to be passed over in silence, and were indeed such as bespoke the whole tenor of his life. He first received a wound in his head; but, that he might not discourage his troops, he wrapped it up with his handkerchief, and encouraged his men to advance: soon after he received another ball in his belly; this also he dissembled, and exerted himself as before: when he received a third in his breast, under which he at last sunk, and suffered himself, unwillingly, to be carried behind the ranks: as he lay struggling with the anguish and weakness of three grievous wounds, he seemed only solicitous about the fortune of the battle: he begged of one, who attended him, to support him to view the field; but, as he found that the approach of death had dimmed and confused his sight, he desired an Officer, who was by him, to give him an account of what he saw: the Officer answered, that the enemy seemed broken: he repeated his question a few minutes after, with much anxiety, when he was told, that the enemy was totally routed, and that they fled on all sides: ‘ Then,’ said he, ‘ I am satisfied;’ and immediately expired.”

“ With,

“ Without the same advantages, the enemy also sustained a heavy loss in this battle, which, no doubt, accelerated their defeat. M. De Montcalm, Commander in Chief, was killed on the spot; an Officer who had done the highest services to his country, throughout the whole American war, and, in this last scene of it, supported his reputation of a wise, experienced General; all his dispositions having been made with the utmost prudence and regularity, both before and in the engagement. It is very remarkable, that, in both armies, the first in command fell in the action, and the second were dangerously wounded: but General Monckton happily recovered; the French Officer died soon after the battle.”

MISCELLANEOUS ADVICE.

IT is a sign of great prudence to be willing to receive instruction: the most intelligent persons sometimes stand in need of it.

Endeavour to be first in your profession, neither let any one go before you in doing well: nevertheless do not envy the merits of another, but improve your own talents.

Courage is that noble faculty of the soul which impels us to sacrifice every personal advantage, even life itself, to an ardent desire of faithfully discharging our duty: but the true hero is neither rash nor cruel; he is prudent, though active; resolute, though humane; and, when the honour of his country demands a chastisement of its enemies, universal benevolence accompanies his virtuous resentment.

It is study that opens our understanding and excites our application: It is by that, we supply our want of experience; by that, acquire those qualities which form great Officers; and, by that, we open to ourselves the road to preferment.

Never

* * * * *

Never reveal your secrets to any, except it is as much their interest to keep them, as it is yours they should be kept: Trust only thyself and another shall not betray thee.

From the experience of others do thou learn wisdom: and from their failings correct thine own faults.

Be not diverted from your duty by any idle reflections the silly part of the world may make upon you: for their censures are not in your power, and consequently should be no part of your concern.

By a virtuous emulation the spirit of a good soldier is exalted within him: he panteth after fame, and rejoiceth as a racer to run his course.

Let not your zeal for a cause push you into a hazardous engagement: precipitation ruins the best-laid designs; whereas, patience ripens the most difficult, and renders the execution of them easy.

As one that runneth in haste, and leapeth over a fence, may fall into a pit on the other side, which he doth not see: so is the man that plungeth suddenly into an action, before he has considered the consequences thereof.

A passionate temper renders a man unfit for advice; deprives him of his reason, and robs him of all that is great or noble in his nature; it maketh him unfit for conversation, destroys friendship, changes justice into cruelty, and turns all order into confusion.

A warm heart requires a cool head: Courage without conduct, is like fancy without judgment; all sail and no ballast.

If an action be ever so glorious in itself, it ought not to pass for great, if it be not the effect of wisdom and design.

Necessity is, in war, as every where else, the mother of invention, when one has firmness enough not to be discouraged.

It is said of Agricola, that he never gloried in any thing he did; but, as an agent, referred the good success of his fortune to the person that employed him; and so, by his discretion and modesty, freed himself from envy, and lost no part of his deserved praise.

It is not the receiving honour that delighteth the noble mind; its pride is the deserving of it.

There is but one solid pleasure in the military life, and that is our duty: how miserable then, how unwise, how unpardonable are they, who make that one a pain!

It is now no longer a doubt, that war, like other arts, is to be studied in the closet and field; a thousand examples have proved, that an Officer who applies himself both these ways, has an infinite advantage over another, who has not made them his study.



We should chuse a friend endued with virtue, as a thing in itself lovely and desirable, which consists in a sweet and obliging temper of mind, and a lively readiness in doing good offices.

To owe an obligation to a worthy friend, is a happiness, and can be no disparagement.

Gratitude preserves old friendship, and procures new.

If a friend tell thee of thy faults or failings, he deserves the greatest thanks: for it is a sure sign of a singular friendship to venture the hazard of thy displeasure to do thee good.

A true friend unbosoms freely, advises justly, assists readily, adventures boldly, takes all patiently, defends courageously, and continues a friend unchangeable.



To be ever active in laudable pursuits, is the distinguished character of a man of merit.

A man

A man of virtue is an honour to his country; a glory to humanity; a satisfaction to himself; and a benefactor to the whole world: he is rich, without oppression or dishonesty; charitable, without ostentation; courteous, without deceit; and brave, without vice.

A man that hath no virtue in himself, envieth it in others.

Sell not virtue to purchase wealth.



Among the many fashionable vices which afflict mankind, none are greater than gaming: it is big with the loss of time, reputation, health, fortune, and temper; the ruin of families; defrauding of creditors; and, what is often the effect of it, loss of life.

Destiny has decreed all men to die ; but to die well is the particular privilege of the virtuous and good.

What is honour, fame, wealth, and power; when compared with the expectation of a being without end, and a happiness adequate to that end? How poor will these things seem at our last hour; and how joyful will that man be, who hath led an honest virtuous life, and travelled to Heaven through the roughest ways of poverty, affliction, and content. !

As a good conclusion is an honour to our whole life; so an ill one casts back infamy, and fullies all that went before.

THE

FRONTISPIECE.



Military Dictionary.

I 7 6 8.

A D

ADJUTANT-GENERAL, forms the several details of duty of the army, with the Brigade-majors, and keeps an exact state of each brigade and regiment, with a roll of the Lieutenant-generals, Major-generals, Colonels, Lieutenant-colonels, and Majors. He every day at head quarters receives orders from the General Officer of the day, and distributes them to the Majors of brigades, from whom he receives the number of men they are to furnish for the duty of the army, and informs them of any detail which may concern them. On marching days he accompanies the General to the ground of the camp. He makes a daily report of the situation of all the posts placed for the safety of the army, and of any changes made in their posts. In a day of battle the Adjutant-general sees the infantry drawn up, after which he places himself by the General to receive any

A D

orders. In a siege he visits the several posts and guards of the trenches, and reports their situation and how circumstanced: he gives and signs all orders for skirmishing parties (if time permits) and has a Serjeant from each brigade to carry any orders which he may have to send.

ADJUTANT, is an officer to assist the Major. He receives orders from the Brigade-major, if in camp; and when in garrison, from the Town-major: after he has carried them to his Colonel or Officer commanding the regiment; he then assembles the Serjeant-major, Drum-major, Fife-major, with a Serjeant and corporal of each company. If convoys, parties, detachments, or guards, are to be furnished, he gives the number which each company are to furnish, and hour and place for their assembling: he must keep an exact roster and roll of duties, and have a perfect knowledge of all manœuvres, &c.

* A

ADVANCE-

A M

ADVANCE-FOSS, is a moat, or ditch of water round the glacis or esplanade of a place of arms, to prevent a surprise: being drained, it serves for a trench to the besiegers, and therefore is not now approved of.

AFFUT, the French name of a gun carriage; its only distinction from all other carriages is, that it belongs to a gun.

AID-DE-CAMP, is an officer attached to the person of a General-officer, to carry his orders. His employment is of importance, tho' often intrusted with young officers, without experience or capacity, which I am sorry to say; for a moment lost in a battle, may change the face of affairs: it is necessary in that case, that he who carries them, has comprehended the spirit in which the General meant them.

ALARM, is a sudden challenge to arms, upon an apprehension of danger from an enemy, or of fire. A sudden alarm is often occasioned by the neglect of centries; and sometimes it has been done, to try the readiness of the troops.

ALARM-POST, is the place appointed for the assembling of a regiment, troop, or company.

AMBUSCADE, or ambush, is a lurking party in a wood, or other convenient place, to

A N

surprize an enemy. To discover an ambush, or fall into one, are plain.

AMMUNITION, implies all sorts of warlike stores.

Ammunition Waggon, is a four wheel carriage with shafts: the sides of it are railed in with raves and staves, and lined with wicker-work, so as to carry bread, and all sorts of tools.

Ammunition Cart, is a two-wheel carriage with shafts; the sides of which, as well as the fore and hind parts, are inclosed with boards instead of wicker-work.

Ammunition-Bread, is carried along with an army; each loaf generally weighs six pounds.

ANGLE, is explained in the following definition:

1st, *Angle of the centre*, is that made by three lines, drawn from the center of the extremes of any side of the polygon.

2d, *Angle of the polygon*, is the angle made by the meeting of two sides of the polygon, and is the same with the angle of the gorge.

3d, *Angle of the curtain*, or of the flank, is the angle formed by the meeting of a flank and a curtain.

4th, *Angle of the shoulder*; two is formed by one face and one flank.

5th, *Flank-Angle*, is the meeting of two faces.

6th, *Angle of the tenail*,
or

A P

or flanking angle, is composed of the lines of defence and the curtain.

7th, *Angle, forming the flank*, is an angle composed of one flank and one demi gorge.

8th, *Angle, forming the face*, is the inward Angle, composed of one flank and one face.

9th, *Angle of the moat*, is that which is formed before the centre of the curtain, by the exterior line of the foss or moat.

10th, *Angle-saillant, or sally-angle*, or what advances with its points towards the country; such is the angle of the counterscarp, before the point of a bastion.

11th, *Angle-reentrant*, or re-entering angle, is what points inwards to the body of the place; such is the angle of the counterscarp before the center of the curtain.

ANTESTATURE, is a traverse or retrenchment, hastily made of gabions or palisades, to stop an enemy that is gaining ground. This is called, to dispute ground, or lose it inch by inch.

APPROACHES, are the trenches, places of arms, lodgments, sap, gallery, and generally all works, whereby the besiegers advance towards a place besieged.

APRON, is a sheet of lead, which covers the touch-hole of a gun.

A R

ARMOUR, defensive Armour, that which covers the body, warlike harness.

ARMS, are all sorts of weapons used for offence or defence; such as sword, halberd, esponton, bayonet, firelock, carabine, and pistol.

Arms, a place of arms in a garrison, at a siege are small redoubts bordered with a parapet, containing a small body of men, to make good the trenches against the sallies of the besieged.

ARMY, is a body of troops, consisting of horse, foot, and dragoons, with artillery, provision, baggage, &c. It is divided into brigades, commanded by an able experienced officer.

Flying-army, is a small body sent out to harass the enemy, intercept convoys, prevent the enemy's incursions, cover its own army, or garrison, and keep the enemy in continual motion.

Wings of an Army, are the troops encamped on the flanks; they are mostly horse and dragoons, and are called the right wing and left.

ARRIERS, is a deduction made from the Officers according to their full pay, and the ballance should be paid at least once a year, in order to enable them to buy new regimentals against the review.

ARRIERS, Non-commissioned Officers and soldiers have also; and are accounted with,

A R

and their ballance paid, every two months.

ARTILLERY, is a magazine of all sorts of arms and provisions for an army: such as cannon, mortars, bombs, balls, petards, grenades, small balls, powder, match, all sorts of hand tools, planks, boards, ropes, coals, tallow, pitch, rozin, sulphur, saltpetre, quick match, all kinds of fireworks, pontoons, &c. The attendance are conductors, bombadiers, gunners, matrosses, pioneers, pontoonmen, carpenters, wheelwrights, smiths, coopers, tinmen, and collar-makers, &c.

Artillery regiment, is composed of three battalions (and a Captain of Cadets, of which the Master-general is always Captain) each of them commanded by a Colonel, Lieutenant-colonel, and Major; the Master-general of the Ordnance is Commander in chief; the Lieutenant-general, Commander in second; and the three Colonels are called Colonel-commandant each of his battalion; each company contains Commissioned Officers, matrosses, gunners and bombardiers.

Artillery, equipage, is a quantity of guns, mortars, shot, and shells, with all necessary stores made for a campaign, or an expedition by land or sea.

Artillery-Park, is a place appointed in the rear of both lines of the army, for en-

A T

camping the artillery. The guns are in one line; the ammunition-waggons make two or three lines, the pantons and tumboils make the last lines, and all is surrounded with a rope, which form the park; the gunners and matrosses encamp on the flanks; bombardiers, pantomen, and artificers in the rear.

ASSAULT, or storm, is a sudden and violent attack, made uncovered, on the part of the rampart, where a breach has been made.

ASSEMBLY, is the second beating of a drum before a march, provided the General has beat the first.

If part of a garrison only marches, the first beat is then the Assembly.

ATTACK, is the manner and disposition made by an army, or a great party, to drive an enemy out of a fortified place, or of any kind of strong situation.

Attacks. There are commonly two, (each commanded by an experienced Officer) and they have communications one with another by lines or trenches, running parallels to the polygon of the place, that they may not be enfilated, and are called the parallel, the boyau, or the lines of communication.

The rear of an attack is where it begins; and the front, or head, that part next to the place.

False-

B A

False-attacks, are never carried on with such life and briskness as the real; the design of them being to favour the real attacks, by amusing the enemy, and obliging the garrison to a greater duty.

AXES, are useful in an army, for cutting ways through woods, trees to make bridges, and for mending the roads.

Pick-ax, is a tool to dig up ground that is too hard for the spade.

B.

BACULE, is a gate like a pit-fall, with a counterpoise before the corps de guards, advanced near the gates, which is supported by two great stakes.

BAGGAGE-WAGGONS, are those in which the Officers and regiments baggage are carried.

BALL, bullet, or shot, is of iron or lead, to be fired out of pistol, firelock, carbine, or cannon, and is of different sizes.

Red-hot balls, are heated in a forge, standing near a gun. The gun being loaded with powder, and wadded with a green turf, is spunged with a wet sponge, and laid at a small elevation; that the ball which is taken out of the forge with a long ladle, may slide down, the gunner being ready to fire.

B A

Fire-balls are made of a composition of meal, powder, and sulphur, salt-petre, pitch, &c. for firing houses.

BAND, is a hoop of iron, used about the carriage of a gun.

Band of Musick, which a corps keep up at their own expence.

Band of Pensioners, are a company of gentlemen, who receive a yearly allowance.

BANDELIERS, are small cases of wood, covered with leather, holding cartridges of powder for the firelock.

BANQUETTE, is a kind of step made in the rampart of a work near the parapet, for the troops to stand upon, in order to fire over the parapet; it is generally three feet high, as many broad, and about four and a half lower than the parapet.

BARBET: When the parapet of a work is but three feet high, or the breast-work of a battery is only of such height, that the guns may fire over it without being obliged to make embrasures, it is said the guns fire in Barbet.

BARRACKS, a building to lodge Officers and soldiers in.

BARRACADE, is a term sometimes used for a fence of a palisade.

BARRELS, are for several uses in the artillery; as for

A 3 powder,

B A

powder, small shot, flints, sulphur, quick-match, &c.

BARRIER, is a gate made of wooden bars, about five feet long, perpendicular to the horizon, which is kept together by two long bars going a-cross, and another crossing diagonally: they are used to stop the cut that is made through the esplanade, before the gate of a town.

BASE, or **BASIS**, is the foundation of a work. Basis of a rampart is when it joins the ground, on which it stands: Basis of a parapet, is where it joins the top of a rampart.

Base of a gun, is the same with the breech of a gun, and is that solid piece of metal behind the chase towards the cascable: the great ring behind the touch-hole or vent, is called the basering, and the mouldings behind are called the base, or breach-mouldings.

BASKETS, small baskets are used in sieges, on the parapet of the trench being filled with earth; they are about one foot and half high, one foot and half diameter at top, and eight or ten inches at bottom; so that, when set together, there is a sort of embrasures left at their bottom, through which they fire.

BASTION, is a part of the inner inclosure of a fortification, making an angle to-

B A

wards the field, and consists of two faces, two flanks, and an opening towards the center of the place, called the Gorge.

A Bastion, is said to be full, when the level ground within is even with the rampart; that is, when the inside is quite level, the parapet being only more elevated than the rest.

A Bastion, is said to be empty, when the level ground within is much lower than the rampart, or that part next to the parapet, where the troops are placed to defend the bastion.

Bastion-detached, is that which separates or cuts off from the bastion of the place, and differs from a half moon, whose rampart and parapet are lower, and not so thick as those of the place, because it has the same proportion with the works of the place.

Bastion-double, is a bastion, and is sometimes in the nature of a cavalier.

Demi-bastion, is composed of only one face, one flank, and one demi-gorge.

BATTALION, is a body of foot composed of several companies, armed with fire-lock, bayonet, and sword. In the late war no particular number of companies was ascertained to compose a battalion; but since the last reduction nine companies compose a bat-

B A

a battalion. Eight battalion companies, and one of grenadiers.

Battalion ready for exercise.

See plan 1.

Battalion in firing order.

See plan 2.

Battalion disciplined, when they are expert with their arms, ready at their firings and manœuvres, march, wheel, and form well, silent, steady, and solid under arms.

Angles of a battalion, are such as are made by the last men, at the ends of the ranks and files.

BATTERY, is a work made to place guns or mortars on it. It consists of an epaulment or breast-work, of about eight feet high, and eighteen or twenty thick: when it is made for guns, openings or embrasures are made in it, for the guns to fire through. The mass of the earth that is betwixt two embrasures, is called the *Merlin*; the platform of a battery is called a floor of planks, and hath sleepers to keep the wheels of the guns from sinking in the earth.

Cross-Batteries, are such whose shot meet at the same place, and form an angle. The advantage of such batteries is, that the one beats down what the other shakes.

Battery-de-enfilade, is what batters obliquely; *Battery-de-reverse*, is what plays upon the enemies back; *Comrade-*

B E

Batteries are those which play upon the same place. To raise a battery is the business of an engineer; to ruin a battery is to blow it up, or nail the guns.

BATTLE, is the engagement between two armies.

Battle-array, is the order in which an army is drawn up, and called a line of battle.

BAYONET, is a short weapon, made with iron, and screws on over the muzzle of the firelock.

BEATING-ORDER, to empower the Colonel or Officer commanding a corps, to send out recruiting parties, and to provide quarters, &c.

BED, or stool, of a mortar, is a solid piece of oak, in form of a Pafeltelipiped, bigger or less, according to the nature of the mortar, hollowed a little in the middle to receive the breech and half the trunnions: on the sides of the bed are fixed the cheeks or brackets, by four bolts of iron.

Bed of a gun, is a piece of a plank, laid within the cheeks of the carriage, upon the middle transum, for the breech of the gun to rest on.

BETTERES, are thick round pieces of wood, of a foot and a half long, and eight or ten inches diameter, having a handle of about four feet long: the use of them are for beating, or rather setting the earth of a parapet, or about

pallisades,

B L

pallisades, by lifting it up a foot or two, and letting it fall with its own weight; they are likewise called **stampers**, and, by **paviors**, **rammers**.

BERM, is a little space or path, of six or eight feet broad, between the ditch and the parapet; when it is only made of turf, to prevent the earth from rolling into the ditch, and serves likewise to pass and repass.

BILLS, are a sort of hand-tools carried along with the artillery, for the use of the army, for cutting ways thro' hedges, &c.

BIOVAC, is a night guard, performed by the whole army, when there is any kind of danger from the enemy.

BLINDS, are properly every thing that covers the besiegers from the enemy; such as wool-packs, fascines, chandeliers, mantelets, gabions, sand-bags, and earth baskets.

BLOCKADE, is the blocking up of a place, by posting troops at all the avenues leading to it, to keep supplies of men or provisions from getting into it; thereby proposing to starve it out, without making any regular attacks upon it; this is called forming a blockade. To raise a blockade, is to force the troops that keep the place blockaded up from their posts. To turn a siege into a blockade, is plain.

BLUNDERBUSS, is a short

B O

fire-arm, with a large bore, very wide at the mouth, carrying several pistol-balls or slugs, proper for the defence of a barrack, stair-case, or door: The shortest sort of them are called **musketoons**.

BODY, or main body of an army, are the troops encamped betwixt the two wings, and are generally infantry.

BOLTS, are of several sorts: those that go betwixt the cheeks of a gun-carriage, to strengthen the transoms, are called the **transum bolts**: the large nobs of iron on the cheek of a carriage, which keep the hand-pike from sliding, when it is poising up the breech of the piece, are called the **prize-bolts**: the two short bolts that, when put one in each, and of an English mortar carriage, serve to traverse her, are called **traverse-bolts**: the bolts that go through the cheeks of a mortar, and by the help of coins keep her fixed at the elevation given her, are called **bracket-bolts**; and the four bolts that fasten the brackets, or cheeks of a mortar, are called **bed-bolts**.

BOMB, is a great shell of cast iron, with a large vent to receive a fuse. This fuse is made of wood, and drove full of a composition of meal, powder, sulphur, and saltpetre: when a bomb is filled with powder, the fuse is drove

drove into the vent, within an inch of the head, and pitched over to preserve it; when the bomb is put into the mortar, the fuse is uncapped, and salted with meal powder, which takes fire from the flash of the powder in the chamber, and burns all the while the bomb is in the air: when the composition is spent, it fires the powder in the bomb, with a greater violence. Bombs are from fifty to five hundred pounds weight.

BOMBARDIERS, are those employed about mortars; they drive the fuse, fix the shell, and load and fire the mortar; they work with the fire-workmen, and are the third rank of a private man in a company of artillery.

BOMBARDMENT, is when a great number of shells are thrown into a place, to ruin and destroy the buildings.

BONNET, is a small work, consisting of two faces, having only one parapet, with two rows of palisades, of about ten or twelve feet distance: it is generally raised before the salient angle of the counter-scarp, and has a communication with the covert way, by a trench cut through the glacis, and palisades on each side.

BOYAU, or branch of a trench, is a line or particular trench, made parallel to the defence of the place, to avoid being flanked or enfiladed.

A Boyau, when there are two attacks made upon a place, serves as a line of communication betwixt them. The parapet of a boyau, being still turned towards the place besieged, serves also for a line of contravallation, to hinder sallies and defend the workmen.

BREACH, is an opening, made in a wall or rampart, with cannon or mines, sufficiently wide for a body of troops to enter the works, and drive the besieged out of it. To make the attack the more difficult, they sow the breach with crow-feet, or stop it with chevaux-de-frize.

BREAK-GROUND, is the first opening of trenches against a place; which is done in the night time, by the advantage of some rising ground, hollow-way, or any thing that can cover the men from the enemy's fire.

BREVET-OFFICER, is one who, having a superior commission from his Majesty, than that in his own corps, takes rank by it, when joined, or doing duty with other corps, whether of horse, foot, or dragoons.

BRIDGE, is a conveniency made for passing rivers, and is of several sorts; though, in the late war the most of them were made of tin-boats, and planks laid over them. See Plan 9.

Bridge, in gunnery, is a term,

B R

term given to two pieces of timber, which go between the two middle transoms of a gun carriage, on which rests the bed.

Bridges of communication, are made over the river; by which two armies, or two forts, which are separated by this river, have free communication one with the other.

Draw-bridges, are made of several fashions, but the most common are made with plyers, twice the height of the gate, and a foot diameter; the inner square is traversed with a St. Andrew's cross, which serves for a counterpoise; and the chains which hang from the other extremities of the plyers to lift up, or let down the bridge, are of iron or brass.

Floating, or flying bridges, are made of two small bridges, laid one upon the other, so that the uppermost, by the help of ropes and pulleys, is forced forwards, till the end is joined to the place designed.

BRIGADE. An army, is divided into brigades of horse, and brigades of foot. A brigade of horse is a body of four or six squadrons: a brigade of foot, consists of four, five, or six battalions; the eldest brigade has the right of the first line; and the second, the right of the second line; the two next take the left of the two lines, and the youngest hath the centre. The

B R

battalions which compose a brigade, observe the same order.

Brigade of Infantry, consists in general of four battalions; being told, first, second, third, fourth, and eight field pieces.

Brigade-major, is an Officer appointed to act to a particular brigade. The most ingenious and expert Captains should be chosen for this post: they are to wait at orderly time to receive the parole, and deliver the orders which they carry, first to their proper General, and afterwards to the Adjutants of regiments, at the head of the brigade, where they regulate together the guards, parties, detachments, and convoys, and appoint them the hour and place of rendezvous, at the head of the brigade, where the Brigade-major takes and marches them to the place of the general rendezvous. He ought to know the state and condition of the brigade, and keep a roll of the Colonels, Lieutenant-colonels, Majors, and Adjutants. When a detachment is to be made, the General of the day, gives his orders to the Brigade-major, how many men and Officers each brigade must furnish, and they again to the Adjutants of the regiments, how many each battalion is to send, which the Adjutants

Adjutants divide amongst the companies. The complement each regiment is to furnish, are taken by the adjutant, at the head of each regiment, at the hour appointed, who delivers them to the Brigademajor, at the head of the brigade.

BRIGADIER, is a General Officer, who has the command of a brigade. The eldest Colonels are generally advanced to this post. He visits all the out-guards and posts of the army, and at night takes the orders from the Major-general of the day, and delivers it to the Majors of brigades, who attend at orderly time. They march at the head of their brigades, and are allowed a guard.

Brigadiers, and *Sub-Brigadiers*, are posts in the horse-guards.

BRINGERS-UP. The whole last rank of a battalion, being the last men of each file, are called Bringers-up.

C.

CADET, is a young gentleman, who, to attain some knowledge in the art of war, and, in expectation of preferment, chuses at first to carry arms as a private man. Cadet differs from a volunteer, because he takes pay, which is no more than a private man; but a Cadet serves without pay, except in the Royal Artillery.

CAISSON, is a chest of

wood, holding four or six bombs, sometimes filled only with powder, and buried by the besiegers under ground, to blow up a work which the besiegers are like to be masters of; as thus, after the bonnet is blown up by the mine, they lodge a caisson under its ruins, and the enemy being advanced to make a lodgment there, they fire the caisson by the help of a saucers or pudding, and blow up that post a second time.

CALIBER, is a term in gunnery, signifying the diameter, or wideness of a piece of ordnance.

Caliber-compasses, are compasses used by gunners, for taking the diameters of the several pieces of ordnance, or of bombs, bullets, &c. Their legs are therefore circular, on an arch of brass, whereon is marked the inches and half inches, to shew how far the points of the compasses are opened asunder.

CAMP, is the spot of ground occupied by an army, for a night or more; and where they pitch their tents, &c.

CAMPAIGN, is that part of the summer betwixt the army taking the field, and their returning to garrison: an Officer or soldier is said to have made a campaign, that has been in the field; the opening and close of the campaign, is the army's taking the

C A

the field, or returning to garrison.

CANNON. See **GUN**.

CANTEEN, is a tin vessel used by the soldiers to carry their drink or water in.

CAPONIER, is a passage made from one work to another of ten or twelve feet wide, covered on each side by a parapet terminating in a slope or glacis: thus, when the ditch is dry, the passage from the curtain to the ravelin, or that from the covert-way to the arrows or detached redoubts, are called **Caponiers**.

They are often single parapets, raised on the entrance of a ditch, before the ravelin, to place small cannons and men behind them, to dispute the passage over that ditch.

CAPITAL, of a work, is an imaginary line, which divides that work into two equal and similar parts.

CAPITULATION, is the agreement made by the besieged with the besiegers, on what condition the place is to surrender: the chamade being beat, all hostilities cease on both sides; if the capitulation be agreed to and signed, hostages on both sides are delivered, for the exact performance of the articles.

CAPTAIN, commands a troop or company; he ought to be very diligent, and preserve good order among the

C A

men, to know their names and dispositions, what every man is capable of, to visit them in their tents, quarters, or infirmary; to see what is wanting, to pay them well, and see them accounted with for their arrears and stoppages every two months; (for short accounts make long friends); cause them to keep themselves clean and neat in their cloaths, shoes, stockings, &c. and to have their arms and accoutrements in perfect good order: and, when marching by companies or divisions, keep them at their proper distance for forming.

Captain of a company of light infantry, was appointed to most regiments in the late war; they were composed of both Officers and soldiers, whose health, strength and activity could most be depended upon.

Captain of battle-axe-guards, generally obtains the rank of Colonel: the two Lieutenants have the rank of Captains.

Captain-Lieutenant, is he who commands the Colonel's troop or company.

CARABINIERS, is a regiment of horse, upon the Irish establishment, commanded by Major-general Harvey.

CARABINE, is a fire-arm, shorter than a firelock; they are carried by the light horse, hanging at a belt.

- **CAR-**

CARCASS, is an invention of an oval form, made of ribs of iron, afterwards filled with a composition of meal-powder, salt-petre, sulphur, glass, shavings of horn, pitch, turpentine, tallow, and linseed-oil, and then coated over with a pitched cloth; it is primed with meal-powder and quick-match, and fired out of a mortar: the design of it is to set houses on fire. For lifting it up to put it into the mortar, it has two small cords fixed to the sides of it.

CARRIAGE, is a general term, for waggons, carts, litters, &c.

Carriage of a cannon, is a long, narrow cart, invented for marching of cannon; and for the more convenient using them in action, they are made of two planks of wood, commonly once and a half the length of the gun.

CARRIAGE. See *Ammunition Cart*.

BLOCK-CARRIAGE, is a cart made on purpose for carrying of mortars and their beds from one place to another.

Truck-carriages, are two short planks of wood, supported on two axle-trees, having four trucks or wheels of solid wood, about a foot and a half, or two foot diameter, for carrying mortars or guns upon a battery, where their own carriages cannot go, and are drawn by men.

CARTEL, an agreement

between Princes, Generals, Governors, or Commanding Officers at war for exchange of prisoners.

CARTOUCH, is a case of wood, about three inches thick at bottom, girt round with marlin, holding about four hundred musquet-balls, besides six or eight balls of iron, of a pound weight; it is fired out of a hobit, a small sort of mortar, and is very proper for defending a pass.

A new sort is made, much better than the former, of a globular form, and filled with ball of a pound weight; others were then made for the guns, being of ball of half or quarter pound weight, according to the nature of the gun, tied in form of a bunch of grapes, on a tom-pion of wood, and coated over; these were made in the room of the partridge-shot, and exceed them very far, as some of the French battalions experienced at the battle of Blenheim.

CARTRIDGE, is a case of brown paper, holding the exact charge of a fire-arm; those for musquets, carabines, or pistols, hold both the powder and ball for the charge.

Cartridge-box, is a case of wood or turned tin, covered with leather, holding thirty rounds of powder and ball; is wore upon a belt and hangs a little higher than the pocket-hole.

C A

CASCABAL, is the knob of metal behind the breech of a cannon; the diameter of it is the diameter of the bore of the piece; the neck of the cascabel is what joins it to the breech of the moulding.

CASEMENT, is a work made under the rampart, like a cellar or cave, with loopholes to place guns in it, and is bomb proof.

CASKS, or **BARRELS**, are used in the army, for carrying meal to be laid up in magazines, or along with the army, for baking bread for the troops.

CASTLE OF DEFENCE, a place strong either by art or nature. whether in a city or country.

CASTRAMETATION, the art of measuring or tracing out the form of a camp on the ground.

CAVALRY, are regiments of horse and dragoons, and encamps on the wings of an army.

CAVALIER, is a work raised generally within the body of the place, ten or twelve feet higher than the rest of the works; their most common situation is within the bastion, and made much in the same form; sometimes they are also placed in the gorges, or on the middle of the curtain, they are then made in the form of an horse-shoe, only somewhat flatter.

The use of Cavaliers is to

C A

command all the adjacent works and country about it; they are seldom or never made but when there is an hill or rising ground, which overlooks some of the works.

CAVIN, is a natural hollow, fit to lodge a body of troops: it is of great use to the besiegers; for, by the help of such a place, they can open trenches, make places of arms, or keep guards of horse, without great danger.

CAZERNs, or **BARRACKS**, are lodgings built in garrison towns, for lodging the garrison, such as the barracks or cazerns in Ireland.

CENTINEL, is a private man, armed with firelock, bayonet, and sword, who is supposed to be vigilant on his post, to prevent an enemy from surprizing a camp, garrison, quarter, or out-post.

CENTRE, is the middle point of a circle. Centre of an army in the infantry.

CENTRY-BOX, is the same with Guereitte, only the one is of wood, and the other of stone; they are upon the flanked angles of bastions, and on the angles of the shoulder, and sometimes on the middle of the curtain, to preserve the centries from the weather.

CESSATION of arms, is when a Governor of a place besieged, finding himself reduced to such an extremity, that he must either surrender,

C H

der, or sacrifice himself, his garrison, and inhabitants, to the mercy of the enemy, plants a white flag on the breach, or beats the chamade to capitulate; at which both parties cease firing, and all other acts of hostility, till the proposals be either agreed to or rejected.

CHAIN, is a number of brass or iron rings, linked one in another; an engineer's chain for measuring of ground, is of a certain number of links, of an equal length; chains of a gun are of iron, and very strong, fixed on the draft hooks, and going along the shafts of the timber to ease them, but they are not used for small guns.

CHAMADE, is a signal made by beat of drum, for a conference with the enemy, when any thing is to be proposed, as a cessation of arms to bring off the dead; or by the besieged, when they have a mind to deliver up a place upon articles of capitulation; and then there is a suspension of arms, and hostages delivered on both sides.

CHAMBER, of a mortar, is that part of the chase where the powder lies, and is much narrower than the rest of the cylinder; some are like a reversed cone or sugar-loaf, others globical, with a neck for its communication with the cylinder, and are called Bottled-cham-

C H

bers; the powder chamber, or bomb chamber, on a battery, is a place sunk under ground, for holding powder or the bombs, where they may be out of danger, and preserved from the rain.

Chamber, is that place of a mine, where the powder is lodged.

CHANDELIERS, are wooden frames, made of two pieces, fixed across ways, on the two other pieces, at about four feet asunder; and upon their interjections are erected two vertical pieces, of five feet high, each supported by three buttresses; and the interval of these two pieces is filled up with fascines, to cover the troops upon occasion.

CHARGED CYLINDER, is that part of the chase of a gun, where the powder and ball are contained.

CHEEKS, of a mortar or brackets, are made of strong planks of wood, of near a semi-circular form, bound with thick plates of iron, and are fixed to the bed, by four bolts, called bed-bolts; they rise on each side of the mortar, and serve to keep her at what elevation is given her, by the help of strong bolts of iron which go through both cheeks, both under and behind the mortar, betwixt which are drove coins of wood. These bolts are called bracket-bolts; and the bolts which
are

are put one in each end of the bed, are the traverse-bolts; because, with hand-spikes the mortar is by those traversed to the right or left.

CHEVAUX-DE-FRIZE, large joints or beams, stuck full of wooden pins, armed with iron, to stop breaches, or to secure a passage of a camp against the enemy's cavalry.

CHEVRETTE. Among the many inventions for raising of guns or mortars into their carriages, this engine is very useful; it is made of two pieces of wood, of about four foot long, standing upright upon a third, which is square; they are about a foot asunder, and parallel, and are pierced with holes exactly to one another, having a bolt of iron, which being put through these holes, higher or lower at pleasure, serves with a hand-spike, which takes its poise over this bolt, to raise any thing by force.

CIRCLE, is a plain figure, comprehending within a crooked line, called the circumference; which has all its parts equally distant from a certain point, called the centre.

Arch of a Circle, is an undetermined part of the circumference of a circle, being sometimes larger, and sometimes smaller.

Line of circumvallation, is a kind of fortification, consisting of a parapet, or breast-

work, and a ditch before it, to cover the besiegers against any attempt of the enemy in the field.

CITADEL, is a kind of a fort of four, five, or six bastions raised on the most advantageous ground about the city, the better to command it, by an open, or esplanade; in order to hinder the approach of an enemy; so that the citadel defends the inhabitants, and can punish them if they revolt. A citadel must not be too large, because too spacious a circumference is difficult to fortify and defend, and must be so contrived as easily to be succoured.

CLOSE: to close order, is when the ranks are drawn up at six feet asunder, and close up to two feet.

CLOURS, are thin plates of iron, nailed on that part of the axel-tree of a gun-carriage, that comes through the nave, through which the lins-pin goes.

COFFER, is a work sunk in the bottom of a dry moat, about six or seven foot wide, the length of it being from one side of the moat to the other, with a parapet of about two foot high, full of loop-holes, covered overhead with joists, hurdles, and earth; they serve to fire on the besiegers, when they endeavour to pass the moat, and differ from the caponier, because they are longer; for the

the caponier takes not the whole breadth of the moat ; it differs likewise from the traverse and the gallery, because it is made by the besieged, and these by the besiegers.

COINS, are wedges of wood under the breech of a gun, by which a diameter raises or falls the muzzle of his piece, till he points it exactly at the object ; each gun has three coins belonging to her ; they are for the same use about a mortar.

COLONEL, or commandant of a corps, commands it in chief, is answerable for the cloathing and other appointments of it, that they are good and conformable to his Majesty's royal intention.

He can never have too many virtues, too much knowledge or experience. He should have affability to gain the affection of his corps, address to keep a perfect harmony subsisting among them, and be ever studious for their promotion and happiness: he is supposed to be well acquainted with the strength of the battalion, and master of all manœuvres, &c.

COLOURS, are flags of silk, carried by Ensigns, (except in the English fuzileers) but are never carried on detachment.

Camp-colours, are small colours, of about a foot and

a half square, of the same colour with the facings of the regiment they belong to.

COLUMN. See *Battalion in Column*, Plan 5.

Column, of an army on a march, is a long row of troops, following one another. Sometimes the army marches in four, six, or eight columns, according to the convenience of the ground it occupies.

COMMANDER. See page 106.

COMMANDING-GROUND, is an eminence, or rising-ground, overlooking a post.

COMMISSARY of stores, is an Officer in the artillery, who has the charge of all the stores, for which he is accountable to the Ordnance: he is allowed an assistant, clerks, and conductors.

Commissary of horses, is an Officer in the artillery, appointed to have the inspection of the artillery horses, to see them mustered, and to send such orders as he receives from the Commanding-officer of the artillery, by some of the conductors of horses, of which he has a certain number for assistants.

Commissary of the musters, is an Officer appointed to muster an army, battalion, troop, or company, as often as the General pleases: he is to know the strength of each regiment and company, to

* B

receive

receive and inspect the muster-rolls, and to keep an exact state of the strength of the army.

The troops in Great Britain are mustered twice a year; in Ireland, four times.

Commissary of provisions, is he who has the inspection of the bread and provisions of an army.

COMMISSION, is the authority granted by a Prince, or his General, to Officers, by which he invests them with commands agreeable to his pleasure and their abilities.

COMPLEMENT, *of the curtain*, is that part of it which makes the demi-gorge.

Complement, of the line of defence, is the remainder of the line of defence, after the angle of the line is taken off.

COMPLIMENT, *of the line of an army turning out*, is due to his Majesty, the Queen, or any of the Royal Family, (Lord-lieutenant, if in Ireland) Captain-general, or Commander in Chief (being a General Officer) of the encampment.

Compliment, from guards, is due to his Majesty, the Queen, or any of the Royal family, (Lord lieutenant, if in Ireland) General Officers, &c.

COMPTROLLER *of the artillery*, is a post of great trust; he inspects the musters of the artillery, makes the

pay-list, takes the accompts, and the remains of stores, and is accountable to the Ordnance.

COMRADES, are two men who receive one billet, and lie together.

CONDUCTORS, are assistants given to the Commissary of the Stores, to receive or deliver out stores to the army, to attend at the magazines by turns, when in garrison, and to look after the ammunition waggons in the field: they bring their accounts every night to the Commissary, and are immediately under his command.

CONE, is a body made by turning of a right angled triangle round a circle, the angular point of the right angle being fixed in the centre, which forms a pyramid, whose basis is a circle.

CONTRAVALLATION, is a trench, with a parapet, made by the besiegers, betwixt them and the place besieged, to secure them from the sallies of the garrison, so that the troops which form the siege, are encamped between the lines of circumvallation and contravallation: when the enemy has no army in the field, there is no occasion for the lines of circumvallation; and when the garrison is weak, the lines of contravallation are seldom used.

CON-

CONTRIBUTION, is an imposition, or tax, paid by frontier countries, to excuse themselves from being plundered by the enemy.

CONVOY, is a supply of men, money, ammunition, or provisions, conveyed into a town, or to an army. The body of men that guard this supply, are called likewise the convoy.

CORDON, is a round projection made of stone, in a semicircular form, whose diameter is about eight inches, which ranges quite round the wall, within four feet from the upper part.

CORIDOR, is a French term for covert-way.

CORNET, the youngest Officer of a troop, is a very honourable post: one part of his duty is to carry the standard in the day of battle; nor should he quit it but with his life: for it is a great dishonour to lose a standard.

CORNISH-RING, is a small ring near the muzzle of the gun.

CORPORAL, an inferior Officer to a Serjeant, posts and relieves the centries; and, while the guard is relieving, he gives the orders he received to the Corporal of the new guard, and shews him all the posts: he carries a firelock advanced.

CORPS, *regiments*, or *battalions*, mean all the same thing.

COVERT-WAY, is a space of ground, level with the country, about three or four fathoms wide, covered by a parapet, which goes quite round the place. The greatest effort in sieges, is to make a lodgment on the covert-way, which the besiegers generally pallisade and undermine: this parapet slopes insensibly towards the campaign; and the talus, or sloping, is called the glacis, which the besiegers are generally obliged to sap through to make a lodgment. The parapet of the covert-way is about six feet high, with a banquette, and forms a salient angle before the curtain, which serves for a place of arms.

COUNTER-MARCH, is an army's suddenly turning their march the contrary way; which may be occasioned by the enemy's endeavouring to get between them and their garrison, or may be done to disappoint and amuse the enemy. A battalion is said to countermarch, when the wings of a battalion interchange ground.

COUNTER-MINE, is used when the besiegers have, notwithstanding the opposition of the besieged, passed the foss, and put the miner to the foot of the rampart. They are of two sorts, being either made when the bastion is raised,

raised, or afterwards, when it is attacked. Those that are made when the bastion is raised, are carried quite round the faces of a bastion; their height is from four to five feet, and broad enough for a man to pass easily: the others, which are made in time of necessity, when the besiegers are undermining a bastion, are pits sunk deep in the ground, where the miner is supposed to be, from whence they run out branches, in search of the enemy's mine, to frustrate the effect of it, by either taking away the powder, or cutting the train.

COUNCIL OF WAR, is when a Commander in Chief of an army, or Governor of a garrison, assembles the principal Officers for their advice, upon some affairs of importance, with regard to the interest of his Prince, and honour of his country.

COUNTERSCARP, is the outside of a ditch, opposite to the parapet of the work, behind the ditch: it is often said that the besiegers have carried their lodgments upon the counterscarp, when they are lodged on the covert-way.

COUNTER-GUARD, is a work placed before the bastions, to cover the opposite flanks from being seen from the covert-way; they are likewise made before the ra-

velins. When they are placed before the bastions, they are esteemed a very good defence.

COUNTER-SIGN, is generally given out with the parole, is made use of in the same manner, and frequently exchanged by the guards and rounds.

COURT-MARTIAL, is instituted by the legislature, not only to examine into the conduct of Officers and soldiers, but also to pass sentence upon those who shall be found guilty of a breach of the Articles of War; and, by their judgment, remove any bad impression, or misrepresentation that may be made to the prejudice of an Officer; and it is also intended to check all arbitrary proceedings that are contrary to good order and military discipline.

Court-martial, general, is composed of a President and twelve Members, with a Judge-advocate. The President is of the rank of a Field-officer, with twelve of the rank of Captain, if they can conveniently be assembled: if to try any under the rank of a Field-officer, a Captain may sit as President, (when no Field-officer can be had) with twelve Commissioned-officers, who are all sworn: but in the garrisons of Goree and Senegal, or upon any detachments therefrom, they need

need only consist of five, but not less, and the President should not be under the degree of a Field-officer; but a Captain may preside, when a Field-officer cannot attend.

Court-martial, regimental, is composed of five Officers, the eldest whereof is President; but when that number cannot conveniently assemble, three are sufficient.

Court-Martial, garrison, is composed of the same number of Officers, of horse, dragoons, foot, or marines, as a Regimental Court; the approving Officer is the Governor, Lieutenant-governor, or the Officer commanding. The Members are not sworn.

Court of Inquiry, is a proceeding of a very delicate nature: a number of Officers are assembled together, to enquire into the conduct of Officers; and I have known them to be ordered to give their opinions in writing, to the person who ordered them to assemble, that he may judge from their determination, if there is a sufficient matter to bring them to a General Court-martial.

N. B. There is no article of war for this, but the custom of the army.

CROWN-WORK, is a kind of work not unlike a crown: it has two fronts and two branches; the fronts are composed of two half bastions, and generally serve to inclose

some buildings, which cannot be brought within the body of the place, to cover the town gates, or to occupy a spot of ground, which might be advantageous to an enemy.

CROWS-FEET, an iron of four points of about six inches long, which are used against the cavalry, for one point will always be uppermost, let it fall as it will.

CUIRRASSIERS, are cavalry, armed with back, breast, and head pieces.

CULVERIN, is a cannon, about five inches and a quarter diameter in the bore, and from nine to twelve feet long, carrying a ball of eighteen pound: it is a good battering gun, but too heavy for a field-piece.

CUNETTE, or *Cuvette*, is a deep trench, about three or four fathom wide, sunk along the middle of a dry moat, to make the passage more difficult to the enemy; it is generally sunk deep enough to find water to fill it, and is good to prevent the besiegers mining.

CURTAIN, is that part of the rampart of a place, which is between the flanks of two bastions, and is the best defended of any part of the rampart; wherefore besiegers never make their attacks in the curtains, but on the faces of the bastions, because of their being defended but by one flank.

CY-

D E

CYLINDER, or *Chase of a Gun*, is the bore, or concavity of a piece, whereof that part which receives the powder and ball, is called the *Charged Cylinder*, and that which remains empty after the gun is charged, is called the *Vacant Cylinder*.

D.

DEBARK. To debark, is to disembark troops from on board ships or boats.

DECAGONS, polygons, or fortifications of ten sides.

DECAMP, is to break up from a place where the army has been encamped.

DEFENCES, of a place, are the parts of a wall or rampart, which flank and defend the rest; as the flanks, casements, parapets, and sausebrays: the face of a bastion, tho' it has the simplest defence of any part of the fortification, yet it cannot be formed till the opposite flank be ruined. To be in a posture of defence, is to be in a condition to resist or oppose an enemy.

DEFILE is a narrow pass, which obliges an army to defile off: it is one of the greatest obstacles that can occur in the march of an army, especially if it happen to be between woods or marshes; for it not only gives an enemy an extraordinary advantage, of either attacking the front or rear, when they can-

D E

not come to relieve one another, because of the straightness of the passage; but it likewise very much impedes the march of an army: a retreating army always puts a defile between them and the enemy, to secure them a retreat.

To defile, is to reduce an army, &c. to a small front, to march through a narrow passage.

DEGREE, is properly a term in geometry, often used in fortification, to measure the angles, being the three hundred and sixtieth part of the circumference of a circle: a degree is subdivided into sixty equal parts, called minutes, and each minute into sixty seconds.

DEMI-CANNON, is a gun carrying a ball of thirty-two pound weight; the diameter of its bore is six inches and a half, and its length from twelve to fourteen foot. It is seldom used at sieges, because of its extraordinary charge.

DEMI-CIRCLE, is the half of a circle, cut by a line, passing through the centre, called the diameter.

DEMI-CULVERIN, is a cannon of about nine foot long: the diameter of the bore is four inches and a quarter, carrying a ball of nine pound weight. It is a very good field-piece.

DEMI-

DEMI-GORGE, is that part of the polygon which remains after the flank is raised, and goes from the curtain to the angle of the polygon: it is half of the vacant entrance into a bastion.

DESCENT into a moat, is a deep trench, or sap, through the esplanade, and under the covert-way, covered over head with planks and hurdles, and loaded with earth against artificial fires, to secure the descent; which, in ditches that are full of water, is made to the brink of the water; but in dry moats, the sap is carried to the bottom of the moat, where the traverses are made, to lodge and cover the besiegers.

DESERTER, is the Officer or soldier who deserts from his Majesty's service. A soldier, who, after having enlisted into one corps, again enlists into another, without having previously obtained a discharge from the first, shall suffer death, or such other punishment as a Court-martial shall inflict: If the offence shall be thought not deserving capital punishment, the Court may adjudge the offender to serve in any of the corps stationed in foreign parts, either for life, or a term of years, according to the degree of the offence; but, if afterwards convicted of returning without leave,

before the expiration of such term, he shall suffer death;

This clause extends to all the forces in Great-Britain, Ireland, Minorca, Gibraltar, and his Majesty's dominions beyond sea.

DETACHMENT, is a certain number of Officers, Non-commissioned Officers, and soldiers, drawn out from several regiments or companies, equally to be employed, whether on an attack, at a siege, or in parties to scour the country, &c.

DIAMETER of a circle, is a right line, which passes through the centre, and touches the circumference in two points, dividing the circle into two equal parts.

DISMOUNT, is when an Officer comes off guard; likewise a word of command to the horse and dragoons.

Dismount, the enemies cannon, is to break their carriages, their wheels and axletrees, or any thing else, so as to render them unserviceable.

DIVISIONS, are the several parcels into which a battalion is divided; as grand, or sub-divisions.

The division of an army are the brigades.

DODECAGON, is a figure, bounded by twelve sides, forming as many angles, capable of being fortified with the same number of bastions.

D R

DONJON, is a place of retreat, to capitulate with more advantage, in case of necessity.

DOSSER, is a sort of basket, shaped like a sugar-loaf reversed, to be carried on the shoulders, and is used to carry the overplus earth from one part of a fortification to another, where it is wanted. There are also small carts and wheelbarrows for the same use.

DOUBLE. To *double*, is a word of command; as, *Double your ranks*.

DRAGOON, is a musketeer, mounted on horseback, sometimes fighting on foot, but mostly on horseback, as occasion requires. The regiment is divided generally into squadrons, and they are useful on any expedition that requires dispatch.

DRAIN, is a trench made to draw the water out of a moat, which is afterwards filled with hurdles and earth, or with fascines, or bundles of rushes and planks, to facilitate the passage over the mud.

DRAUGHT-HOOKS, are large hooks of iron, fixed on the cheeks of a cannon-carriage, two on each side; one near the trunnion hole, and the other at the train; and are called the fore and hind draught-hooks. Large guns have draught-hooks near the

D R

middle transom, to which are fixed the chains, which serve to ease the shafts of the limbers on a march; the fore and hind hooks are used for drawing a gun backwards or forwards by men, with strong ropes, called draught-ropes, fixed to these hooks.

Draught a corps, is to incorporate men from one corps into another.

DRILL Serjeants, or Corporals, are Non-commissioned Officers, who are expert with their arms, and capable of teaching recruits their exercise, to march, wheel, and form well, and to give them a soldier-like air.

DRILL, as the drill of a regiment, or any part of it, consists of recruits and awkward men; and it is called the *Drill-squad*.

DRUM, is a martial instrument used by the foot; as, to beat the *general*, is a signal for the whole army to make ready to march; the *assemble* is the next beat, which is an order for the soldiers to repair to their colours; and the *march* is to command them to move. To beat the *reveille* at day-break, is to warn the soldiers to rise, and the centries to cease challenging: the *troop* is to assemble them together, for the inspection of an Officer, and to mount the guards; and *retreat* beating is at sunset,

D U

set, when the rolls are called, the men warned for duty, and the orders of the day read to them. *Tattoo-beating* is at ten o'clock in summer, and nine in winter; by which hour it is expected, that the men are at their quarters, to answer roll calling, and to go to rest. *Alarm* is to call the regiment under arms, at their alarm-posts, on some sudden danger; fire, or other occasion. To beat a *parly* or *chamade*, is to desire a conference with the enemy: and to beat to *arms*, is to advertise the corps to stand to their arms. The Adjutant's call, is the first part of the *tattoo*. The drummer's call, is a particular beat, and is called the *drummer's call*. Two *rolls* and six *flams*, is for one Serjeant and one Corporal of a company. Three *rolls* and nine *flams*, is for all the Serjeants and Corporals to attend for orders, &c.

DRUMMER, is he that beats the drum. Drum-major has the command over the other drums, and their cloathing is generally laced with gold or silver.

DUTY, is the exercise of those functions that belong to a soldier; with this distinction; that mounting guard, and the like, where there is not an enemy to be directly engaged, is called *duty*; but their marching to meet or

E N

fight an enemy, or being sent on party, or detachment, is called *going upon service*.

E.

ECHARPE. To batter an echarpe is to batter obliquely or side-ways: the flanks of Count Pagan's construction, may be battered on an echarpe, because the angles of the curtain, being too obtuse, are too much discovered.

EMBRASURES, are openings made in the flanks of a fortification, or in the breast-work of a battery, about two feet and a half within, eight or nine without, and three feet from the bottom, for part of each gun to enter and fire through.

EMINENCE, is a high or rising ground, which overlooks and commands the low places about it. Such places within cannon-shot of a fortified place, are a great disadvantage; for if the besiegers become masters of them, they can from thence fire into the place.

ENCAMP, is the pitching of tents, when the army, after a march, is come to a place where it is designed to halt for a night or longer. The bells of arms are in the front; Serjeants tents immediately behind them, and the soldiers following: the Officers encamp in the rear, the Subalterns in one line

next

next the company, fronting from it; the Captains in another line at some distance, each behind his own company fronting the Subalterns, and the Field-officers behind them: the Colonel's is in the center, the Lieutenant-colonel's on his right, the Major's on his left, the Surgeon's and Chaplain's behind them, and the sutlers behind all.

ENCIENTE, is the wall or rampart, which surrounds a place: it is, properly, composed of bastions and curtains, either faced or lined with brick or stone; but sometimes it is only made of earth. When flanked by round or square towers, it is called a Roman wall.

ENFILADE. A work is said to be enfiladed, when a gun can be fired into it, so that the shot may go all along the inside of the parapet.

ENGINEER, is an Officer of the military branch, who, by the help of geometry, delineates upon paper, or marks upon the ground, all sorts of forts, and other works proper for offence or defence; who understands the art of fortification; who can discover the defects of a place, find proper remedies for them, and knows how to make an attack on, or to defend a place when attacked.

Engineers, are extremely necessary for both these pur-

poses, and ought to be not only ingenious, but brave, in proportion to their knowledge; for the employ requires men expert and bold. At a siege, when the Engineers have observed, and narrowly viewed, the place, they are to acquaint the General, which they judge the weakest part, and where the approaches may be made with most ease. Their business it is to take all advantages of ground, to delineate the lines of circumvallation and contravallation, to make out the trenches, places of arms, batteries, and lodgments, taking great care that none of their works be flanked, or discovered from the place: they are to make a faithful report to the General of what is doing, to demand a sufficient number of workmen and utensils, and to foresee whatever is necessary; that there be good provision made of fascines, picquets, gabions, spades, shovels, pick-axes, hatchets, sand-bags, planks, boards, mallets, stampers, doffers, wheel-barrows, &c.

An Engineer ought to be very perfect in arithmetick, to project the plots of places, and calculate the expences of the siege; in geometry, to measure his work and raise plans; in military architecture, to distinguish himself in

E N

In his profession ; in civil architecture, to know how to conduct buildings, and works of places ; in mechanicks, to make sluices, march cannon, and use all sorts of machines ; in perspective, to express his works on paper, in their just proportion ; and without design, he can neither make charts or plans. These sciences are called the genius, in which consists the whole spirit of war and fortification.

ENNEAGON, is a nine-sided figure or fortification.

EN-SECOND, is an Officer, whose troop or company is broke, though he continues in whole pay, and, upon a vacancy is appointed to a troop or company.

ENSIGN, is the Officer who carries the colours, except in the English fuzileers ; and is the youngest Officer of a company, subordinate to his Captain and Lieutenant. It is a very genteel post, and requires a person of the greatest intrepidity to fill it with propriety, for he should rather die than lose them.

ENVELOPE, is a work of earth, made sometimes in the ditch of a place, sometimes without the ditch, sometimes in the fashion of a simple parapet, and at other times like a small rampart with a parapet. Envelopes are often made to enclose a weak

E P

ground ; when it is to be done with simple lines, to shun the great charge of horn-works, tenailles, or the like ; or when they have not ground for such large works. The castle of Namure has two envelopes on the south-west side of the Donjon ; one before the other, composed of two demi-bastions and a curtain, and called the first and second envelopes. When made without both these, a large work, extending itself on the top of a hill, with two demi-bastions, is called the *Terre-Neuve*, or *Newland*.

The citadel of Bensanson, which is situated on a high steep rock, has three envelopes, one before another, towards the campaign, which serve as so many covert ways before the moat.

The fort Nuerburg, in Holland, is famous for its envelope, which goes quite round the fort, and is fraised and palisaded with stakes, as thick as a man's body.

EPAULE, or shoulder of a bastion, is the place where the face and flank meet, and form the angle, called the angle of the shoulder.

EPAULEMENT, is a work, raised either of earth, gabions, or fascines, loaded with earth to cover side-ways. The epaulements of the places of arms for the cavalry, at the

E V

the entering of the trenches, are generally of fascines, mixed with earth.

Epaulement, is also a kind of breast-work, to cover the troops in front, and sometimes in flank.

Epaulement, or square orillon, is a mass of earth.

EPTAGON, or *Heptagon*, is a figure of seven sides, and seven angles.

ESCALADE. To *escalade* a place, is to approach it secretly, and to place ladders against the wall or rampart, for the troops to mount and get into the place.

ESPALADE, is an open space, between the citadel and town, to prevent an enemy from making approaches under cover, after he is master of the place.

ESPONTOON, an offensive and defensive weapon, used by the Officers of battalion companies, except in fuzileer regiments, where the Officers carry fuzees.

EVOLUTION, is a movement made by troops, when they are obliged to change their form and disposition, in order to preserve one post, or occupy another; to attack an enemy with advantage, or strengthen their defence against superior numbers.

EXACTITUDE, is for the General to be careful of the parole, counter sign, rounds, patroles, spies, and parties;

E X

of the preservation of the ammunition and provisions; to try the waters, lest they should be bad or poisoned; and to prevent them from being cut away; to see that no fortified towns, garrisons, forts, or posts, are in the front, rear, or flanks, to form an ambuscade, or cut off the convoys.

EXAGON, is a figure bounded by six sides, or polygons, making as many angles capable of bastions.

EXERCISE, is the practice of all those motions, actions, and management of arms, whereby a soldier is taught the different postures he is to be in under arms, and the different motions he is to make to resist an enemy; which he must be perfect in, before he is fit for the service.

EXPEDITION, is dispatch, or quickness, in sending off troops; and, if secrecy is required, it is called a *secret expedition*.

EXTERIOR *side of a fortification*, is the distance, or imaginary line drawn from one point of the bastion, to that of the next.

F

FACE, is a word of command.

Face of a gun, is the superficies of the metal, at the extremity of the muzzle of the piece.

Face

F A

Face prolonged, is that part of the line of defence razant, which is betwixt the angle of the shoulder and the curtain, or the line of defence razant, diminished by the length of a face.

FACES, of any work, are those parts where the rampart is made, making an angle, pointing outwards.

Faces, of the bastions, are two sides, which meet in an angle, projecting towards the field.

FACING, is a particular turning of the aspect, from one part to another, whereby the front-proper, becomes front-accidental; and a front-accidental, may be reduced to its proper front.

FAGGOTS, were men allowed to throw up their pay, to be excused duty; but that practice is now left off, it being contrary to the Articles of War.

FANIONI, are small flags, carried along with the baggage of artillery.

FASCINE, is a kind of faggot, made of branches, tied in two or more places, of about six or eight inches diameter, They serve to keep up the earth in trenches, as likewise in batteries, instead of stone or brick walls. When they are used in raising batteries, they are generally sixteen feet long, and are then called saucissons.

F I

FATHOM, a measure called so, being equal to two yards or six feet, equivalent to the French word toise.

FAUSS-BRAY, is a low rampart, going quite round the body of the place, about three feet, at most, above the level of the ground; and its parapet is about four or five toises distance from that of the body of the place.

FEINT, a false march.

FELLOWS are six pieces of wood, each whereof forms a piece of an arch of a circle, of sixty degrees, and, joined both together by duleldges, make an entire circle; which, with the addition of a nave and twelve spokes, make a wheel.

FERRIES, are boats which troops embark in to cross water.

FIELD-OFFICERS, are those that have the power and command over a regiment.

FIELD-PIECES, are small cannon: each corps has two.

FIFE, is an instrument, not unlike a German-flute, but somewhat less.

FIFER, is he who plays on a musical instrument, called a fife; its sound is martial, the men march in time to it, and it generally accompanies the drum.

FILE, is the line of soldiers standing one behind another.

F I

another. Three men make a file.

To file off, is the same as to dehle, or to file off from a large front; to march in length. An army is said to file off from the right or from the left, when they move from the right or left, marching one after another, and so reducing the lines of an army.

FIRE, is a word of command to the soldiers, to discharge their firelocks; to the cavalry to discharge their carabines or pistols; and to the gunners to fire their guns. *Running-fire*, is when a file of men fire one after the other.

FIRE-ARMS. Under this name are comprehended all sorts of arms, that are charged with powder and ball; as cannon, firelocks, carabines, pistols, blunderbusses, &c.

FIRE-BALL, is a composition of meal-powder, sulphur, saltpetre, pitch, &c. about the bigness of a hand-grenade.

FIRE-LOCK, is a fire-arm carried by a foot-soldier; the barrel of which is about three foot eight inches long, the stock about four foot eight inches, and the bore fit to receive a bullet of lead, at the rate of twenty-nine bullets to two pounds of lead.

FIRE-MASTER, is an Officer, who gives the directions and proportions of in-

F L

redients for each composition required in fire-works.

FIRE-WORKERS, are the youngest commissioned Officers in a company of artillery.

FIRE-WORKS, are the works made by the fire-workers, whether for war or rejoicing.

FIRING, *parapet*, is used in fortified places when besieged; in intrenchments that are attacked, or to fire over a hedge, ditch, or wall.

Firing, street, is so called, when a party is obliged to engage in a street, lane, narrow passage, or road, where only a few men can march in front.

Firing, a feu de joye, is so called from firing it upon victory, or any other agreeable news; and it is generally done after the retreat has beat.

FLAGS, in French, *anions*, are small banners of distinction, stuck in the baggage-waggons of the army, to distinguish the baggage of one brigade from another, and of one battalion from another, that they may be marshalled by the Waggon-master-general, according to the rank of their brigades, where they are to keep during the march, to avoid the confusion that would otherwise happen.

Flags, with slaves, the union and the red, are carried by the artillery.

FLAM

FL

FLAM, a stroke with one drum-stick on the drum head.

Double-flam, a strong stroke, with both drum-sticks, on the drum at one time.

FLANK, in general, is that part of a work which defends another work, along the outside of its parapet.

Flank, is also the side of an army, battalion, company, &c. from the front to the rear.

To flank, is to attack and fire upon the flank of an enemy.

Flank, direct, or grasping, is that which is perpendicular to the opposite face produced, and oblique, or fishant, when it makes an acute angle with that face.

Flank, concave, is that which is made in the area of circle.

Flank of the bastion, is that part between the face and curtain. The flank of one bastion serves to defend the ditch before the curtain and face of the opposite bastion.

Flank, retired, is that which is made behind the line, which joins the extremity of the face, and the curtain towards the capital of the bastion.---M. Vauban, makes his five toises from that line; others more or less, as it happens.

Flank, second. When the face of a bastion produced,

FO

does not meet the curtain at its extremity, but in some other point, this flank is called *the second flank*.

FLANKING, is the same thing in fortification as *defending*.

FLANKS of a battalion, are the right and left of it.

FLANKS of an army, are the troops encamped on the right and left flanks of it.

FLASH in the pan, when the piece burns priming, and does not go off.

FLASK, is a horn, or such a thing, made for carrying powder.

FLINTS, are for muskets, carabines, and pistols.

FLYING-CAMP, a body of light horse, or foot, who are always in motion, either to cover an army or garrison, and to keep the enemy in continual alarm.

FOOT, are such men as enlist themselves to serve in the infantry. They are armed with firelock and bayonet, and march on foot.

Foot, is twelve inches: six foot make a fathom, five foot make a geometrical pace, three foot an English yard, and two foot and a half a common pace.

FOOT-BANK, the same as a bankquette, is a small step of earth, on which the soldiers stand to fire over the parapet: there are generally

rally two, and sometimes three.

FORAGE, is the hay, oats, barley, wheat, grafs, fitches, clover, &c. which is cut down and brought into the camp, by the troopers, for the subsistence of their horses. It ought to be chiefly considered by the quarter-master-general, in encamping an army, that it be in a country of forage: it is he that orders the method of the foraging, and posts the guards for the security of the foragers. Dry forage, is the hay, oats, and straw, which is delivered out from the magazines, to the army in garrison, or when they take the field, before the forage be grown up.

FORCES. An army or considerable body of men are so called.

FORGE, is an engine carried along with the artillery, for the smiths, and is a travelling smiths-forge: forge for hot balls, &c.

FORLORN, are men detached from several regiments, or otherwise appointed to make the first attack in the day of battle; or, at a siege, to be the first at storming the counterscarp, mounting the breach, or the like. They are called so from the imminent danger they are in.

FORM, is a word of command; as for the companies

to *form the battalion*, or for roll-calling, &c.

FORMERS, are of several forts, but the chief are for making cartridges for cannon; they are round pieces of wood, fitted to the diameter of the bore of the gun, on which the paper, parchment, or cotton, which is to make the cartridge, is to be rolled before it is sewed.

FORTRESS, is a general name for all places that are fortified by nature or art.

FORT, is a small fortification, made in a pass near a river, or at some distance from a fortified town, to guard the pass, or to prevent the approach of ships, or an enemy by land: they are of different figures, some made small, and some greater.

FORTIFICATION, is a general name for any work made to oppose an enemy; it is put into such a posture of defence, that every one of its parts defend, and is defended by another.

Fortifications artificial, are the works raised by an engineer, to strengthen the natural situation of a place, by repairing and supplying its defects.

Fortification, natural, consists of a place being strong by nature.

Fortification, defensive, regards the precaution and the industry,

industry, by which a weak party opposes a stronger.

Fortification, regular, consists in a place being regularly fortified, and defended by bastions.

Fortification, irregular, is when a town has such an irregular situation, as renders it incapable of being regularly fortified.

FOUGADE, foucade, or foucasse, is a small mine under a post, which is in danger of falling into the enemy's hands, to blow it up.

FOUNDRY, is a place where guns, mortars, shot, shells, &c. are cast.

FOURNEAU, is the place of a mine, where the powder is lodged, and is the same thing as the chamber of a mine.

FRAISE, a kind of stakes of pallsades, placed horizontally on the outward slope of a rampart of turf, to prevent the work being taken by surprise. When an army retrenches itself, they often fraise the parapets of their retrenchments, in the parts most exposed to being attacked.

FRONT of a battalion, is the front rank: front of an army, is the first row of tents in the first line.

Front of a place, is the same as the face of a place.

FUSE, is a piece of wood drove into grenades, or shells,

being hollowed and filled with meal powder, by which the grenade or shell is fired.

FUZILEERS, are regiments of infantry, and wear caps. The Officers carry fuzes; and the men often act as grenadiers.

G.

GABION, is a cylinder basket, open at both ends, of about three feet wide, and as much in height. They serve in sieges to carry on the approaches under cover, when they come pretty near the fortification.

Gabion stuffed, is made in the same manner as the former, are filled with all sorts of branches and small wood, and are five or six feet long. They serve to roll before the workmen in the trenches, to cover them in front against musquet-shot.

GALLERY, is the passage made under ground, leading to the mines; is from four and a half to five feet high, and about four feet broad. The earth above it is supported by wooden frames, with boards over them.

Gallery of-a mine, is the same as a branch of a mine, and is a passage under ground, of three or four feet wide under the works, where a mine or counter-mine is carried on. Both besieged and besiegers, carry branches under

G E

der ground, in search of each other's mines, which often meet and destroy both.

GARRISON, a place of defence, composed of either horse, foot, or dragoons, to guard it in time of peace, and to defend it in time of war, if an enemy should attack it.

GATE, of a garrison, is made of strong beams and planks, with iron bars, and turns upon hinges, to secure the entry of a garrison against an enemy.

GAZONS, are triangular fods, or pieces of fresh earth, covered with grass, about a foot long, and half a foot broad, to line the parapet; if the earth be fat and full of herbs, it is the better; to the end, that being mixed, and beat with the rest of the earth of the rampart, they may easily settle together, and incorporate in a mass with the rest of the rampart.

The first bed of Gazons is fixed with pegs of wood; the second bed binds the former, and so on till the rampart is finished. If no fods can be obtained with herbage on them, they generally sow for e between each layer to bind them together.

GENERAL. See *Officers General*.

General, Master-general of the ordnance, is an employment of the greatest trust:

G O

he has the management of all the ordnance, and ought to know, and provide, whatever can be serviceable or useful in the artillery, and to fill up the vacancies with such as are qualified for them.

General, is likewise a beat of the drum. See *Drum*.

GIN OR CRAB, is an engine for mounting guns on the carriages.

GROUND. *To give ground*, is to retire, or quit a post, when it is attacked by an enemy: *to get, or gain ground*, is to have the advantage of the enemy, and to force them from a post.

GLACIS, is that part of a fortification, beyond the covert-way, to which it serves as a parapet, and terminates towards the field in an easy slope.

GORGE, of any work, is that part next the body of the place, where there is no rampart or parapet.

Gorge of a bastion, is the interval between the extremity of one flank and that of the next.

GORGET, is of brass or silver, worn on the breasts of Officers upon duty.

GOVERNOR, or Commander in Chief of a garrison, is a post of such consequence as requires him to be very vigilant and brave, knowing that it is more honour to defend one town, than to take

G R

take two, because the abundance of provisions and number of men is greater with the besiegers, than in the garrison, the former being like-wise masters of the country, and the others shut up.

He ought always to be prepared for a siege, to take particular care of the ramparts, parapets, and other defences of the place; that the foss, or moat, be kept clean and in proper order; the out-works in good repair, and well palisaded; he ought frequently to visit the magazines, stores, and posts, see that the Officers do their duty, and to neglect nothing which tends to the defence of the place.

GRENADIER, is a foot-soldier, who wears a cap. He is armed with firelock, bayonet, and broad sword, has a match-box, fixed upon the front, with match rolled up and put into two rings on the back of the cross-belt. Each battalion has one company of grenadiers, composed of men of health, strength, and activity.

Horse-grenadiers, is a troop of horse-guards.

GRENADE, is an iron orbicular case of about three inches diameter, and is filled with powder, to be thrown by the grenadiers amongst the enemy in an attack.

GUARD, is a duty or ser-

G U

vice, which ought to be performed with a great deal of vigilance, to prevent the efforts and surprizes of an enemy.

Guards, denotes, in general, the horse and foot guards.

Guards in the lines, are generally commanded by a Captain; the *main-guard*, by the eldest Subaltern that mounts; the *post-guards* and *magazine-guards*, by Subalterns, who draw lots for their guards on the parade, the youngest Subaltern excepted, who always mounts guard under the command of a Captain.

Guards ordinary, are such as are fixed during the Campaign, and relieved every day. The *grand-guards* of the cavalry, the *standard* and *quarter-guards*, *picquet-guards* of each regiment, *guards* for the General-officers, train of artillery, bread-waggons, Quarter-master General, Majors of Brigade, Judge Advocate, and Provost-marshal, are also called *guards ordinary*.

Advanced-guard, is the party of either horse or foot, which marches four or five hundred yards before the body, to give notice of any danger.

Advanced-guard, is likewise that small body of horse, under a Serjeant or Corporal, which is posted before the *grand-guard* of the camp.

G U

Rear-guard, is that part of the army which brings up the rear.

Grand-guard, is composed of two, three, or four squadrons of cavalry, commanded by a Field-officer, and posted before the camp, on the right and left wing, towards the enemy, for its security.

Picquet-guard, is a certain number of horse and foot, which are to keep themselves in readiness, in case of an alarm. The cavalry keep their horses saddled, and themselves booted, in order to mount in a minute. The foot draw up at the head of the battalion when the retreat beats, but are returned to their tents, where they hold themselves in readiness, upon the shortest notice.

Forage-guard, is a detachment sent out to secure the foragers, and posted at all places, where the enemy's party can come to disturb the foragers. It is likewise called the *covering party*, and consists sometimes of horse, sometimes of foot, and often of both.

Corps-de-garde, are soldiers intrusted with the guard of a post, under the command of one or more Officers.

Artillery-guard, is a detachment from the army, to secure the artillery. Their corps-de-garde is in the front, and their centres round

G U

the park. Upon a march they go in the front and rear of the artillery.

GUIDON, an Officer in the troops of horse-guards, who ranks as Major.

GUIDES, *Captain of the guides*, is an Officer appointed for providing guides for the army, of which he ought to have always a sufficient number with him, who know the country, to send out as occasion requires; to guide the army on a march, conduct convoys, parties, baggage, artillery, and detachment. To furnish himself with these, he should send a party of horse to adjacent villages, castles, or forts, there demand boors, bring them to his quarters, and set a guard over them, lest they make their escape, before the army comes to another ground, where he in like manner can obtain fresh guides. He ought to understand several languages, especially that of the country in which the army is.

GUERRITTE, is a sort of small tower of stone or wood, on the point of a bastion, or on the angles of the shoulder, to hold a sentinel.

GUN. The length is distinguished by three parts; the first reinforce, the second reinforce, and the chace; the first reinforce is two-sevenths, and the second one-seventh and

and half a diameter of the shot. The inside hollow wherein the powder and shot are lodged, the bore, and the diameter of the bore, is called the diameter of the caliber. The part between the hind end and the bore, the breech; and the fore-part of the bore, the mouth. The cascable is the part terminated by the hind part of the breech, and the extremity of the button. The trunnions, the cylindric parts of metal which project on both sides of the gun, which rest in the grooves, made in the side-pieces of a carriage. The mouldings are those behind the breech, and are looked upon to belong to the cascable, the first and second reinforce rings, ogees, astragals, and fillets. Those of the first reinforce are a ring ogee joining to it, and an astragal with fillets; the part of the gun between the ogee and astragal is called the vent-field, because the vent is placed there. The ogee of the second, a ring and ogee; and those of the chace, a ring-ogee; the astragal with fillets, the muzzle astragal, the swelling of the muzzle an ogee, or cimaïse and two fillets. The part between the ogee and chace astragal, the chace girdle; and the part from the muzzle astragal and the mouth, the muzzle. Formerly guns were distinguish-

ed by the names of fakers, culverins, cannon, demi-cannon, &c. but at present their names are taken from the weight of their shot; as, for example, a 12 or 24 pounder carries a ball of 12 or 24 pounds weight. Guns are made of brass or cast iron; the brass is a mixture of copper and tin; sometimes yellow brass is added, but is reckoned to make the metal brittle. The most common proportion is to an hundred pounds of copper twelve pounds of tin. But as copper requires a red heat to melt, and tin does melt in a common fire, when a gun is much heated by firing, the tin melts or softens so much that the copper alone supports the force of explosion, whereby they generally bend at the muzzle, and the vent widens so much as to render the gun useless. If such a composition of metal could be found as required an equal degree of heat to melt, it would answer the intent: but as no such thing has been hitherto found, I look upon good iron to make better and more durable guns than any other composition whatever, as experiments and practice have shewn. For all our brass battering guns made use of this last war were soon rendered unserviceable, and iron ones substituted. The necessary

G U

sary tools for loading and firing guns, are rammers, sponges, ladles, worms, hand-spikes, wedges, or screws. The rammer is a cylinder of wood, whose diameter and axis is equal to that of the shot, and serves to ram home the wads put upon the powder and shot; the sponge is the same, only covered with lamb-skin, and serves to clean the gun when fired: the rammer and sponge are fixed to the same handle. The ladle serves to load the gun with loose powder. The worm serves to draw out the wads when a gun is to be unloaded. The hand-spikes serve to move and to lay the gun. The coins or wedges, to lay under the breech of the gun, and to raise or depress it. In field-pieces, a screw is used instead of coins, by which the gun is kept to the same elevation. The tools necessary to prove guns, besides those mentioned for loading them, are a priming iron, a searcher with a reliever, a searcher with one point. The first searcher is an iron, hollow at one end to receive a wooden handle, and on the other has from four to eight flat springs of about six inches long, pointed and turned outwards at the ends: the reliever is an iron flat ring, with a wooden handle, at right angles to it: when a

H A

gun is to be searched after it has been fired, this searcher is introduced, and turned every way from one end to the other; and if there is any hole, the point of one or the other spring gets into it, and remains till the reliever, passing round the handle of the searcher, presses the springs together and relieves it; and if any of the points catch in the vent, the priming iron is introduced to relieve it. When there is any hole or roughness in the gun, the distance from the mouth is marked on the outside with chalk. The other searcher has also a wooden handle and a point at the fore end of about an inch long: at right angles to the length about this point is some wax mixed with tallow, and when introduced into the hole or cavity, is pressed in and drawn forwards and backwards; then the impression upon the wax gives the depth, and the length is known by the motion of the searcher: if the hole is a quarter of an inch deep, and downwards, the gun is rejected.

GUNNER, is one appointed for the service of the cannon, and is the second in rank of private men in the artillery.

H.

HAIR-CLOTHS, are used for covering powder in waggons;

H A

waggons, upon batteries, fixed bombs, hand-grenades, and several other uses.

HALBERT, is the arms carried by Serjeants of foot.

HALF-MOON, is properly an out-work, composed of two faces, making a salient angle, whose gorge is turned like a crescent, or forming an arch of a circle. The ravelins that are built before the curtains are now called *Half-moons*; the name of ravelin being almost laid aside by the soldiers.

HALT, is a word of command to stand fast.

HAND-BARROW, is made of light wood, and is of great use in fortification, for carrying earth from one place to another; or in a siege, for carrying bombs or cannon balls along the trenches, &c.

HAND-GRENADE. See *Grenade*.

HAND-SPIKE, is a piece of ash, elm, or other strong wood, five or six foot long, cut thin at one end, that it may be easily pushed between things which are to be separated, or raised. It is better than a crow of iron, because its length allows a stronger poise.

HATCHET, is a small ax, used by the pioneers, who go before to prepare the ways for an army, in cutting down trees, hedges, bushes, stiles or gates.

H E

HEAD of a work, is the front of it, next to the enemy.

Head of a double tenaille, is the salient angle in the middle, and the two other sides which form the re-entering angle.

Head-piece. armour for the head, is an helmet, such as the light dragoons wear.

To head, to lead on an army, battalion, company, or party.

Head of a camp, is the ground before which the army is drawn out.

HEDGE. To line a hedge, is to plant soldiers along it, under cover, either to fire upon an enemy, to save themselves from the horse, or defend a pass or defile.

HELVE, is the handle of a hatchet, pick-ax, mattock, &c.

HEPTAGON, is a figure, capable of being fortified with several regular bastions.

HERISON, is a barrier made of one strong beam, or plank of wood, stuck full of iron spikes; it is supported in the middle, and turns upon a pivot or axis.

HERSE, or *Port-cullice*, is made of strong pieces of wood, jointed cross-ways, like a lettice, or harrow. Before it can be broke open, the besieged have time to rally and repulse them.

Herse, is likewise an engine,

H O

gine, like a harrow, stuck full of iron spikes: it is used in the place of a chevaux-de-frise, to throw in the ways where horse or foot are to pass.

HEXAGON, is a figure of six sides, capable of being fortified with six bastions.

HIDES, tanned hides, are always carried along with an army, especially in the fire-workers stores, to protect powder or fixed bombs from the rain; and are also very useful upon batteries or in laboratories.

HOBITS, are a sort of small mortars, about eight inches diameter, some seven, some six: they resemble a mortar in every thing but their carriage, which is made in the fashion of that belonging to a gun, only much shorter; they march with the guns, and are very good for annoying an enemy at a distance, with small bombs, or in keeping a pass, being loaded with cartouches.

HONEY-COMBS are flaws and defects in the charged cylinder of a cannon; it is a fault in casting the piece.

HONOUR, is a virtue particularly incumbent on an Officer to preserve unsullied; consequently, all his actions should be guided by it: a man of true honour would rather exert his patience than his courage, except in de-

H O

fence of his King and country; for he who is guided by principles of religion and justice, establishes his character, and recommends himself to the favour of his Prince, who always rewards the deserving.

HORN-BEAM, a wood much used for making the fuses of shells.

HORNS, powder-horns, which the gunners sling over their shoulders with a belt, to prime the guns or mortars.

HORIZONTAL, is a superficies parallel with the horizon.

HORN-WORK, is composed of a front, and two branches. The front is made into two half bastions and a curtain. This work is of the nature of a crown-work, only smaller, and serves for the same purpose.

HORSE, are troops that fight on horseback.

HORSE-SHOE, is a small round or oval work, with a parapet, made generally in a moat or marsh.

HOSPITAL, is a place appointed at a siege, or garrison, for the reception of sick and wounded. It should be provided with Physicians and Surgeons of the greatest eminence, that the life of a man who hath exposed it in the service of his Prince, may not be lost by the ignorance or inattention of the one, or his limbs

J A

limbs taken off by the unskilfulness or inhumanity of the other. The Director of an hospital ought to be a man of very amiable character; remarkably humane and frugal; for, having the stores in his custody, by withholding the use of them, he may endanger the lives of those who are wounded or sick; and, by delivering them out with too much profuseness, he may suffer amazing waste.

HOWITZ, a sort of mortar, mounted upon a field carriage like a gun. The difference between a mortar and howitz is, that the trunnions are at the end of the first, but in the middle of the last.

HURDLES, or *clayes*, are made of branches or twigs, interwoven together, in the figure of a long square; about five or six foot long; and three, or three and half broad. The closer they are woven the better. They are used in covering traverses, lodgments, caponeers, cofers, &c. and are covered over with earth, to secure them from the enemy's artificial fire-works, or stones which might be thrown upon them; and likewise to lay upon marshy ground, or pass a foss.

I.

JACK, is an engine much used about guns or mortars, and is always carried with

I N

the artillery, for raising up the carriages, &c.

INDENTED LINE, is a line running out and in, like the teeth of a saw, forming several angles, so that one side defends another. They are used on the banks of rivers, where they enter the town.

To indent with a barrack master, is to sign a return of the barrack's bedding, &c.

INDEPENDENT TROOP, or *company*, is a troop not incorporated into any regiment.

INFANTRY, are regiments, or independent companies, of foot.

INSULT. A work is said to be insulted when it is attacked suddenly and openly.

INTERIOR *side of a fortification*, is the imaginary line drawn from the center of one bastion to that of the next; or, rather, the curtain produced to the centers of the bastions.

INTRENCHED. An army is said to be intrenched, when they have raised works before them, to fortify themselves against the enemy.

INTRENCHMENTS, are all sorts of works, made to fortify a post against an enemy. A post is intrenched, when it is covered with a foss and parapets.

INVALID, is a man who has spent his time in the service, till, either through age or wounds, he is rendered

K E

ed incapable; when he should be comfortably provided for in an hospital, or have a yearly allowance from the crown. If able to do garrison duty, they are sometimes put into invalid regiments or companies.

INVESTING a place, the first operation of a siege, is to surround it with troops, so as to prevent any thing entering into or being carried out of it.

JOINT-BOLTS, are those iron bolts which fix one end of a cap square to the carriage.

IRON-GUNS, were first made of hammered, but now of cast iron.

K

KETTLE, or *copper*, is a vessel used to boil compositions for fire-works.

KETTLE-DRUMMER, is a man on horseback, appointed to beat the kettle-drum.

KETTLE-DRUMS, are two sorts of large basons of copper or brass; rounded in the bottom, and covered over with vellum, or goat skin, which a number of screwstake holding of, fasten to a rim of iron; from which hangs a fringed banner of silk or damask, richly embroidered with gold or silver, sometimes with both.

KEYS, *fore-lock*, serve to pass through the lower ends of bolts, to fasten them.

L A

Keys, with chains and staples, fixed on the side-pieces of a carriage, or mortar-beds, fasten the cap-squares, by passing through the eyes of the eye-bolts.

Keys, spring, serve for the same purposes as the former; but, instead of being one single piece, they are of two, like two springs laid one over another. When they are put into the eye-bolts they are pinched together at the ends; and when in, open again, so as not to be shaken out by the motion of the carriages. They are also used in travelling carriages.

KLINKETS, are a sort of small gate, made through palisades for sallies.

L

LABORATORY, is any sort of work-house; but I bring it in here as a term belonging to gunnery; and it signifies the place where the fire-workers and bombardiers prepare their stores, &c. There is sometimes a large tent carried along with the artillery to the field for this use, with all sorts of tools and materials, and is called the laboratory tent.

LADLES, made of copper to hold the powder for loading of guns, with long handles of wood, when cartridges are not used.

Ladles, small, of copper, with short handles, are used

to

to fill the fuses of shells, cases of sky rockets, &c.

LANTHORNS, *Muscovy*, dark, and *common*, are used in the field when dark to light the Gunners in the camp to prepare the stores.

LANCE-SERGEANT, is a Corporal, acting and doing duty as a Sergeant; though he receives only Corporal's pay.

LANCE-CORPORAL, is a private man, acting and doing duty as a Corporal, for soldier's pay.

LANE. To make a lane, is to draw men up in two ranks facing one another; which is generally done, as a mark of honour, in the streets through which the Lord-lieutenant of Ireland, or Lords-justices, pass. The corpse of an Officer also passes through a lane.

LIMBER, a two wheel carriage with shafts to fasten the trail of travelling carriages, by means of the pintle or iron pin, when travelling, and taken off from the battery, or in the park of artillery, which is called un-limbering of the guns.

LIEUTENANT-GENERAL, is a post of such great consequence, as only an Officer remarkable for courage, conduct, ability, and fidelity, can properly fill. He ought not only to understand his own, but also the business

of a General, because he is often intrusted with the command of an army.

Lieutenant-general of the ordnance, is next in command to the Master-general, and, in his absence, the command devolves on him. See *Master-general of the ordnance*.

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL of a regiment, should be a man of great experience, know how to attack or defend a post, and lead the regiment to battle. He should be well acquainted with the qualifications of all his Officers, and endeavour to promote a perfect harmony among them.

LIEUTENANT, of the horse or foot, is the second Officer in a troop or company; in the absence of the Captain, commands it; and is not only answerable to the service, but to him also, for the care and management of it.

LIGHT-HORSE, are men particularly light, mounted upon hunters, and armed with carabines, pistols, and long swords.

LINE, is the name of the works made by an army from one town or strong post to another, behind which it is encamped, to guard a part of the country.

Line of defence, is the distance between the salient angle of the bastion and the opposite flank; that is, it is the face produced to the flank.

Line

Line of circumvallation, is the work, or retrenchment, made about an army which besieges a place to secure it against any insult from without. It is made of a parapet with a ditch before it at every hundred and twenty toises, or thereabout. The parapet projects outwards in an angle; which projection is called a redan, and serves to flank or defend the other parts.

Line of direction, formerly marked upon guns, by a short point upon the muzzle and cavity on the base ring, to direct the eye in pointing the gun, but are left off at present for no substantial reason.

Line of countervallation, is the work made by an army which besieges a place between their camp and the town, to cover it against an enterprize of the garrison; it is made much after the same manner as the line of circumvallation, only in a contrary disposition.

Line of counter-approach, is a kind of trench made by the Garrison when besieged, going from the covert-way, in a right line, so as that part of the enemy's approaches may be enfiladed from thence.

LINSPINS, are small pins of iron which keeps the wheel of a cannon or waggon on the axle-tree; for when the end of the axle-tree is put through the nave, the lin-

pin is put in to keep the wheel from falling off.

LINSTOCK, is a staff of wood about three feet long, upon one end of which is a piece of iron that divides in two turnings from one another, having each a place to receive a match and a screw to keep it fast; the other end is pointed and shod with iron to stick in the ground.

LIZILERE, Berm, Foreland, or Relais, is a space of ground left at the foot of the rampart on the side next the country, designed to receive the ruins of the rampart to prevent its filling up the fois: it is sometimes pallisadoed, and, in Holland, is generally planted with a quick-set hedge: when this space is covered with a parapet, it is called a *Faus-bray*, or *Low-wall*.

LOCKING-PLATES, thin, flat pieces of iron, nailed on the sides of a field-carriage, where the wheels touch it, in turning, to prevent the wearing of the wood in those places.

LOCKSPIT, is a small cut or trench made with a spade of about a foot wide, to mark out the first lines of a work.

LODGE-MENT, is the work made by the besiegers in some part of a fortification to maintain it after the besiegers are drove out.

LOOP-

M A

LOOP-HOLES, are square or oblong holes made in the wall to fire through with muskets.

LOZANCE, or *rhombe*, is a figure of four equal sides, whose angles are too acute and too obtuse.

LUNETTE, is a small work raised sometimes in the middle of the foss before the curtain, forming an angle, its terre-plein rising but a little above the surface of the water, about twelve feet broad, with a parapet of eighteen feet. There is another sort of lunette which is larger, and raised to cover the faces of the half moon; and is likewise composed of two faces; a longer and a shorter.

M

MADRIERS are long planks of very broad wood used for supporting the earth in mining, carrying on a sap, making coffers, caponeers, galleries, and many other uses at a siege. They are likewise used to cover the mouth of petards after they are loaded, and are fixed with the petards to the gates or other places designed to be forced open. When the planks are not strong enough, they are doubled with plates of iron.

MAGAZINE, or *arsenal*, is the place where all stores are kept, guns founded, and carpenters, wheel-wrights,

M A

smiths, turners, and other handicrafts, are constantly employed in making all things belonging to an artillery.

MAJOR-GENERAL, is a post of great consequence, and he who possesses it should be an Officer of great experience and observation. But, of all the accomplishments required for the composition of this exalted character, courage is the first, without which I make no account of the others, because they will then be rendered useless; the second is genius, which must be strong and fertile in expedients; and the third is health. He is allowed an aid-de-camp and a guard.

Major of a corps, is to be active, vigilant, and well acquainted with the strength of the battalion and details of a corps, and well instructed in the exercise and every kind of manœuvre.

Town-major, is to see the guards mounted, the rounds and posts assigned; regulate the centinels, receive the parole from a Governor or Officer commanding in his absence; go rounds, visit the guards, and give the Governor or Officer commanding an account of all that passes.

MAIN-BODY of the army, is the body of troops that marches between the advance and rear-guard. In a camp, it is that part of the army encamped

encamped between the right and left wing.

MAIN-GUARD, or *grand guard*, is a body of horse posted before a camp for the safety of an army. In garrison, it is a guard generally mounted by the eldest Subaltern-officer upon the parade the morning of mounting.

MALLET, is a wooden hammer, the uses of which are so well known as to need no description.

MANŒUVRE of troops, consists solely in distributing motion equally to every part, so far as can be, to enable the whole to form, or change their position in the most expeditious and best method, to answer the purposes required of a battalion, brigade, or line, of cavalry or infantry.

MANTELETS, are great planks of wood of about five feet high and three inches thick, which, by being pushed forward on small trucks, serve at a siege to cover the men from the hand-grenades and fire-works of the place. They are of two sorts, either single or double. Single mantelets are made by joining two or three such planks together with bars of iron to make three feet, or three feet and a half broad to cover those that carry them. Double mantelets are made by putting earth between two such rows of planks, and are used

in making approaches and batteries near the place, as the others are in making lodgments on the counter-scarp. They are covered with letten, and made small at bottom and top, that they may more easily be joined together. Some are so made as to cover the soldiers from the fire, in front, or in flank.

Mantelet, is a kind of moving parapet, made of strong planks about four feet long and three high, mounted on two wheels, with a long pole fixed to it. They serve to cover the sappers in the front against musket-shot.

MARCH, in general, is the steps made in marching; or the moving of a body of men from one place to another; but the beat of a drum, when the troops are marching, is also called the *long march*; and *march* is likewise a word of command.

MATCH, a small rope or twist about three quarters of an inch diameter, twisted hard, which, being lighted at one end, burns leisurely without going out. It is used in artillery for firing guns and mortars; and serves likewise to trace batteries instead of ropes.

MATROSS, is a soldier in the train of artillery, properly an apprentice to a gunner, and hath the least pay of any soldier in the artillery.

MAXIMS,

MAXIMS, in fortification, are certain general rules established by engineers, founded on reason and experience, which, being exactly observed, a place fortified according as they direct, will be in a good posture of defence. The chief maxims are,

1, There ought to be no part in the fortification of a place but what is discovered and flanked by the besieged: for if there be any part of a place which is not well flanked, the enemy, being thus under cover, will with the more ease attack in that place and carry it.

2, A fortress should command all the country round it, that the besiegers may neither cover themselves, find places to favour their approaches and attacks, or overlook the works of the place, to batter them with more advantage.

3, The works farthest distant from the center of the place must be still lowest, and commanded by those that are nearer; to the end they may be defended by the higher works and those nearer the place: that so the enemy, by being exposed, may be obliged to quit them; even after possession, because of the besieged; and likewise, that the enemy, by being masters of such works, may not overlook the works of the place.

4, The flanked angle, or point of the bastion, ought to be at least seventy degrees, that it may the better resist the force of an enemy's battery, in case they design to beat it down and lodge there.

5, The acute flanked angle near to a right angle is preferable to all other: it is certain, if the flanked angle be a right angle, it has all the strength that can be given it, having solidity enough to withstand the enemy's batteries; but an angle near the right makes the tenaille of the place more compact, by the angle of the shoulder shortening and battering the defence, and by its not exposing the face so much to the enemy. So that it follows, of consequence, that an obtuse angle is very deficient.

6, The shortest faces are the best, because the longer they are the weaker, for the enemy attacks them with a greater front.

7, The flank must have some part under cover, which signifies it must be covered by an orillon, otherwise the defence is presently ruined, and the lodgment is no sooner made on the counterscarp but the place is obliged to capitulate; as has been often seen.

8, There must be an accord between these maxims to

to render the fortification perfect; for, if the gorge be too large, the face suffers; the more the flank is covered the less it is subject to be ruined, but then the defence is more oblique. In making a second flank, the flanked angle is made too weak; and by discovering the face, the defence is more easy, though more exposed to the enemy's batteries. In a word, there are advantages and disadvantages in all; and the secret consists in judging whether conforming with one maxim be more advantageous than disagreeing with another.

MEASURES, for powder, are made of copper, holding from an ounce to eight or twelve pounds, and are very convenient in a siege, when guns or mortars are loaded with loose powder, especially in ricochet firing.

Measure-angle, is an instrument of brass for measuring angles, either salient or reentrant, to know exactly the number of degrees and minutes, to lay them out upon paper.

MEDICINE-CHEST, serves the Surgeons to carry their medicines and instruments in the field, or at sea.

MERLAN, is that part of the parapet which is terminated by two embrasures of a battery, so that its height and thickness is the same

with that of the parapet. It serves to cover those on the battery from the enemy, and is best when made of earth well beat and close than of stone, because these fly about and wound those it should defend.

MILITARY ART, is the true science of war-like motion.

MILITARY execution, is the ravaging and destroying of a country for contributions.

MINE, is a kind of lodgment made under ground to place powder in, which is set on fire in order to blow up the works above it. The difference between mines and counter-mines is, that the first are made by the besiegers, and the latter by the besieged.

MINER, is he that works in the mine, with his head covered by a hood to save his eyes from the earth that falls down.

MOAT, *ditch, or foss*, is a depth or trench round the rampart of a place to defend it and prevent surprizes. The brink of the moat next the rampart is called the scarp; and that opposite, on the other side, is called the counter-scarp, which forms a re-entering angle before the center of the curtain. A dry moat round a place that is large and has a strong garrison, is preferable

preferable to one full of water, because the passage may be disputed inch by inch; and the besiegers, when lodged in the moat, are continually exposed to the bombs, grenades, and other fire-works, which are thrown incessantly over the ramparts on their works. In the middle of a dry moat is sometimes made another small moat called the cunnette, which is generally dug so deep as to obtain a spring for filling it. The deepest and broadest fosses are accounted the best; but a deep foss is preferable to a broad one. The ordinary breadth is about twenty fathoms, and the depth sixteen feet.

To drain a moat or foss full of water, is, to dig a trench deeper than the level of the water to let it run out. When it is drained; there are hurdles thrown upon the mud and slime, and covered with earth or bundles of rushes to make a sure and firm passage.

MOINEAU, is a French term for a little flat bastion, raised upon a re-entring angle, before a curtain, which is too long, between two other bastions. It is commonly joined to the curtain, but sometimes separated by a foss, and then called a detached bastion. They are not raised so high as the works of the place; because they would then be

exposed to the fire of the besieged. In case the enemy should lodge themselves, their parapet, as well as the parapet of all out-works, ought to be cannon proof; that is to say, eighteen foot thick.

MONT-PAG-NOTE, or *post of the invulnerable*, an eminence chosen out of cannon shot of the place besieged.

MORTARS, made of brass or iron, are used both in the land and sea service for throwing shells and carcasses; those for land are shortest and lightest, and their chambers hold least powder.

They are distinguished by the diameter of their bores, thus: a thirteen, ten, or eight inch mortar, are those whose diameter of their bores are thirteen, ten, or eight inches long; the royal and coehorn excepted. The royal carries a shell whose diameter is 5. 5 inches; and that of the coehorn whose diameter is 4. 6 inches.

MOULDS, for casting shot for guns, pistols, muskets, and carabines. The first are of iron used by the founders, and the others by the artillery in garrison and the field.

Moulds, of wood or brass, are used in laboratory works for filling and driving all sorts of rockets, and cartridges, of different sizes.

MOTION, *of an army*, is the several marches and counter-marches

* D

M U

ter-marches it makes, or the changing of its post for an advantageous encampment, either with a design to engage the enemy, or shun fighting.

Motion, of a bomb or ball, is the progress it makes in the air, after it is delivered; and is of three sorts. The *violent motion* is the first explosion, when the powder has worked its effect upon the ball, so far as the bomb or ball may be supposed to go, in a right line; the *mixed motion* is when the weight of the ball begins to overcome the force, which was given by the powder; and the *natural motion* is when the ball or bomb is falling.

MOULDINGS, of a gun or mortar, are all the eminent parts; as squares or rounds, which serve generally for ornaments; such as the breech moulding. The rings of a gun are likewise mouldings.

TO MOUNT GUARD, is to go upon duty; *to mount a breach,* is to run up to attack; and, *to mount the trenches,* is to go upon guard in the trenches.

MUSQUETS are the most commodious and useful fire-arms used in the army: they carry a ball at the rate of twenty-nine to two pound of lead.

MUSQUETEER, is a foot-soldier, armed with firelock, bayonet, and sword.

M U

MUSQUETOON, or blunderbuss.

MUSTER, is when a Commissary musters the troops, to see if they are complete, what number is sick, present, absent, or wanting, &c.

MUSTER-ROLLS, are the rolls or lists of the troop or company.

MUTINY. "Any Officer or soldier who shall presume to use traitorous or disrespectful words against the sacred person of his Majesty, or any of the royal family, is guilty of mutiny.

"Any Officer or soldier who shall behave himself with contempt or disrespect towards the General, or other Commander in Chief of our forces, or shall speak words tending to their hurt or dishonour, is guilty of mutiny.

"Any Officer or soldier who shall begin, excite, cause, or join in, army, mutiny, or sedition, in the troop, company, or regiment to which he belongs, or in any other troop, or company, in our service, or on any party, post, detachment, or guard, on any pretence whatsoever, is guilty of mutiny.

"Any Officer or soldier, who being present at any mutiny, or sedition, does not use his utmost endeavours to suppress the same, or coming to the knowledge of any mutiny, or intended mutiny, does

N A

does not, without delay, give information thereof to his Commanding-officer, is guilty of mutiny.

“Any Officer or soldier, who shall strike his superior Officer, or draw, or offer to draw, or shall lift up any weapon, or offer any violence against him, being in the execution of his office, on any pretence whatsoever, or shall disobey any lawful command of his superior Officer, is guilty of mutiny.”

MUZZEL of a gun or mortar, is the extremity of the cylinder, where the powder and ball is put in. The metal which surrounds the extremity of the cylinder, is likewise called the *Muzzel*.

N

TO NAIL, or *spike cannon*, is to drive an iron spike by main force into the vent or touch-hole; which renders the cannon unserviceable, till the spike be either got out, or a new vent drilled. In all *fortées* or sallies of a place besieged, nothing is so advantageous to the besiegers as nailing their cannon, for it takes the enemy some time to repair it.

NAVE of the wheel, is a short thick piece in the center of the wheel, which receives the end of the axle-tree, and in which the ends of the spokes are fixed; it is

O F

bound at each end with hoops of iron, called the nave-bands: it has likewise in each end of the hole, through which the end of the axle-tree goes, a ring of iron, called the wisher, which saves the hole of the nave from wearing too big.

NAVE-BOXES. There are two, one at each end, to diminish the friction of the axle-tree against the nave.

NECK of a gun, is that part betwixt the muzzle, mouldings, and the cornishings. Neck of the cascabel is that part betwixt the breech mouldings and the castabel.

O

OBLIQUE-DEFENCE, is that which is under too great an angle, as is generally the defence of a second flank, which can never be so good as a defence in front, nor is it approved of by engineers.

OBLIQUE fire from a corps, is when they throw their whole fire to the right, or to the left, without changing the front of the battalion.

OCTAGON, is an eight sided figure of fortification.

OFFICERS in the army, are of three classes. Those having commissions from the King, are called *Commissioned Officers*. Such as have no commission, but only warrants from their Colonels,

are called *Warrant Officers*: and those who have no commissions nor warrants, are called *Non-commissioned Officers*; such as Serjeant-majors, Quarter - master - serjeants, Serjeants, and Corporals, Drum-majors, Fife-Majors, drummers, and fifers; who can be reduced by the Colonel of a corps, without a Court-martial; but it is seldom done.

GENERAL - OFFICERS. Their province is vastly extensive, comprehending the art of subsisting an army, of conducting it, of preserving it in such a state, as never to be obliged to engage contrary to desire, of choosing his posts, of forming his troops in a thousand dispositions, and of seizing the advantage of that favourable minute which happens in all battles, and which is capable of assuring them of success. All these are circumstances of the greatest importance; and, at the same time, as various as the situation, and the accidents which produce them.

Field-officers, are those who have the command of a corps; as Colonel, Lieutenant-colonel, and Major. The two last often have the appellation of Lieutenant-colonel, or Major-commandant, if they have the sole command of a corps.

SUBALTERN - OFFICERS, are Lieutenants, Second-lieu-

tenants, Cornets, and Ensigns.

A **COMMISSION OFFICER** ought to be endued with many good qualifications: as, conception to apprehend easily what he is to do; health for enabling him to endure the fatigues of war; judgment to execute what he is commanded; and presence of mind to secure the advantages arising from success, or in preventing the evils of an unfortunate expedition; secrecy in all affairs of consequence with which he is entrusted; and affability to gain the esteem of his brother Officers.

ONFLECACON, an eleven sided fortification.

OPEN, is a word of command: as, *open your files*; or, *open your ranks*.

OBLONG SQUARE. See Plan II.

ORB. A battalion, or any number of men, formed six deep, ranks closed, and the flanks wheeled inwards till they join, are *in orb*.

ORDER, is a word of command: as, *order your fire-lock*, *open*, or, *marching order*, and *close order*.

Order of a battle, is the disposition of battalions, and squadrons of an army, in one or more lines, according to the nature of the ground, either to engage an enemy, or be reviewed.

ORDERS, are the notice given

given every day, or night, by the General to the Lieutenant-general of the day, who conveys them to the Major-general, (we had no Brigadier-generals serving the last war, except in America, and on expeditions) and he to the Brigade-majors, who give them to the Adjutants, and they to the Sergeants, that the army may know when to march; what detachments, convoys, or parties are to be sent, when they are to forage or graze, &c.

Orders, in general, signify all that is commanded by a superior Officer.

ORDNANCE, are all sorts of guns, mortars, firelocks, carabines, pistols, bayonets, espartoons, swords, &c. and all sorts of arms, or stores, belonging either to offence or defence.

ORDNANCE, is a name given to all that concerns artillery. Thus, the Commander in Chief is called Master-general of the Ordnance, instead of Artillery; and the second in command, is the Lieutenant-general of the Ordnance.

Ordnance, Board of, consists of four Officers, the Surveyor-general, Clerk of the Ordnance, Store-keeper, and the Clerk of Deliveries; over which presides the Master, or, in his absence, the Lieutenant-general. This Board deliberates, regulates, and or-

ders every thing relating to the Artillery.

ORGNES, are thick long pieces of wood, pointed and shod with iron, clear one of another, hanging perpendicularly each by a particular rope or cord, over the gate of a strong place to be let fall in case of an emergency.

Orgnes, are many harquebusses linked together, or divers musket-barrels laid in a row, so that they may be discharged, either all at once, or separately; also long and thick pieces of wood, with iron plates at the end, hung over a gate, to stop it up instead of a port-cullice.

ORILLON, is a part of a bastion near the shoulder, which serves to cover the retired flank from being seen obliquely.

Orillon, is a mass of earth, faced with stone, built on the shoulder of a casement bastion, to cover the cannon of the retired flank, and hinder its being dismounted by the enemy's cannon. Some are round and some square; but those which resemble the square *orillon* are best, because they can be made for less expence, and can contain more men to fire directly on the face of the opposite bastion than the round can do. *Orillon* is likewise called the *shoulder* and *epaulement*.

ORTHOGRAPHY, or *profile*, is the representation of a work, shewing its breadth, thickness, height, and depth, so as it would appear, if cut perpendiculary on the horizontal line, from the uppermost to the lowest of its parts: as ichnography supposes an edifice or work, cut horizontally; so orthography supposes it cut vertically, and never shews the length or any of its parts as a plan does: but then a plan shews nothing of the height or depth of a work.

OVAL, is a plain figure bounded by its own circumference, within which no point can be taken, and from which all right lines drawn to the circumference, can be equal.

OVERSLAGH, originally derived from the Dutch language, signifies to *skip over*. For instance, suppose four battalions, each consisting of eight Captains, are doing duty together, and that a Captain's guard is daily mounted: if, in the Buffs, the second Captain is doing duty of Deputy-adjutant-general; and the fourth and seventh Captain in the King's are acting, one as Aid-de-camp, the other as Brigademajor, the common duty of these three Captains must be overslaghed; that is, equally divided among the other Cap-

tains. A sketch of the table formed for this purpose, may, perhaps, help still farther to explain the term *overslagh*, and is, therefore, inserted.

		Heads of each Column.															
Regiments,	N ^o of Captains	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8								
The Royal,	8	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8								
Queen's Royal,	8	1	5	8	12	15	19	23	26								
Old Buffs,	8	2	6	9	13	16	20	24	27								
King's own,	8	3	7	10	14	17	21	25	28								
Total	32	4	7	11	18	22	29	29	29								

N. B. The three blank columns shew where the *overslaghs* take effect.

OUT-WORKS, or *advanced works*, detached, and *exterior works*, are works of several sorts, which cover the body of the place: as, ravelins, half-moons, tenailles, horn-works, crown-works, counter-guards, envelopes, swallow-tails, lunettes, &c. These serve not only to cover the place, but likewise to keep an enemy at distance, and hinder his getting any advantage

advantage of hollow or rising-grounds, that may happen to be near the counterscarp of the place; for such cavities and eminences may serve for lodgments to the besiegers, facilitate the carrying on approaches, and raising their batteries against the town. When out-works are placed one before another, you will find a ravelin before the curtain, a horn-work before the ravelin, and a small ravelin before the curtain of the horn-work; but then, the nearest to the body of the place must be the highest, though lower than the works of the place, that they may gradually command those which are without them, and oblige the enemy to dislodge, in case they had possession of them.

P.

PALISADES, are a kind of stakes made of strong split wood, of about nine feet long, three feet deep in the ground, in rows about six inches asunder. They are placed in the covert-way, at three feet from, and parallel to the parapet or side of the glacis, to secure it from being surprized.

PANNELS, are the carriages which carry mortars, and their beds, upon a march.

PARADE, is the place where troops assemble to go upon guard, or any other

duty. In a garrison, where there are two, three, or more regiments, each have their regimental parade, where they assemble upon all occasions, especially upon an alarm. In a camp, all parties, convoys, or detachments, that are to go abroad, have a parading place appointed at the head of some regiment.

PARALLELS, at a siege, signify the trenches or lines made parallel to the defence of the place besieged: they are likewise called lines of communication and boyau's.

Parallels, or places of arms, are deep trenches, fifteen or eighteen feet wide, joining the several attacks together. They serve to place the guard of the trenches in, to be at hand to support the workmen when attacked. There are generally three in an attack: the first about three hundred toises from the covert way; the second, one hundred and sixty; and the third is nearer on the glacis.

PARAPET, is an elevation of earth, designed for covering the soldiers from the enemy's cannon, or small shot; wherefore, its thickness is from eighteen to twenty foot, its height is six on the inside, and four or five on the side next the country. It is raised on the rampart, and has a slope, called the superior talas, or glacis of the parapet,

parapet, on which the soldiers lay their musquets to fire over. This pent, or slope, makes it easy for the musqueteers to fire into the ditch, or, at least, on the counterscarp. To raze the glacis of the parapet, by firing, is called *firing-in-barbe*. The exterior talus of the parapet, is the slope facing the country. The height of the parapet being six foot on the inside, it has a banquet or two for the soldiers who defend it, to mount upon, that they discover the country the better; as likewise the foss and counterscarp, to fire as they find occasion.

Parapet of the covert-way, or *coredor*, is what covers that way from the sight of the enemy; which renders it the most dangerous place for the besiegers, because of the neighbourhood of the faces, flanks, and curtains of the place. It is the same with glacis, which signifies that whole mass of earth which serves to cover the coredor and slopes towards the country.

PARK of artillery is the place appointed for the encampment of an artillery, which is generally the rear of both lines; but, at a siege, the park of artillery is a post fortified out of cannon shot of the place besieged; where are kept all the arms and

utensils necessary for a siege; as bombs, petards, carcasses, hand-grenades, powder, ball, &c. with all sorts of instruments and utensils for erecting or destroying any sort of fortification. Great precaution is to be used about the park of artillery, for fear of fire.

Park of provisions, is the place where the sutlers pitch their tents, and sell provisions to the soldiers, which is in the rear of each corps. But I think the place where the bread waggons are drawn up, and where the soldiers receive their ammunition bread, being the store of the army, is most properly the park of provisions.

PARLEY. See *Chamade*.

PARTIZAN, is a person very dextrous in commanding a party; and who, knowing the country well, is employed in getting intelligence, or surprizing the enemy's convoy.

Partizan party, is a small body of infantry given to a Partizan, to make an incursion upon the enemy; to lurk about their camp, to disturb their foragers, and to intercept their convoys.

PARTY, is a small number of men, of horse or foot, sent into an enemy's country, to pillage, take prisoners, and oblige the country to come under contribution.

Parties

P E

Parties are often sent out to view the ways and roads, get intelligence, look for forage, or amuse the enemy upon a march. They are frequently sent also upon the flanks of an army, or regiment, to discover the enemy if near, and prevent a surprize or ambuscade.

PATEE, a small work not unlike a horse-shoe: that is to say, an elevation of earth, of an irregular form; but, for the most part, oval, with a parapet. It is generally raised in marshy grounds, to cover the gate of a place, and has only a fore-right defence, and nothing to flank it.

PATROLLING, is a night watch, consisting of a Sergeant, or Corporal, with four or six private men, who are sent from the guard or picquet to prevent disorder, and make prisoners all soldiers out of their tents, quarters, or barracks, without leave.

PAY, is the allowance which a soldier receives for his subsistence.

PAY-MASTER, is he who is intrusted with the payment of a regiment, keeps the non-effective, and all accounts relating to the regiment.

PERPENDICULAR, is a straight line raised upright upon another straight line, without leaning to one side or to the other, but making the angles on both sides equal.

P I

PENTAGON, is a figure bounded by five sides or polygons, which form so many angles, capable of being fortified with the like number of bastions.

PETARD, is a kind of brass pot fixed upon a strong square plank, which has an iron hook to fix it against a gate or palisades. This pot is filled with powder; which, when fixed, breaks every thing about it; and thereby makes an opening to enter the place.

PETARDEER, is he who loads, fixes, and fires the petard.

PICKET, is a small pointed staff, shod with iron, which serves to mark out the angles and principal part of a fortification when the engineer is tracing a plan upon the ground with a line. There are, likewise, small pointed stakes, which serve to drive through fascines or gazons, to keep them fast, when the earth is bad, or the work raised in haste.

Picket is, also, a stake of about nine or ten inches high, fixed in the ground, and standing upright, to punish men for offences that do not deserve death, by placing the criminal's foot upon it, and tying up his hand to a ring above his head, so that he neither stands nor hangs; nor can he shift his foot,
or

P I

or change feet to ease himself.

Pickets, are likewise the stakes which troopers drive before their tents, at about two yards distance. From one to another of these pickets is stretched a rope, called the picket-rope, to which they tie their horses, and are also used for several other uses. Those for pinning the fascines of a battery, are from three to five feet long, and their heads two or three inches in diameter.

PICQUET-GUARD. See Guard.

PIECE of ordnance, includes all sorts of great guns and mortars. *Battering-pieces* are the large guns used at sieges for making the breaches; such as the twenty-four pounder and culverin; the one carrying a twenty-four, and the other an eighteen pound ball. *Field-pieces* are twelve pounders and demi-culverins; six pounders, sakers, minions, and three pounders; which march with the army, and always encamp behind the second line, except in day of battle, when they are brought into the front. A soldier's firelock is likewise called his *piece*.

PILE, or *pyramid of bombs or balls* is so called from the form they use to store them up in magazines.

P L

PIONEERS, are soldiers, armed with firelock, bayonet, sword, saw and hatchet, who wear a cap and leather apron. They are employed in cutting down trees, and making the roads and ways for the army to march.

PISTOLS are fire-arms used by the horse and dragoons: each man has a pair.

PLACE, in fortification, signifies a fortified town.

Place of arms, in a town, is a space left near the centre of it, where a guard is generally posted. In towns regularly fortified, the place of arms ought to be in the centre, and resemble the figure of a polygon.

Place of arms of an attack, or of a trench, is a foss, with a parapet, or an epaulement, to cover a body of horse or foot where they may be ready to withstand the sallies of the besieged. The places most convenient for this purpose are such as can easily succour one another, and are out of sight of the defences of the place besieged; as hollows or hollow ways, especially if they cross one another; for their depth serves as a parapet to cover the infantry: if they have not a sufficient depth, that defect may be supplied with gabions, sand-bags, or whatever can hinder the besiegers from seeing

ing into it. When a foss is cut round it, it is called a redoubt. In carrying on the trenches, redoubts must be raised at convenient distances, to lodge the infantry, which guard the trenches.

PLACE of arms of a camp, are the bell tents, at the head of each company, where they lodge their arms.

PLACE of arms of the covert-way, is a part of it, opposite to the re-entering angle of the counterscarp, projecting outwards in an angle.

Plan, a term in geometry, is a superficies, whose parts are all equally disposed betwixt its extremities; so that one part is neither higher nor lower than another. A *horizontal plan*, is parallel to the horizon; and a *vertical plan*, is perpendicular to the horizon.

PLAN, ground-plot, or ichnography, in fortification, is the representation of the first of fundamental tract of a work, shewing the length of its lines, quantity of its angles, breadth of the ditches, thickness of the ramparts and parapets, and the distance of one part from another: so that a plan represents a work, such as it would appear, if it were cut equal with the level of the horizon, or cut off at the foundation; but it marks neither the heights nor the depths of the several parts of the

works; which is properly profile, and expresses only the heights, breadths, and depths, without taking notice of the lengths. As architects, before they lay the foundation of their edifice, make their design upon paper, to discover any faults in their plans; so an Engineer, before tracing his work on the ground, should make plans of his designs upon paper, to the end he may do nothing without serious deliberation.

Plans are also very useful for Generals or Governors, in either attacking or defending a place, in chusing a camp, determining attacks, conducting the approaches, or examining the strength and weakness of a place; especially such plans as represent a place, with the country about it, and shew the rivers, fountains, marshes, ditches, vallies, mountains, woods, houses, churches, and all other particulars, contiguous thereto.

PLANKS, or madriers, are pieces of oak, very thick and broad.

PLATES, prise plates, are two plates of iron on the cheeks of a gun-carriage, from the cope-square to the centre, through which the prise-bolts go, and on which the hand-spikes rest, when it poises up the breech of the piece. *Breast-plates* are the two

P O

two plates on the face of the carriage, on the other cheek. *Train-plates* are the two plates on the cheeks at the train of the carriage; and *Dulidge-plates*, are the six plates on the wheel of a gun carriage, where the fellows are joined together, to strengthen the dulidges.

PLAT FORM, is a floor made of strong planks, laid upon joints, on a battery, to place the guns or mortars upon, in order to prevent the wheels or mortar beds from sinking in the ground.

PLATOON, is a small number of soldiers who fire together; such as the grenadier company, divided into four platoons to cover the angles of the square, &c.

POINT, *mathematical*, is a point which hath no parts; that is to say, neither length, breadth, nor thickness, and which consequently cannot be expressed or conceived.

Point blank, is the position of a gun when laid level; and *Point blank range* is that distance which the shot goes upon a level plain.

POLYGON, is a figure of many angles, either regular or irregular, exterior or interior.

Regular polygon, is that whose angles and sides are equal. It has an angle of the centre, and another angle of polygon. The centre of a

P O

regular polygon, is the centre of a circle, which circumscribes the polygon; that is, whose circumference passes through all the angles of the figure.

An irregular polygon hath sides whose angles are unequal.

The exterior polygon, is that whose lines touch the points of the flanked angles, when a place is fortified inwards; and,

An interior polygon, is that outward fortification which makes the angles of the gorge; so that the whole bastion is without the polygon.

PONTOONS, form a floating bridge of great boats with boards laid over them, and rails on the sides, for passing an army over a river.

PORT CULLICE, is a very strong gate or door, suspended over the common gates of fortified places.

PORT FIRE, is a composition of meal-powder, sulphur and salt-petre, drove into a case of paper, but not very hard: it is about nine or ten inches long, and, when put into a linkstock, used to fire guns or mortars instead of a match.

POST, is any sort of ground where a body of men can fortify themselves, or be in a condition of resisting an enemy.

Post

Post of honour, is that occupied by an advance-guard. The right of the two lines is the post of honour, and always given to the eldest regiments, when horse and dragoons, either on horseback or on foot, take rank of the infantry. The left being the second post, is given to the next in seniority; and so on. The centre of the line is the post of least honour, and given to the youngest corps.

Advanced post, is a spot of ground seized by a party to cover themselves and secure the posts behind them.

POSTERN, now called *sally port*, is a small door in the flank of a bastion, or other part of a garrison, to march in and out unperceived by an enemy; either to relieve the works, or to make sallies.

POUCH, is a square case, or bag of leather, with a flap over it, hanging to the two ends of the cross-belt, in which the soldier carries his cartridges, and the grenadiers hand-grenades.

POWDER, is a composition of sulphur, salt-petre, and charcoal. The sulphur and charcoal take fire, and the salt-petre makes the crack.

Powder magazine, is a bomb-proof arched building to hold powder in fortified places.

PROFILE. Engineers represent the heights, depths,

and thickness of a work, with fosses, &c. by profile, or orthography; which supposes the work to be cut through perpendicularly from top to bottom.

Proof of fire-arms. The general rule for proving guns and mortars, is, to fire them three times, with double the quantity of powder they are loaded with in common service; but, the rules of the ordnance is, that all guns under a 24 pounder are loaded with as much powder as their shot weighs; a brass 24 pounder with 21 lb. a brass 32 pounder with 26 lb. 123. and a 42 pounder with 31 lb. 83. the iron 24 pounder with 18 lb. the 32 with 21 lb. 83. and the 42 with 25 lb. The brass light field-pieces are proved with powder equal in weight to half that of their shot, except in the 24 pounder, which is loaded with 10 lb. only. The government allows 11 bullets of lead in the pound for the proof of muskets, and 14, 15, or 29 in 2 pounds, for service; 17 in the pound for the proof of carabines, and 20 for service; 28 in the pound for the proof of pistols, and 34 for service. Our light six pounders have been fired 300 times in three hours and twenty-seven minutes, loaded with 1 lb. and 43 of powder.

PRO.

PROVISIONS, is what a General or Commanding-officer, ought to be very careful of, never suffering his army to be in want of subsistence, a Governor of a garrison, &c. ought to be well provided with provisions of all sorts, such as wheat, rye, peas, beans, barley, beef, mutton, veal, bacon, cheese, butter, salt, pepper, onions, nut-megs, beer, wine, brandy, and many other things necessary in a garrison.

PROVOST-MARSHAL of an army, is an Officer appointed to secure deserters and all other criminals; he is often to go round the army, hinder the soldiers from pillaging, indie offenders, execute the sentence pronounced, and regulate the weights and measures of the army, &c.

PUNISHMENT, in general, signifies the execution of a sentence pronounced by a Court-martial upon any delinquent; but, in particular, means that one often used of inflicting a certain number of lashes upon a Non-commissioned Officer or private man; which is commonly done thus. The corps being under arms, the prisoner is brought to the front of it; a circle is then formed round him, and the proceedings of the Court-martial read; after which the prisoner is ordered to strip naked

as low as his waist, his hair tucked under a cap, and his hands and legs tied to the halberts, by the drummers and fifers, and each of them that punishes, generally gives twenty-five lashes upon the back, with a cat and nine tails. The Drum-major counts every lash with a loud voice; the Adjutant stands by to see the punishment properly inflicted; and the Surgeon, or his Mate attends, that no punishment may extend to life or limb.

Q.
QUADRANT, or *quarter of a circle*, is an instrument of brass or wood used by gunners in pointing their guns to an object, and by bombardiers in elevating their mortars: it is made of two pieces of wood joined at right angles, one of which is longer than the other, that it may enter the muzzle of the piece. They are joined by a quarter of a circle, which, divided into ninety degrees, the center is where the two pieces join, from whence there hangs a thread with a plummet, which marks the different elevations of pieces, and the greatness of the angles. The way of using it is by putting the longest side into the muzzle of the piece; from whence the plummet falls perpendicularly, and marks the angle on the quadrant. When the gun

gun or mortar is elevated to the degree desired, it is kept there by coins of wood put under the breach of a gun, or between the bracket-bolts of a mortar.

QUADRAT. To quadrat a piece, is to see whether it is duly placed in its carriage, and that the wheels be of an equal height.

QUARTER, signifies the sparing of mens lives and giving good treatment to a vanquished army.

Quarter, wheeling of a body of men, is turning the front where the flank was.

Quarter, at a siege, is the encampment upon one of the most principal passages round about a palace besieged, to prevent relief and convoys.

When it is commanded by the General, it is called the head quarters of the army; When the camp is marked out about a place besieged, then the quarters are said to be disposed: and when great detachments are made from a quarter for convoys, &c. such a quarter is said to be weakened.

Quarter of an assembly is the place where the troops meet to march from in a body, and is the same as a place of rendezvous.

Head-quarters, is the place where the General of an army has his quarters. The quarters of the Generals of horse

is, if possible, in villages behind the right and left wings; and the Generals of foot are often in the same village with the General.

Quarter intrenched, is a place fortified with a ditch and parapet to secure a body of troops.

Winter-quarters, is sometimes taken for the space of time included between leaving the camp and taking the field; but is more properly the places where the troops are lodged during the winter.

Quarters of refreshment, is the place where the troops that have been much fatigued are sent to refresh themselves.

QUARTER-MASTER-GENERAL, is a considerable post, and ought to be filled by a judicious and experienced Officer, who understands geography; for it is his business to mark out the marches and encampment of an army. He is also supposed to be well acquainted with the country, its rivers, plains, woods, marshes, mountains, passages, defiles, and even the smallest brook. He receives his orders from the General, and appoints a place for the Quarter-masters to meet him, with whom he marches to a place he thinks proper for the next camp; where he marks out to the Quarter-masters the ground allotted each corps for their camp; fixes the head quarters,

ters, convenient villages for the General-officers of the army, and describes a place for encamping the train of artillery. He sometimes conducts the army to forage, plants covering parties for their security at all the passes round them, and disposes of the troops for the winter-quarters of the army.

QUARTER-MASTER of foot, takes care of the encamping the regiment and attends the Quarter-Master-General upon a march, to know where the ground is for the regiment to encamp, which he divides among the companies. He is also to take care of the ammunition and stores of the regiment, and attend on all days that coals, forage, &c. is delivered for the regiment, to prevent frauds being committed by carriers, or any idle persons usually attending at such times.

QUARTER-MASTER of horse, except in the Blues, is a Warrant-officer, appointed by the Colonel. He takes up the ground for the troop and divides it among them; and is constantly among the horses.

QUICK MATCH, is made by putting cotton strands, drawn into lengths, into a kettle just covered with white wine vinegar, wherein a quantity of saltpetre and mealed powder is also put, and boiled

till well mixed; others put only saltpetre into water, and after that take it out hot, and lay it in a trough with some mealed powder, moistened with spirits of wine, and thoroughly wrought into cotton, by rolling it backwards and forwards with the hands. When this is done, they are taken out separately, drawn through mealed powder, and dried upon a line.

Quit your arms, is a word of command in the foot, when they ground their arms and are ordered *to the right about*, at which they march clear of their arms and disperse; but, upon the beat of a drum, or command of *stand to your arms*, they run to order again.

R.

RABINETT, a small eminence between a falconette and a base.

RAMMER of a gun, is a piece of wood fitted to the diameter of the bore, stuck upon a long staff, and used in driving home the charge and wadding.

RAMMER of a fire-lock, is a piece of iron fitted to the barrel, to ram down the charge.

RANGE, is the distance from the battery to the point where the shot, or shell touches the ground.

RANGE,

R A

RANGE, *point blank*, that when the piece lies in a horizontal direction, and upon a level plane.

RANGE, *random*, when the piece is elevated at an angle of elevation of forty-five degrees upon a level plane.

RAMPART, is an elevation of earth raised along the faces of any work of ten or fifteen feet high, to cover the inner part of that work against the fire of an enemy.

RANK, is the order or straight line, made by the soldiers of a battalion or squadron, drawn up side by side: this order was established for the marches, and for regulating the different bodies of troops and Officers which compose an army or battalion. Doubling of the ranks, is the putting two ranks into one. Closing the ranks, is to put the ranks only at two feet asunder.

Rear ranks, are the center and rear ranks; and, when closed to the front rank, are at two feet distance each rank from the other.

RATION, is a proportion of bread or forage, distributed to the army. A ration of forage, is eighteen pounds of hay, six pounds of oats, and six of straw; but sometimes it differs.

RAVES, are the upper wooden bars in a cart or wagon, supported by the round

R E

and flat staves which enter into them.

RAVELINS, are works raised on the counterscarp before the curtain of a place, and serve to cover the gate, and bridges of a town. They consist of two faces, forming a salient angle, and are defended by the faces of the neighbouring bastions. The half moons which cover the points of the bastions have their defence from the ravelins, and are most in use of all out-works. They ought to be lower than the works of the place, that they may be under the fire of the besieged. Their parapets, as those of all other out-works, ought to be cannon proof.

REAR, signifies in general, the hindmost part of an army, battalion, or regiment, and also the ground behind either.

REAR-GUARD. See *Guard*.

Rear Half-Files. Whenever a battalion is told off front, or rear, and formed six deep, which is now seldom practised, the three hindermost men are called *Rear Half-Files*.

REAR-LINE of an army, or *second line*, is about four or five hundred yards distance from the first line, which is likewise called the front line. These two lines run parallel, and have sometimes a third, which is called a reserve.

* E **RECOILE**,

RE

RECOILE, or *reserve of a gun*, is its running back when fired; which is occasioned by the struggling of the powder in the chamber, and its seeking every way to fly out. Guns whose bents are a little forward in the chace, recoil most. To lessen the recoil of a gun the platforms are generally made sloping towards the embrasures of the battery.

RECRUITS, are new raised men to supply the places of such as have lost their lives in the service, or are rendered unserviceable by age or wounds.

RECRUIT-HORSES, are the horses bought up for compleating the regiments of cavalry.

REDANS, or indented works, are lines or faces forming salient and re-entrant angles flanking one another, and are generally used on the side of a river which runs through a garrisoned town.

REDOUBTS, are generally square works of stone, raised without the glacis of a place, about musquet shot from the town, having loop-holes for the musqueteers to fire through, and surrounded by a foss: but sometimes they are of earth, having only a defence in front surrounded with a parapet and foss. Both the one and the other serve for detached guards to interrupt

RE

the enemy's works; and are sometimes made on the angles of the trenches, for covering the workmen against the sallies of the garrison. The length of their sides may be from ten to twenty fathom; their parapet, having two or three banquets, must be nine or ten feet thick, and their foss the same both in breadth and depth. They contain a body of men for the guard of the trenches, and are likewise called places of arms.

Redoubt, castle, or donjon, is a place more particularly intrenched, and separated from the rest by a foss. There is generally in each of them a high tower, from whence the country round the place may be discovered.

Redoubt, is also the name of a small work, made in a ravelin.

Redoubt, is, likewise a square work, without any bastions, placed at some distance from a fortification, to guard a pass, or to prevent an enemy from approaching that way.

REDUCE. To reduce a place, is to oblige the Governor or Commandant to surrender it to the besiegers by capitulation.

REGIMENT, battalion, or corps, are the same thing, except that some regiments have more battalions than one.

R E

REGULAR ATTACKS, are such as are made in form; that is, by regular approaches.

RELIEVER, an iron ring fixed to a handle by means of a socket, so as to be at right angles to it: it serves to disengage the searcher of a gun, when one of its points are retained in a hole and cannot be got out otherwise.

RELIEVE. To relieve the guard, is to put fresh men upon the guard; and, to relieve the trenches, is to relieve the guard of the trenches, by sending off those that have been there upon duty before.

REINFORCEMENT to an army, is an addition of fresh troops to strengthen an army, and enable them to go on an enterprise.

REINFORCED-RING of a gun, is that next the trunnions, between them and the vent; but the reinforced part of a gun, is from the basering to the reinforced-ring, which is much stronger at that place than any other part of the piece, because of the great force of the powder.

REMOUNT. To remount the cavalry, is to get fresh young horses in the room of those which have been killed, disabled, or rendered unfit for service.

RENDEZVOUS, is the place appointed by the General, where all the troops which

R E

compose the army are to meet at the day appointed.

RESERVE, is a body of troops sometimes drawn out of the army, and encamped by themselves in a line behind the lines.

RESERVE-GUARD, is the same as picket-guard, except that the one mounts at troop beating and the other at retreat beating.

RETIRADE, is a trench with a parapet; but *retirade*, or *coupture*, is most ordinarily taken for a retrenchment formed by the two faces of the re-entering angle in a body of a place, after the first defence is ruined, and the besieged obliged to abandon the head of the work without quitting it entirely; therefore, while some are making head against the enemy, others should be busy in making the *retirade*; which is only a simple barricade, or retrenchment, thrown up in haste, with a sort of sots before it.

The *retirade* ought to be raised as high as possible, and some fourneaus, or fougades, made under it, to blow up the enemy's lodgments.

RETRENCHMENT, is any work raised to cover a post, and fortify it against an enemy; such as fascines loaded with earth, gabions, barrels of earth, sand-bags, and generally all things that can

R E

cover the men, or impede the enemy: but it is more particularly applicable to a foss, bordered with a parapet; and the post fortified thus, is called post retrenched, or strong post. Retrenchments are either general or particular.

Retrenchments general, are new fortifications, made in a place besieged, for to cover themselves when the enemy are masters of a lodgment on the fortification, that they may be in a condition of disputing the ground inch by inch, and putting a stop to the enemy's progress, in expectation of relief: as, if the besiegers attack a tenaille of the place, which they judge the weakest, either by its being ill flanked, or being commanded by some neighbouring ground, then the besieged make a great retrenchment, inclosing all that part which they judge in most danger. These ought to be fortified with bastions and demi-bastions, surrounded by a good foss, countermined, and higher than the works of the place, that they may command the old works, and put the besiegers to great trouble in covering themselves.

Retrenchments particular, are such as are made in the bastions, when the enemy are masters of the breach. They can never be made but in full bastions; for

R E

in empty or hollow bastions, retirades only can be formed. These *particular retrenchments* are sometimes made before hand, which certainly is best. Count Pagan always made a double parapet in all his bastions; and a retrenchment made before hand, requires no more men for its defence, than if it were not made, because they never defend it till the principal work be lost: the parapet of such retrenchments ought to be five or six feet thick, and five feet high, with a large and deep foss, from whence ought to run out small soughades; and also be countermined.

RETREAT. An army or body of men are said to retreat when they turn their backs upon the enemy, or are retreating from the ground they occupied.

A retreat is esteemed, by Officers of experience, as the master-piece of a General. He should therefore be well acquainted with the situation of the country through which he intends to make it, and very careful that nothing is neglected to make it safe and honourable.

Retreat. See *drum*.

Returns. See page 65, 66.

False returns. An Officer who knowingly makes one of the state of a regiment, troop, company, detachment, garrison, arms, ammunition, cloathing,

R E

cloathing, or stores thereunto belonging, will be cashiered.

Returns of a trench, are the turnings and windings which form the lines of the trench, and are as near as they can be made parallel to the place attacked, to shun being enfiladed. These returns, when followed, make a long way from the end of the trench to the head, which going the straight way, is very short, but then the men are exposed; yet, upon a sally, the best men never consider the danger; but getting over the trench with such as will follow them, take the shortest way to repulse the enemy, and cut off their retreat, if possible.

Reveille. See *drum*.

REVETEMENT, is a strong wall, built on the outside of the rampart and parapet, to support the earth, and prevent its rolling into the ditch.

REVERSE, signifies on the back, or behind; so we say, *Reverse view, a reverse commanding ground, a reverse battery, &c.*

REVIEW, is the drawing out of the regiments, more or less, to be reviewed by a General-officer, who makes an exact return of their appointments, and the condition they are in, as also of their firings, manœuvres, &c. orders such men to be dis-

R O

charged as are unfit for service, and reviews the recruits who have been enlisted since the last review.

RHOMB, is a four sided figure, whose sides are equal, but the angles unequal.

RHOMBOIDE, is a four sided figure, whose angles and opposite sides are equal, but all its four sides are not equal.

RIDEAU, is a rising ground, or eminence, commanding a plain, which is sometimes near parallel to the works of a place: it is a great disadvantage to have rideaus near a fortification, especially when they fire from far, and terminate on the counter-scarp; for they not only command the place, but likewise facilitate the enemy's approaches.

RIOCHET. When guns are loaded with small charges, and elevated from ten to twelve degrees, so as to fire over the parapet, and the shot rolls along the opposite rampart, it is called riochet firing; and the batteries are called riochet batteries.

ROLL, muster-roll, is a roll of the Officers, Non-commissioned Officers, and private men of each company, accounting for every individual either on furlow, party, command, guard, detachment, sick, &c.

R O

To roll in duty, is when Officers of the same rank take their turns upon duty; as Captains with Captains, Subalterns with Subalterns, and command according to the seniority of their commissions.

ROLLERS, are round pieces of wood of about nine inches diameter, and four feet long, which serve in moving mortars from one place to another, when it is near, by raising the fore part of the bed so high, that one of these rollers may be laid under it, then pushing the bed forward, and laying another in its way, and another before that, and so on. Thus the mortar is with little trouble brought to another place.

ROUND. See page 264.

ROSTER. See page 287.

ROUTE, an order to direct troops to march the road they are to take, and an authority to the magistrate to quarter troops.

S

SAFE-GUARD, is a protection granted by a Prince, or his General, for some of the enemy's lands, to preserve them from being plundered; it signifies likewise a trooper, who stays at the entry of a place protected, to hinder soldiers, which straggle off from the army, from committing any disorder.

R O

To force a safe-guard, if upon service, by the articles of war, is death.

SAKER, is a piece of ordnance, carrying a ball of five pounds and a quarter weight. The diameter of the bore is three inches and nine sixteenths, and the length of the gun about eight or nine feet. It is a very good field-piece, and is always part of the marching artillery.

SALUTE, is the firing of cannon, either in camp or garrison. Officers salute the Royal Family and General-Officers with fuses or espons-tons, and the Ensigns with their colours.

SALIENT-ANGLE, is that whose points turn from the centre of the place.

SALLY, is when a part of the garrison goes out privately, and falls suddenly on the besiegers in their trenches, endeavouring to drive them out, and destroy their works.

SAND-BAGS, are sacks of two feet high, and ten inches diameter, filled with earth, and tyed very fast.

SAP, is a trench, or an approach made under cover, of ten or twelve feet broad, when the besiegers come near the place, and their fire grows so dangerous, as not to be approached uncovered.

SASH, is, in general, made of crimson silk; though, of late,

late, some of the light dra-groons have them intermixed with gold and silver. The first intention of them were, in case an Officer received so desperate a wound, as to render him incapable of remaining at his post, he might be put into his sash, and carried off by the assistance of two men.

Serjeants' Sashes, are of very strong worsted, made on purpose for them.

SAUCISSE, is a long train of powder, sewed up in a roll of pitched cloth, of about two inches diameter. The use of it is to fire mines or caissons; the length of it must reach from the mine to the place where the engineer is to fire it, to spring the mine.

SAUCISSON, is a long pipe, or bag, made of cloth or leather, of about an inch and a half diameter, filled with powder, going from the chamber of a mine to the entrance of the gallery. It serves to give fire to the mine.

Saucisson, is likewise a fascine, much longer than the common ones: they serve to raise batteries, and to repair breaches.

SCALADE, or *escalade*, is a furious attack, upon a wall or rampart, carried on with various sorts of ladders, to insult by open force.

SCALE, is a right line divided into equal parts, representing miles, fathoms, paces, inches, &c. It is used in making plans upon paper, in giving each line its true length.

SCARP, or *escarp*, is the interior talus or slope of the ditch, next the places, at the foot of the rampart or liziere.

SCHENOGRAPHY, which is likewise called profile, or view, is the natural representation of a place, such as it appears to us, when we look upon it from without; and shews its situation, the form of its walls, the number and figure of its steeples, and the tops of its buildings, both publick and private.

SCOUR. To scour a line, is to flank it, so as to see directly along it, that a musquet ball entering at one end, may fire to the other, leaving no place of security.

SECOND COVERT WAY, is that beyond the second ditch.

SECOND DITCH, is that made on the out-side of the glacis, when the ground is low, and water plentiful.

SENIORITY, is the difference of time between the raising of two battalions, whereby the one is said to be senior to the other. All battalions take place according to seniority. The difference

of time between the date of two commissions, makes the one senior to the other; and all Officers of the same rank, roll by the seniority of their commissions. If two are signed on the same day, you must refer to the date of your former commission.

SERGEANTS are Non-commissioned Officers, who ought to be sober, active, vigilant, and able to read and write; because they are obliged to make out many of the returns, attend morning and evening roll-callings, and every day bring the orders to their Officers.

SHOT, all sorts of ball, either for cannon, musquets, carabines, or pistols.

Chain-Shot, is two whole or half bullets joined together, either by a bar or chain of iron, which allows them some liberty asunder, so that they cut and destroy whatever they happen to strike in their course.

Grape-Shot, a certain number of small shots, of iron or lead, quilted together with canvas and ropes about a pin of iron or wood, fixed upon a bottom in the same manner, so as the whole together weigh nearly as much as the shot of that caliber.

SHELLS, are hollow iron balls to throw out of mortars or howitzes, with a hole about an inch diameter, to

load them with powder and to receive the fuze. The bottom, or part opposite the fuze, is made heavier than the rest, that the fuze may fall uppermost; but in small elevations that is not always the case, nor is it necessary; for when it falls first, it sets fire to the powder in the shell. But whether it breaks or not, it would be better to make the shell every where of the same thickness, because it would then burst into a greater number of pieces than it does now.

SHOVEL, is an instrument which can need no description.

SHOULDER of a bastion, is that part of it where the face and the flank meet.

SIDES of horn-works, *tenailles*, *crown-works*, &c. are those parts of the ramparts which reach from the border of the sops to the head of the works. Those in horn-works and *tenailles* are parallel. Sometimes these sides are no longer than the reach of a musquet-shot, and are then defended by the faces of the place; but when they are longer, they have either flanks made in the long sides, which are then said to have shoulders, or else they are indented, or made with redans, traverses, or cross intrenchments in the ditch.

SIEGE,

SIEGE. To besiege a place, is to surround it with an army, and approach it, by passages made in the ground, so as to be covered against the fire of the place.

When an army can approach so near the place as the covert-way, without breaking ground, under favour of some hollow roads, rising grounds, or cavities, and there begin their work, it is said to be *accelerating the siege*; and when they can approach the town so near as to take it, without making any considerable works, the siege is called an attack.

To raise a Siege, is to give over the attack of a place, and to quit the works thrown up against it and the posts taken about it. If there be no reason to fear a sally from the place, the siege may be raised in the day time. Artillery and ammunition must have a strong rear-guard and face the besiegers, lest they should offer to charge the rear; but if there be any fear of an enemy in front, this order must be altered according to prudence, safety, and as the nature of the country will allow.

To make, or form a siege, there must be an army sufficient to furnish five or six reliefs for the trenches; pioneers, guards, convoys, escorts, &c. an artillery, ma-

gazines furnished with a sufficient quantity of warlike stores, provisions of all sorts, and an infirmary with physicians, surgeons, &c. and medicines of all sorts.

To turn a siege into a blockade, is to give over the attack, and endeavour to take it by famine: for which purpose all the avenues, gates and streams leading into the place are so well guarded that no succour can get in to its relief.

SILLON, or *envelope*, is a work raised in the middle of a foss, to defend it when too wide. It has no particular form, but promiscuously made with little bastions, half-moons, on redans, which are lower than the works of the place, but higher than the covert-way.

SIXAIN, an antient order of battle for six battalions, which, supposing them all in a line, is formed thus: the second and fifth battalions advance, and make the van; the first and sixth, fall to the rear, leaving the third and fourth to form the body. Each battalion ought to have one squadron on its right, and another on its left.

SIZING of men, is to place those of an equal height in the same rank.

SKIRMISH, is a sudden encounter between two small bodies of men.

SOLDIER, signifies both
the

S Q

the Officer and private man who enlists into the service of, and receives pay from, his king and country. Those of the cavalry, in general, serve on horseback, but those of the infantry on foot.

SOMMERS, in an ammunition waggon, are the upper sides, supported by the staves entered into them, with one of their ends, and the other into the side-pieces.

SRADES, are iron guarded shovels in such general use as to require no particular description.

SPIES. See page 169.

SPIN HAY, is to twist it up in ropes very hard for an expedition, each trooper carrying as much as he can behind him.

SPOKES of a wheel of a cannon, are those twelve short pieces of wood which, by having one end fixed in the fellows and the other in the nave, keep it in the center of the wheel.

SPUNGE of a gun, is a long staff, put into a roll of wood, which is covered over with sheep skin, the wool outwards, to sponge and clean the gun immediately after it hath been fired.

SQUADRON, is a small body of horse, composed of three troops.

SQUARE, is a figure composed of four equal sides

S T

and four right angles. See plan II.

Oblong Square, is a figure composed of four: the front and rear faces are of a small extent, and the angles sometimes covered by the grenadiers. When that is not the case, the grenadiers are divided into two divisions, and form the front and rear face of the square; if there is a company of light infantry, the grenadiers intire will form the front face, and light infantry the rear. See plan II.

Hollow Square, is a body of foot, drawn up with a space in the middle (for the Colonel, Lieutenant-colonel, Major, Adjutant, colours, pioneers, grenadiers, music, and drummers) to oppose either cavalry or infantry. See plan II.

STANDARD, is a piece of silk or damask, about a foot and a half square; on which is embroidered a device or cypher. It is fixed on a long staff, eight or nine foot long, and carried at the head of the squadron.

STORM. See *Assault*.

STOPPAGES, are deductions, more or less, made from the Non-commissioned Officers and soldiers to supply them with necessaries. They are said to be under stoppages when they do not receive

S U

receive their whole subsistence.

STOOL-BED, in a truck carriage, serves as a stool for the guns to lay upon, and the wedges for raising them.

STRAIKS, are strong plates of iron, six in number, fixed with long nails, called straike-nails, on the circumference of a common wheel, over the joints of the fellows, both to strengthen the wheel and save the fellows from wearing out in hard ways or streets.

STRAW, the stalks of corn, which is put into tents for the soldiers to sleep on.

SUBALTERN. See *Officer*.

SUB-BRIGADIER, is a post in the horse-guards, and ranks as Cornet.

SUB-LIEUTENANT, an Officer in the fuzileers, where they have no Ensigns, is the youngest Lieutenant in the company, and carries the colours.

SUB-DIVISION. See *Division*.

SUBSISTENCE, is the money paid to Officers and soldiers.

SUCCOUR, is the enterprise made to relieve a place: that is, raise the siege, and force the enemy from it.

SURFACE, or *superficies*, is an extent, having length and breadth, but no thickness: it is therefore evident, that the extremities of a surface are lines.

S W

Surface, as a term in fortification, is that part of the side which is terminated by the flank prolonged or extended, and the angle of the nearest bastion: the double of this line with the curtain, is equal to the exterior side.

SUTTLE, is he who follows the army to sell all sorts of provisions to the troops. They pitch their tents in the rear of each regiment, and about the General's quarters.

SWALLOWS-TAIL, is an out-work, differing from a single tenaille, in that its sides are not parallel, like those of a tenaille; but, if prolonged, would meet and form an angle on the middle of the curtain; and its head or front is composed of two faces, forming a re-entring angle. This work is extraordinarily well flanked, and defended by the works of the place, which discover all the length of its long sides: but they seldom sufficiently cover the flanks of the opposite bastions.

SWORDS are of various sorts; as, the small sword, broad sword, cut and thrust sword, and the cut-throat. They are carried in belts, or hung to swivels, and worn on the left side.

SWORD-KNOT. Those of the cavalry are of buff leather; but those of the infantry are, in general, of crimson and gold.

TABLE

T A

T

TABLE, is a kind of register to set down the dimensions of carriages for guns, mortars, &c. See page 286.

TACTICK, the art of marshalling soldiers.

TAIL of the trenches, or opening of the trenches, is the post where the besiegers begin to break ground, to cover themselves from the fire of the place, in advancing the lines of approach.

TALAUD, or *slope*, is made to the works of a fortification, both on the outside and inside, to prevent the earth from rolling down.

TALUS, or *epaulement*, is the slope given to the rampart, or wall, that it may stand the faster; which is more or less sloped according as the earth is looser or more binding. All ramparts ought to have a slope or talus on each side; that is, they ought to be broader at the basis than at the top. There are three sorts of this epaulement, which are distinguished by the terms *exterior*, *interior*, and *superior talus*.

Exterior Talus, is an outside slope of a work towards the country, and ought to be as small as possible, that the enemy may not find it easy to be mounted either by escalade or otherwise. But

T A

if the earth be not good, the talus must be large, that it may keep it up the better. In such a case it is necessary to support the earth with a slight wall, which the French call *chemise*; or a strong one, if needful, they call a *revetement*; which signifies cloathing or fencing it to make the earth last, and save the expence of making too large a talus. This wall, also, ought to have a small talus of a fifth or sixth part of its height; and, for a reinforcement, it is generally supported on the inside by counterforts, or a sort of buttresses.

Interior Talus is the inside slope of a work next the town, which is much larger than that of the outside, and has, at the angles of the gorge, and sometimes in the middle of the curtain, ramps, or sloping roads, to mount upon the terre-plain of the rampart. The interior talus of the parapet, ought to be very small, that the men may with more ease fire over it.

Superior Talus of the parapet, is a slope on the top of the parapet that allows of the soldiers defending the covert-way with small shot, which they could not do were it level.

TARPAYLINS, are pitched cloths, to throw over stores in open boats, upon batteries, or in magazines.

TAPTOO,

TAPTOO. See *Drum*.

TENAILLES, are low works made in the ditch before the curtains, whereof there are three sorts. The first are the faces of the bastions produced till they meet much lower; the second have faces, flanks, and a curtain: but the third have only faces and flanks.

TENAILLONS, are works made on each side of the ravelin, much like the lunettes. They differ, in that one of the faces of a tenaillon, is in the direction of the face of the ravelin; whereas that of the lunette is perpendicular to it.

TENT, is a sort of pavilion of strong ticking, which serves to keep an Officer under cover night and day.

TERRE-PLAIN of a rampart, is the horizontal superficies of it between the interior talus and banquette, which is used as a common passage by the defendants. Trees on the terre-plain of a rampart serve to bind it, but in a siege are inconvenient; for the noise made by wind amongst the leaves, hinders the besieged from hearing workmen in their approaches.

TERTIATE a piece, is to examine it, whether it has the due thickness of metal in every place, and whether it be true bored.

TREMOINS, is a French term for pieces of earth left standing, as marks in the fosses of places they are emptying, to know exactly how many cubical fathoms, or feet of earth, has been carried away, and thereby pay their workmen, who are sure to leave some of the highest spots of ground for termoins, that they may have more depth to measure. But the engineers are generally careful to mark out indifferent places, some high, some low, to measure as exact as they can.

TOISE, is a measure of six feet used by French engineers in all their fortifications. A square toise is thirty-six square feet; and a cubical toise is two hundred and sixteen cubical feet.

TOMPION, is a stopper of wood or cork, used in loading a mortar. It is exactly fitted for the mouth of the chamber, and drove in hard upon the powder, which occasions it to cast out the bomb placed upon it with great violence. *Tompion* is likewise a stopper of wood, for the mouth of the mortar, or gun, to keep out the rain.

TOUCH-HOLE, or *vent*, is the small hole at the end of the cylinder of the gun, or musquet, by which the fire is conveyed to the powder in the chamber. In a fire-lock, carabine, or pistol, it is

T R

is called the touch-hole; but in a piece of cannon it is more properly called the vent.

TOWN, or FORT, ADJUTANT, is an assistant to the Fort, or Town, Major.

TOWER BASTIONS, are small towers made in the form of bastions, with rooms and cellars underneath to place men and guns in.

Town, or Fort, Major of a Garrison, is an Officer constantly employed about the Governor or Officer commanding, issues their orders to the troops in garrison, and reads its common orders to fresh troops when they arrive. He commands according to the rank he hath, or has had, in the army; and, if he never had any other commission than that of *Town, or Fort Major*, he is to command as youngest Captain.

TRAIL, is the end of the travelling carriage opposite to the wheels, and upon which the carriage slides, when unlimbered, or upon the battery.

Trail your firelocks, is for the soldiers to carry their firelocks in the same position as the Officers trail their esponsions.

TRANSUM, is a piece of wood, which goes across betwixt the cheeks of a gun-carriage, or a gin, to keep them fixed together. Each transum in a carriage, is

T R

strengthened by a bolt of iron.

TRAVERSE, is a parapet, made cross the covert-way, opposite to the salient angles of the works, and near the places of arms, to prevent enfilades. They are eighteen feet thick, and as high as the ridge of the glacis. There are also traverses made in the caponiers, but then they are called *tambour traverses*; and are likewise made within other works, when there are any hills or rising grounds, from which may be seen the inside of these works.

To traverse a gun or mortar, is to bring her about with handspikes, to the right or left, till she is pointed exactly at the object.

TRENCH, or *lines of approach, and attack*, is a way hollowed in the earth, in form of a foss, having a parapet towards the place besieged, when the earth can be removed; or else it is an elevation of fascines, gabions, woolpacks, and such other things for covering the men as cannot fly into pieces or splinters. This is to be done when the ground is rocky; but when the earth is good, the trench is carried on with less trouble, and the engineers demand only a provision of spades, shovels, and pick-axes, to make it two fathoms wide. The greatest fault

T R

fault a trench can have, is to be infiladed: to prevent which they are ordinarily carried on with turnings and elbows. As the trenches are never carried on but in the night-time, therefore the ground ought to be viewed and observed very nicely in the day. On the angles or sides of the trench, there should be lodgments, or epaulments, in form of traverses, the better to hinder the sallies of the garrison, to favour the advancement of the trenches, and to sustain the workmen. These lodgments are small trenches, fronting the place besieged, and joining the trench at one end.

The platforms for the batteries are made behind the trenches; the first at a good distance, to be used only against sallies of the garrison. As the approaches advance, the batteries are brought nearer, to ruin the defences of the place, and dismount the artillery of the besieged. The batteries for the breaches are made when the trenches are advanced near the covert way.

If there be two attacks, there must be lines of communication, or boyaus, between the two, with places of arms, at convenient distances. The trenches should be six or seven feet high, with the parapet, which

T R

ought to be five foot thick, and have banquetts for the soldiers to mount upon.

Returns of a trench, are the elbows and turnings, which form the lines of the approach, and are made as near as can be parallel to the defence of the place, to prevent their being infiladed.

To mount the trenches, is to mount guard in the trenches; *to relieve the trenches*, is to relieve the guards of the trenches; *to dismount the trenches*, is to come off the guard from the trenches; *to cleanse or scour the trenches*, is to make a vigorous sally upon the guard of the trenches, force them to give way and quit their ground, drive away the workmen, break down the parapet, fill up the trench, and nail their cannon.

Counter-trenches, are trenches made against the besiegers; which consequently have their parapet turned against the enemy's approaches, and are infiladed from several parts of the place, on purpose to render them useless to the enemy, if they should chance to become masters of them; but they ought not to be infiladed, or commanded by any height in the enemy's possession.

To open trenches, is the first breaking of ground by the besiegers, in order to carry on their approaches towards a place.

T R

a place. The difference between opening and carrying on the trenches, is, that the first is only the beginning of the trench; which is always turned towards the besiegers. It is begun by a small foss, which the pioneers make in the night time on their knees, generally a musquet shot from the place, or half a cannon shot, and sometimes without the reach of cannon-ball, especially if there be no hollow or rising grounds to favour them, or if the garrison be strong, and their artillery well served. This small foss is afterwards enlarged by the next pioneers which come behind them, who dig it deeper by degrees, till it be about four yards broad, and four or five foot deep, especially if they be near the place; to the end, the earth which is taken out of it, may be thrown before them, to form a parapet, and cover them from the fire of the besieged. The place where the trenches are opened, is called the end of the trench.

TRIANGLE, is a figure comprehended between three sides, and is either rectilineal or spherical. A *rectilineal* or *plain triangle*, is a figure consisting of three straight sides: a *spherical triangle* is a figure formed by three arches of three great circles, cutting one another on the surface of a sphere.

T R

A *rectilineal triangle*, considered according to the sides, may be either equilateral, isosceles, or scalene; and, considered according to its angles, may be either rect-angle or oxigon.

Equilateral triangle, is what has the three sides equal. It is evident the three angles must likewise be equal, each being sixty degrees triangle; and isosceles is what hath two sides equal; whence it follows, that all *equilateral triangles* are isosceles; though all isosceles triangles are not equilateral.

Triangle Scalene, is what hath three unequal sides.

Triangle Rect-angle, is what hath one right angle.

Triangle amblygon, is what hath one obtuse angle; and *triangle oxigon*, hath angles all acute.

TROOPS, are of horse or dragoons.

Troop, is likewise a particular beat so called. See *Drum*.

TROOPER, is a private man in a troop of horse.

TRUMPET, is an instrument of wind-musick, commonly made of brass, but sometimes of silver, with a mouth piece to take out and put in at pleasure. Each troop of horse hath one, and the trumpeter who blows it is supposed to be a very vigilant man and able to bear fatigue. The first sound of

V E

the trumpet before a march, is when the drum beats a general, at which the troopers boot, saddle, and get themselves ready: when the assemblé is beginning to beat, the trumpets sound to horse; on which the troopers mount, and, at the third sound, march.

The trumpets likewise sound a charge in day of battle, and the retreat at night, &c.

TRUNNIONS of a gun, are the two pieces of metal projecting from the sides of a piece by which it swings in its carriage.

Trunnion-ring, is that ornament, or jutting out, a little before the trunnions.

TRUCKS, are small wheels of one piece of wood, about a foot and a half, or two foot diameter, for truck carriages, and sometimes garrison guns.

V.

VALIANT, bold and daring in action, stout and brave.

VAN, is the front of an army, &c.

Van-guard, is that part of the army which marches in the front.

VEDETTE, is a trooper posted on horseback with his horse's head towards the place whence any danger is to be feared, and his carbine advanced, with the butt-end against his right thigh. When

V I

the army lies encamped, there are *vedettes* posted at all the avenues, and on all the rising grounds, to watch for its security.

VENT, of all kinds of fire arms, is a small hole at the end, or near it, of the bore or chamber, to prime the pieces with powder, or introduce a tube, in order, when lighted, to set fire to the charge.

Vent-field, is the part of a gun or howitz between the breech moulding and the astragal; and *vent-astragal*, that which determines the *vent-field*.

VIEW. The *view of a place*, in order to besiege it, is said to be taken when the General, accompanied by the engineers, reconnoitres it; that is, rides round the place, observing the situation of it, with the nature of the country about it; as hills, valleys, rivers, marshes, woods, hedges, &c. thereby to judge of the most convenient place for opening the trenches, and carrying on the approaches; to find out proper places for encamping the army, for the lines of circumvallation and countervallation, and for the park of artillery.

To view, or reconnoitre an enemy, is to get as near their camp as possible, to see the nature of the ground, and the avenues to it, to find out

* F

the

the strength and weakness of their encampment, where they may be best attacked; or whether it may be proper to hazard bringing them to action.

To view, or *reconnoitre*, is likewise when the Quarter-master-general, with a strong party of horse, goes to view the ways for the march of the army, or find the most convenient place for an encampment: to wit, where there is water and forage, where the army may not be too much exposed to the insults of the enemy, but covered by rivers, marshes, woods, or strong grounds, where they cannot easily be forced.

Parties of light horse are generally sent out to view the enemy's march, to know whether it tends, thereby to guess at their designs, and to regulate the motions of the army accordingly.

VICTORY, the overthrow, or defeat, of an enemy.

VOLUNTEERS, are persons, who, of their own accord, either for the service of their Prince, or out of the esteem they have for their General, serve in the army, without being engaged to any Captain, and who, at their own expence, are ready, upon all occasions, to gain honour and preferment, by exposing themselves in the service.

VOLLEY. To fire a vol-

ley, is when the whole of a company, battalion, or regiment fires together, by one word of command.

UTENSILS, are likewise all sorts of hand tools, used in an army, or at a siege; such as spades, shovels, pick-axes, hatchets, bills, wheel-barrows, &c. or the instruments used about a gun; as the ladle, rammer, sponge, wad-hook, lin-stock, coins, hand-spikes, priming iron, &c. &c.

W.

WAD, is a stopper of hay, straw, or wadding, forced into a gun upon the powder, to keep it close in the chamber; when it is home at the powder, the gunner generally gives it three thumps with the rammer-head.

Wad-book, or *worm*, is a small iron turned serpent-ways, like a screw, and put upon the end of a long staff, to draw out the wad of a gun, when she is to be unloaded.

Wad-mill, a hollow form of wood to make the wads of a proper form.

WAGGON-MASTER-GENERAL, is he who has the ordering and marching of the baggage of the army. On a day of march he meets the baggage at the place appointed, and marshals it according to the rank of the brigade, or regiment, each waggon belongs

W H

longs to, and marches it according to the route given him; which is sometimes in one column, at others in two; sometimes after the artillery, and at other times the baggage of each column follows that it belongs to.

WAR, a fighting state of hostility between nations, states, provinces, or parties.

WARNING-PIECE, is the gun which fires every evening at sun-set, to warn the drums and trumpets of the army, or garrison, to beat and sound the retreat: in garrisons the gates are then locked and the bridges drawn up.

Warning-piece, is also the gun which fires every morning at break of day; upon which the drums of every guard beat the reveille, and the centries leave off challenging. In a garrison the gates are then opened, and the draw-bridges let down.

WARRANT. See *Officer* and also page 274.

WEAPONS, mean all sorts of warlike instruments, except fire-arms.

WELL, is a depth sunk in the ground by the miner, from whence he runs out branches or galleries, in search of the enemy's mine, to prevent its effects, or make one for himself.

WHEEL, is a word of command, when a battalion is to

W I

alter its position, or wheel by wings, grand-divisions, subdivisions, companies, or platoons, &c.

WHEEL-BARROW, is one of the most necessary utensils about a fortification, for rolling the earth from one place to another, &c.

Wheels of a gun-carriage, are two large circles of wood, composed of the fellows, spokes, and nave; they are joined where their ends meet, by a peg of wood, called the duledge; and the joint is strengthened on the outside of the wheel, by a strong plate of iron called the duledge plate. The wheels are one on each end of an axle-tree, which keep them at a fixed distance, and upon which the forepart of the carriage is fixed, by strong bands of iron, called the axle-tree bands.

WICKET, is a small door in the gate of a fortified place, at which a man may enter on foot after the gates are ordered to be shut.

WINGS of an army. See *Army*.

Wings of a battalion, are the right and left of the center of it.

WINLACE, is a roller of wood, square at each end, through which is either holes for handspikes, or flaves across, to turn it round. By a cord being fastened to this

at

W O

at one end, any thing very heavy secured at the other end may be easily lifted up to it.

WINDAGE of a gun, is the difference between the diameter of the bore and the diameter of the ball; for the balls being rough, if they were not somewhat less than the bore, they might jam in the piece; so the windage of a demi-culverin is a quarter of an inch.

WINTER-QUARTERS, are the places where troops are quartered during the winter; and, likewise, the time comprehended between the end of one campaign and the beginning of another.

WORD; in an army, or garrison, is a token, or mark of distinction, by an ignorance of which, spies or treacherous persons are immediately known, and serves likewise to prevent surprizes. It is given out by the General to the Lieutenant-general, or Major-general of the day, who gives it to the Adjutant-general, he to the Majors of brigades, they to the Adjutants, who give it first to their own Field-officers, and afterwards to the Non-commissioned Officers, who

Z I

write it in their orderly books, and then carry them to their own Officers. In a garrison it is given by the Governor to the Town or Fort-major, who sends it to the several guards sealed up, and also gives it to the Adjutant at orderly time.

WORDS of command, are terms used by Officers, in exercising of battalions or squadrons, or when they are upon action.

WORKS. All the fortifications about a place, are called *the works of the place*; and, more particularly, all detached works are called, *the out-works*.

WORM, is a screw of iron, fixed on the end of a rammer, to pull or cut the wad or ball of the firelock, carabine, or pistol; it is the same with the wad-hook;—except, only, that the one is proper for small fire-arms, and the other for cannon.

Z.

ZIGZAG, is a line making several angles in approaching, or erecting a work, to prevent the men being fired on in a straight line, or enfiladed.

F I N I S.



6 Pounders

Pioneers.

Rank .



Serj^t



Serj^t



Serj^t Drum^r S^r Adju^t

Front Rank .

Battalion re^l places.

ual.
eral.

r.

r.

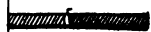
Rear Rank .

PLAN. 2



6 Pounders

Pioneers



Serj^t



Serj^t



Serj^t

Another

Rank .

eral.

ers.

Major
mand^r Officer .

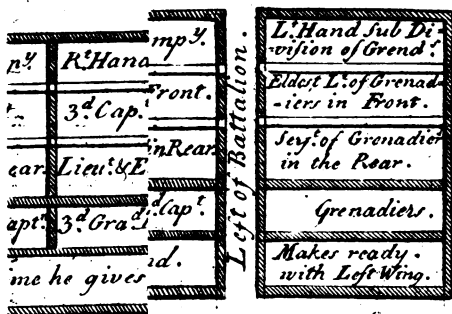
ick &c.

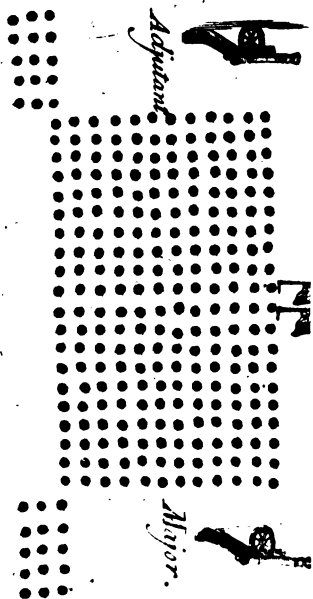
11

Major

<i>By Compan^{ts}</i>	<i>Rth Hand Sub Division of Grenadiers</i>	<i>Right of Battalion.</i>	<i>Rth Hand Comp^{ny}</i>	<i>Lth Hand Comp^{ny}</i>
	<i>Cap^t of Grenadiers in Front.</i>		<i>1st Cap^t in Front.</i>	<i>Ens^{ign} in Front.</i>
	<i>Youngest Lieut^{ant} in the Rear.</i>		<i>Lieut^{ant} & Ens^{ign} in Rear.</i>	<i>Capt^{ain} L^{ieut} in R^{ear}.</i>
<i>By Grand Division</i>	<i>Grenad^{ier} First by the Command^{ing} Officer in Front.</i>		<i>1st Gra^d Divis^{ion} Command^{ed} by 1st C^{apt}</i>	
<i>By Wings.</i>	<i>Make ready with the L^{ieut} Wing & also First by Command^{ing} Officer in Front.</i>		<i>1st Capt^{ain} Advanced 4 Paces at the t^{ail}</i>	

PLAN. 3.





*Battalion formed in Column by Company
from the center, on the March with Cannon & Grenadiers.*

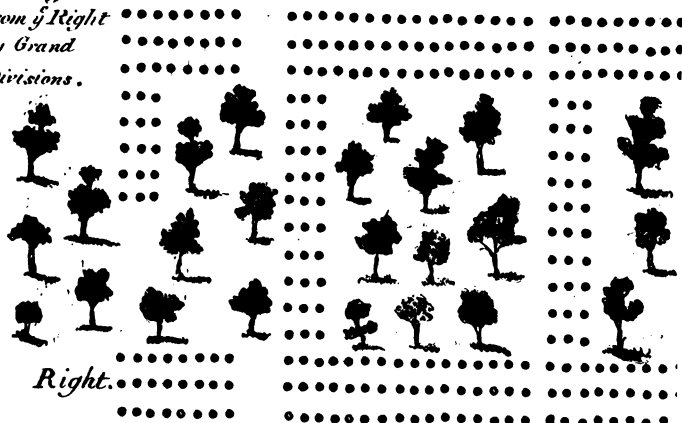
*Battalion forming
the Square by files
to the Rear.*

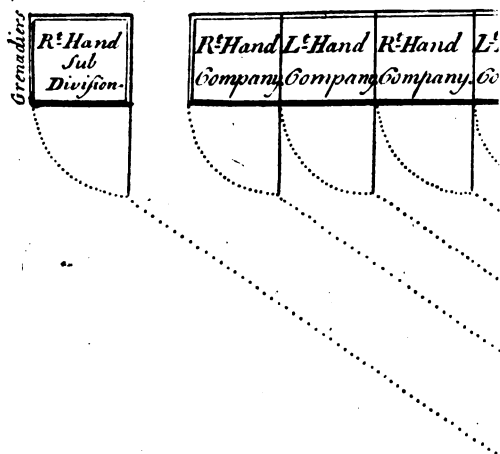
*Right of the
Battalion.*

Cap.	1. Young Lieut.
Files to the Left.	To the Right about.

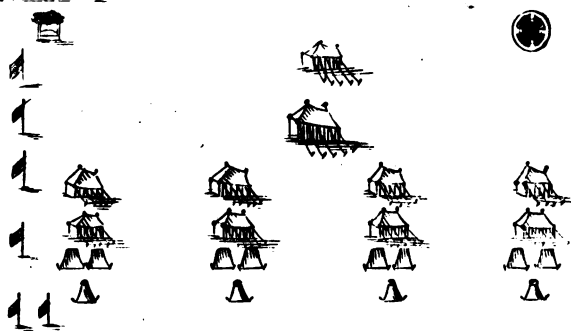
1. Captain.	Colonels.	2. Captain
Faces to the left. Forms the Right Flank.		Files to the left, Forms that flank

*Battalion Passing
a Wood by files
From y Right
by Grand
Divisions.*





*To Change Front.
 Battalion to the Left wheel by
 March.
 Form Battalion, March,
 They Advance Obliquely to the
 (Except the Left hand Sub
 Grenadiers) & form up upon the
 Each Other.*



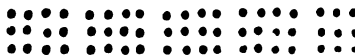
Enemy A.



*Forming Battalion after
Passing the Bridge.*

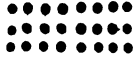


*Battalion Passing the
Bridge by Platoons.*

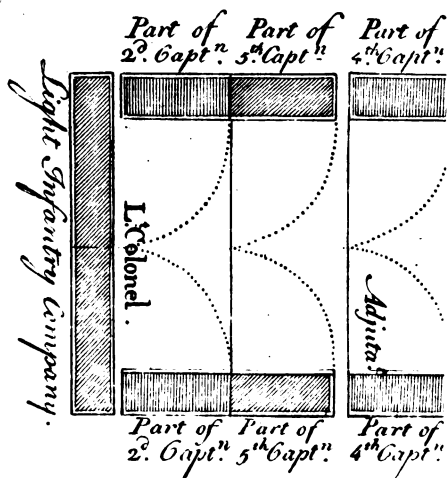
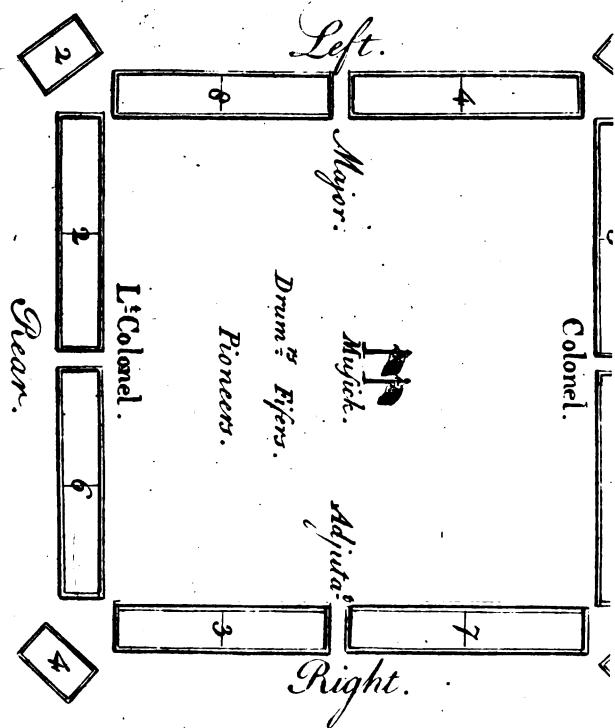





Grond



Grond







ance. idly. ether. st.  of the Second Line.

Brigade - Genl - Townshend.

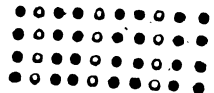
4 Companies
of Major Scott's
Rangers.



 Lascelles.
 Monckton
 Frazer.
 Bragg.

2 Remaining Companies of Rangers.




 Major Dellings
 Light
 Infantry.

C



